Mind, Meaning, and Mental Disorder: The nature of causal explanation in psychology and psychiatry, Second Edition

Derek Bolton
Jonathan Hill

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
Oxford Medical Publications

Mind, Meaning, and Mental Disorder
International Perspectives in Philosophy and Psychiatry

Series Editors

Bill (KWM) Fulford, Katherine Morris, John Z Sadler, Giovanni Stanghellini

Volumes in the series:

*Nature and Narrative: An Introduction to the New Philosophy of Psychiatry*
Fulford, Morris, Sadler, and Stanghellini (ed.)

*Mind, Meaning, and Mental Disorder*
Bolton and Hill

Forthcoming:

*Concise Oxford Textbook of Philosophy and Psychiatry*
Fulford, Thornton, and Graham

*Postpsychiatry*
Bracken and Thomas

*The Philosophical Understanding of Schizophrenia*
Chung, Fulford, and Graham (ed.)

*Values and Psychiatric Disorders*
Sadler

*Handbook of Philosophy and Psychiatry*
Radden (ed.)

*The Vulnerable Self: The Clinical Phenomenology of the Schizophrenic and Affective Spectrum Disorders*
Parnas, Sass, and Stanghellini
Preface to New Edition

We have taken the opportunity of this Second Edition to make changes with two main aims: to bring the text up to date in relation to literature that has appeared since 1995, and to clarify further the main themes and proposals of the book.

The task of updating has been potentially a very large one because the book touches on many fields in psychiatry, psychology, and philosophy, and these fields are large in themselves, and being worked on at an increasing rate. However, in this edition, as in the first, we have not attempted to write comprehensive reviews of the relevant literature. The main purpose of the book was, and remains, to argue for and elaborate a certain view of causal explanation in psychology, biology, and psychiatry. The discussion of various literatures is meant to provide a context for the themes of the book, and is therefore selective, aimed at defining points of agreement and divergence with other views, and giving substance to philosophical claims by reference to scientific models and findings. In this context updating the literature has been a more manageable task. We have attended to some significant relevant changes in philosophical views in the past five years or so, though these are relatively few, since the pace of change in philosophical theory is naturally slow, certainly compared with scientific findings. We have updated the discussions of scientific findings, particularly where recent studies bear closely on the main ideas in the book.

We have also tried in this Second Edition to clarify further these main ideas. We have reduced or removed some discussion that in retrospect may have been too tangential to the main points, and we have made the relevance of other considerations to the main points more explicit. We have also written a synopsis of the main themes and proposals of the book. This has been joined to the Introduction to the First Edition, which gave some historical context, to make a new Introduction and Synopsis for this Second Edition.

Derek Bolton
London
April 2003

Jonathan Hill
Liverpool
Preface to the First Edition

Philosophical ideas about the mind, brain, and behaviour can seem theoretical and unimportant when placed alongside the urgent questions of mental distress and disorder. However there is a need to give attempts to answer these questions some direction. On the one hand a substantial research effort is going into the investigation of brain processes and the development of drug treatments for psychiatric disorders, and on the other, a wide range of psychotherapies and forms of counselling are becoming available to adults and children with mental health problems. These two strands reflect a long Western tradition of dividing body and mind, and attempting to resolve questions of the explanation of disturbance either in favour of the malfunctioning brain, or the disordered psyche. It is crucial in determining the direction of research and clinical practice to clarify whether these are competing incompatible perspectives, or whether they are complementary and in need of integration.

However it is unlikely that philosophical ideas will illuminate central questions in psychology and psychiatry without themselves being informed by the concepts and findings from areas such as learning theory, developmental psychology, artificial intelligence and psychoanalysis. The book therefore starts with a review of key issues in the philosophy of mind and philosophy of science as they relate to questions of cognition, emotion, and behaviour. Intentionality emerges as a central concept in human functioning, but we go on to make the case that it is a distinguishing feature of biological systems in general. Human psychological faculties then emerge as particularly sophisticated elaborations of intentional processes, which create the conditions both for intelligence and culture, and also for instability and disorder.

Throughout the discussion philosophical theories are brought to bear on the particular questions of the explanation of behaviour, the nature of mental causation, and eventually the origins of major disorders including depression, anxiety disorders, schizophrenia, and personality disorder.

The book has been written for philosophers, and academic and clinical psychologists and psychiatrists, but we would be delighted if anyone whose business or interest is to understand human behaviour, were to make use of it. In that it presents a particular thesis it is aimed at a postgraduate readership, but the advanced undergraduate will find many contemporary themes in philosophy, psychology, and psychiatry are covered, and provided the ideas proposed are
treated with some caution under exam conditions, the more innovative content may not prove too hazardous.

The authors came to an interest in philosophical problems in psychology and psychiatry by different routes. Before training as a clinical psychologist D.B. read philosophy and researched on Wittgenstein. J.H. read natural sciences before training in medicine, psychiatry, and family therapy. We published papers independently about ten years ago which overlapped in subject-matter—meanings, reasons, and causes—and conclusions, whence came our idea of co-writing a book. The book as a whole is co-written, though some chapters were written mainly by one or other of us. Chapters 1 to 4 were written mainly by D.B., 5 and 7 mainly by J.H., while 6, 8, and 9 have been co-written.

D.B.’s contribution was written partly during tenure of a Jacobsen Research Fellowship in Philosophy at University College London during 1989–91, and this author gratefully acknowledges this support. A different kind of support came from Stacia, Henry, and Matthew, who for many years gave my attempts to make time to write the book their whole-hearted backing.

J.H. would like to thank Judy, Susannah, Jessie, and Rosalind for their support, and belief that this book would be completed. Alison Richards helped in the ordering of the ideas, and David Lyon provided valuable assistance in the use of clear language. Dudley Ankerson and Bernard Wood provided inspiration on broader but equally important fronts.

Both authors would like to thank friends and colleagues for their comments and advice on all or parts of the work in various stages of completion, including Simon Baron-Cohen, Chris Brewin, Andy Clark, Bill Fulford, Sebastian Gardner, Peter Hobson, David Papineau, and Mick Power.

This page intentionally left blank
Contents

Introduction and Synopsis xv

1 Mind, meaning, and the explanation of action 01
  1.1 The ‘cognitive paradigm’ in psychological science 01
    1.1.1 Cognition in the explanation of behaviour 01
    1.1.2 Cognition, affect and consciousness 12
  1.2 Intentionality 16
    1.2.1 Some definitions and some old theories 16
    1.2.2 Intentionality based in action 19
  1.3 Theory and theory of mind 27
    1.3.1 ‘Theory’ in post-empiricist epistemology 27
    1.3.2 Theory of mind and self-knowledge 33
    1.3.3 Core beliefs: logic and psychologic 39
  1.4 The inference to causality 43
  1.5 Summary 47
  Endnotes 49
  References 52

2 Mind, meaning, and neural causation 59
  2.1 ‘Encoding’ as a solution to the problem of mental causation 59
  2.2 Objections to the encoding thesis (1): ‘Are there “sentences in the head”?’ 64
  2.3 Objections to the proposed solution (2): ‘(Neural) Syntax isn’t enough for semantics’ 68
  2.4 Objections to the proposed solution (3): ‘Neural syntax is enough for causality’ 72
  2.5 Objections to the proposed solution (4): ‘Meanings ain’t in the head’ 76
  2.6 Objections to the proposed solution (5): ‘Meaning is in human activity, not the brain’ 84
  2.7 Summary 87
  Endnotes 90
  References 93

3 Relativity 97
  3.1 Intentionality is observer-relative 97
  3.2 Theory of mind and empathy (‘mental simulation’) 99
3.3 Rule-following 104
3.4 Relativity and reality in the natural and bio-psychological sciences 117
3.5 Summary 126
Endnotes 127
References 129

4 Functional semantics 133
4.1 Introduction 133
4.2 Hume’s analysis of causality and some standard elaborations 134
4.3 Causal semantics: meaning as a (standard) causal relation 139
4.4 Functional semantics: meaning defined in terms of systemic function 145
4.5 Functional semantic causality: norms and necessity, generality and agency 156
4.6 Summary 169
Endnotes 171
References 174

5 Two forms of causality in biological and psychological processes 179
5.1 Introduction 179
5.2 Intentional causality: 15 principles 180
5.3 Non-intentional causality 186
5.4 The relationship between intentional and non-intentional causality 188
5.5 Intentional causality cannot be replaced by non-intentional 189
5.6 The place of non-intentional causality in the explanation of breakdown 195
5.7 Disruption of function and the conditions for non-intentional causality 196
5.8 Biological processes: A further examination 197
5.8.1 DNA and protein synthesis 197
5.8.2 The haemoglobin molecule 199
5.9 Summary 201
References 201

6 Intentional causality, neurobiology and development 203
6.1 Introduction 203
6.2 Neurobiology 205
6.2.1 The basic units 205
## 6.2 The visual system
- 6.2.2 Representation and behaviour in animals

## 6.3 Early human psychological development
- 6.3.1 Introduction
- 6.3.2 The newborn infant
- 6.3.3 The first months
- 6.3.4 Attachment
- 6.3.5 Play

## 6.4 Rule multiplicity: selection and communication
- 6.4.1 The problems and forms of solution
- 6.4.2 Self and personality
- 6.4.3 Communication, metacommunication, and language
- 6.4.4 Cognition and commitment

## 6.5 Higher-order intentionality: the development of thought and reason
- 6.5.1 Introduction
- 6.5.2 Origins in action
- 6.5.3 Cognitive maturation

## 6.6 Summary

## References

---

## 7 Psychiatric disorder and its explanation
- 7.1 Introduction
- 7.2 The operation of intentionality in psychological processes
- 7.3 The disruption of intentionality
- 7.4 Levels of explanation and the reduction of mental processes
- 7.5 Medical disorder
- 7.6 Psychiatric disorder
- 7.7 Genetics, ‘design’, and disorder
- 7.8 ‘Biological’ psychiatry and psychology
- 7.9 Summary

## References
8 Intentionality in disorder 279
  8.1 Two approaches: logic and biology 279
  8.2 The logic and epistemology of disorder 280
    8.2.1 Radical error, avoidance and re-enactment 280
    8.2.2 A priori threats to action and thought 285
    8.2.3 Higher-order intentionality: further possibilities of disorder 289
    8.2.4 Psychic defences: behavioural strategies, mental analogues and elaborations 292
  8.3 Intentional causality and disorder 299
    8.3.1 Introduction: threats to the integrity of intentional causality 299
    8.3.2 Incompatibility between representation and action 301
    8.3.3 The generalization and differentiation of representations 304
    8.3.4 The stability and testing of representations 305
    8.3.5 The integrity of the meta-representational system 306
  8.4 Psychological models of disorder and treatment 308
    8.4.1 Introduction 308
    8.4.2 Conditioning theory 308
    8.4.3 Social learning theory 309
    8.4.4 Cognitive therapy 310
    8.4.5 Psychoanalytic theories 312
    8.4.6 Family systems theories 314
    8.4.7 Attachment theory 317
  8.5 Summary 320
  References 321

9 Psychiatric conditions 325
  9.1 Introduction 325
  9.2 Schizophrenia 326
    9.2.1 Introduction: syndromes 326
    9.2.2 Biochemical contributions 326
    9.2.3 Neuropathology and neuropsychology 327
    9.2.4 Neurodevelopment and psychological development 329
    9.2.5 Psychosis, certainty and action 332
  9.3 Anxiety disorders 334
    9.3.1 Intentionality, development and content 334
    9.3.2 Obsessive compulsive disorder 343
    9.3.3 Post-traumatic stress disorder and other cases of recurring, intrusive, distressing thoughts 347
9.4 Personality disorders 361
   9.4.1 Introduction 361
   9.4.2 Borderline personality disorder 362
   9.4.3 Sexual abuse and borderline processes 364
   9.4.4 Development, intentional and borderline processes 366
   9.4.5 Protection and resilience 367

9.5 Conclusion 368
   References 370
   Index 377
This page intentionally left blank
Introduction and Synopsis

The starting point of this book is the assumption that theories of the mind need to provide an account of order and disorder, which have been traditionally the domain of psychology and psychiatry; and that psychology and psychiatry need to understand the nature of their explanations, which is the province of the philosophy of mind and philosophy of science. Here and in the first chapters of the book we review the philosophical issues and make specific proposals that are in some respects novel. We then show how these ideas can be applied to biological systems in general and to the mind and its functioning both in order and disorder, and in the ground between the two.

In this opening section we set out to orient the reader to the issues in psychopathology by reviewing how the questions are posed in relation to the commonest adult mental health problem, depression, illustrating briefly the links between the philosophical, research, and clinical issues. Depressive episodes involve changes of behaviour, mood and thinking about the self, the outside world, the past and the future. They may be understood in two contrasting ways. In the first it is assumed that being depressed is like any other human emotional state and that there is a reason for it, in a loss or threat or other similar adverse external circumstance. In the second view, it is not part of the person’s usual set of emotional responses to events, but is a form of illness. We will be concerned in this book to make clear how either interpretation gives rise to questions, to offer some solutions to those questions, and above all to show how important it is to keep alive several lines of thought in the investigation and treatment of psychiatric or psychological disorder.

The difference between the two types of explanation, broadly speaking, lies in whether or not they refer to the meaning of the mood, beliefs, and behaviours. In the first they are thought to be meaningful in relation to the rest of the person’s life, their past and present experiences. Why is this problematic? Where the precipitants are clear, such an account may be straightforward, but often they are not. The person appears to have nothing to be depressed about, or can think of no reason to be depressed. The depressed person does not feel or seem to be his/her normal self. The depression is experienced as happening to the person, rather than being part of them. In other words the experience and the observed phenomena have the qualities of an illness that intrudes inexplicably and uncontrollably into the life of the individual. Many psychiatric
conditions have this quality, to a greater or lesser extent, of being experienced as intrusive, or inexplicable, and some ways as alien.

A further question arises from the meaningful account, where we are able to identify reasons for the depression. In what sense could a loss such as the death of a loved one be the cause of the depression? We can describe in human terms how that might be: because the two people had shared happy experiences, had supported each other, confided intimate concerns; in short because they meant a lot to each other. Does this mean that the loss caused the depression in the same sense that loss of support causes an apple to fall? Apples fall off trees all over the world in the same way, following the same laws of nature, yet the death of one person has a quite different emotional effect from the death of another. The difference appears to be related to the significance of one and not the other. We must conclude either that our concepts of meaning and significance must be translatable into other terms more like those of physics, or that different ideas of cause and effect are operating. If it is the latter, are cause and effect in the mind different from cause and effect in the rest of the world? In the course of the book we shall argue that states of mind are genuinely causal, that the causal processes are different from those of physics, but not different from those in biology generally. We will also find that even mental states that are experienced as intrusive, inappropriate, and uncontrolable may arise from the experiences and personality of the individual. Then the clinical and research implication is that therapeutic approaches should address those areas.

We will see also that the second kind of explanation of depression, as a form of illness, may be appropriate. We will not however be able to entertain that possibility until we have addressed a further set of questions. If the constellation of emotions, beliefs, or behaviours, seen in depression is not linked to the rest of a person's life or experiences, is there a difference between this and their other mental states which we readily think of as meaningful? For instance if I was happy last year because I got a good new job, and now I am depressed for no apparent reason, was the job really the cause of my happiness, or was my happiness as inexplicable as my depression? If I suppose that my depression arose from an abnormality of my brain function, could I then put last year’s happiness down to brain function? This has a certain appeal because it must have involved alterations in brain function, but does that mean that the new job was not really part of the causal chain? As we shall see attempts have been made to argue that those meaningful events that we think of as causing our feelings, thoughts, and behaviours do not really do that, and only brain processes are genuinely causal. But these attempts do not succeed. The alternative is to suppose that different causal processes might have operated in
last year’s happiness and this year’s depression. If this is the case we will need again two forms of causal process. From the research and clinical perspectives, the questions do not stop there. Even if we can elucidate two different kinds of origin of mental events and behaviours, how do we determine when each is operating separately or in combination? Our aim is to provide an approach to this question, first through an analysis of causal processes in the operation of the mind, then through a consideration of these within the context of biology and development, and finally in an enquiry into the origins of some of the major psychiatric disorders.

The problem area with which we are concerned of course has historical roots, and an understanding of these helps to make the issues clearer. The distinction between meaning and causality, and the related distinction between understanding and explaining, arose at the turn of the nineteenth century within the new cultural sciences, the Geisteswissenschaften. The distinctions signified a major problem, the apparent misfit between the phenomena studied by these new sciences—human beings and culture, and specifically the meaning that pervades them—and the assumptions and methods of the natural sciences, developed since the seventeenth century. Meaningful phenomena show a particularity (‘uniqueness’) uncaptured by general laws. They apparently cannot be subsumed under causal laws of the natural sciences. Further, meaning bears a loose relation to ‘hard facts’, so that understanding of it tends to appear subjective. It seemed, therefore, that knowledge of meaningful phenomena could not be accommodated by the methodology of the natural sciences, based in assumptions of generality, causality, and objectivity. Hence there arose a dichotomy between the natural sciences and the sciences of meaning, implying the autonomy of the latter. This whole problematic, subsequently endorsed and elaborated in hermeneutic readings of the cultural sciences, and evident currently in various post-modernist critiques, was expressed by the turn-of-the-century distinctions between meaning and causality, and understanding and explaining.1

The problem of meaning in relation to scientific method and explanation as it arose at the turn of the nineteenth century was recognized immediately as relevant to the new psychiatry by Jaspers. His Allgemeine Psychopathologie2 attempted to construct a psychiatry that could embrace both causal explanation in terms of material events and empathic understanding of non-causal meanings. The tension between the two methodologies, however, was covered over rather than resolved. Jaspers’ problem was psychiatry’s problem. He anticipated what was to become a split within psychiatry between explanation of disorder in terms of brain pathology and ‘explanation’ in terms of (extraordinary) meanings. The former had no room for meaning; the latter became subject to much philosophical stick, because of its pretensions to be science.
Psychoanalytic theory, as the main and uncompromising proponent of meaningful explanation of disorder, has carried the burden of the problematic status of meaning in relation to scientific method. Problems identified for it included apparent lack of objectivity of data, the non-empirical character of its hypotheses (alleged unfalsifiability), and the questionable assumption that meanings are causes. The pressure, mounting in the 1960s, contributed to the development of the hermeneutic readings of psychoanalytic theory popular in the 1970s, which accepted, with more or less regret, the demarcation between understanding and causal, or more generally, scientific, explanation. The hermeneutic readings of psychoanalytic theory, important and presumably inevitable as they were at the time, were relatively short-lived. In part this was because of their implausibility: psychoanalytic theory, like all psychological theories, did seem interested in the aetiology of behaviour, and not just in, as it were, spinning meanings out of the air. But also and in any case, at about this time, the terms of the problem were being transformed. In psychology, behaviourism was in process of being surpassed by a new kind of psychological science, in which mental states played centre stage. This was of course the ‘cognitive revolution’ in psychology, which began roughly in the 1960s and which continues apace.

The appearance of this cognitive paradigm has powerful implications for the problems embodied in the traditional distinctions between meaning and causality, and between understanding and explaining. The new paradigm establishes mental states and processes as subjects for scientific enquiry, and as having a role in the scientific explanation of behaviour. At the same time, the working assumption is apparently that mental states are causal, or, to put the point more fully, that mental states are invoked in causal explanations of behaviour. Further, though here we encounter many problems and controversies, the prima facie implication is that the meaning which characterizes mind comes within the domain of scientific enquiry, implicated in mental causation.

Inevitably psychiatry has inherited all the philosophical or conceptual problems of psychology, including the problem of meaning and causality, but it faces further specific ones of its own. There are certainly problems with construing meaningful mental states as causes of behaviour already in the normal case, but there is a further reason for doubting the relevance of meaningful explanation in the case of disorder. The reason is simple, on the surface, namely, that the notion of disorder is applied precisely at the point where meaning comes to an end. Roughly, the question of disorder is raised when there is (serious) failure of meaningful connection between mental states and reality, or among mental states, or between mental states and action. In the apparent absence of meaningful connections, we may posit different kinds of
mechanism, involving physical causation, mechanisms which have nothing to do with meaning, with beliefs, desires, plans, etc. Given breakdown in meaning, in mental order, it is plausible to suppose that we require explanation in terms of non-meaningful processes, specifically disruption by some form of biological abnormality. This *a priori* consideration lends weight to the so-called ‘medical model’ in psychiatry, insofar as it seeks to explain psychological disorder by reference to biological pathology.

The simplicity of this line of thought is overshadowed, however, because the issue of where the limits of the meaningful lie presses hard. Psychological theory may find meaning beyond the point at which common sense runs out. Many controversies within and around psychiatry turn on this point. The various alternatives to and critiques of mainstream, medical psychiatry share in common the charge that it has abandoned the search for meaning prematurely, has over-hastily opted for the lower-level form of explanation in terms of biological causation, because of a poverty-stricken theory of meaning. Freudian theory extended the limits of the meaningful beyond what was envisaged by the common sense, and the psychiatry, of the time. The diverse critiques of the ‘medical model’ which appeared in the 1960s and which came to be known collectively as the ‘anti-psychiatry’ movement, likewise charged psychiatry with having a blinkered perception of meaning. Szasz questioned the legitimacy of the very idea of ‘mental illness’ as used in psychiatry, and attacked the associated medicalization of what he described rather as (comprehensible) ‘personal problems of living’. Laing reframed madness, schizophrenia, as being an understandable, indeed the only sane response to a confused and contradictory family life. In examining the historical presuppositions of the relatively recent idea of ‘mental illness’, Foucault sought to show that it arose as an inevitable consequence of the excessive rationality of the Enlightenment, as the mere negation of reason, meaning and validity, that this essentially negatively defined madness was expelled, as it were, from consciousness, so also geographically, out of the community, into the asylums. The general criticism was that there is more meaning in so-called mental illness than meets the eye of psychiatry, and behind that, of the culture in which modern psychiatry has arisen.

Having surveyed from an historical perspective the problem space within which we are working, we can sketch briefly our position. Concerning the central problem of meaning and causality, we argue that explanations which invoke meaning (meaningful mental states) are causal, but they are in critical respects different from causal explanations of the sort found in the physical sciences. In this way we draw a distinction between two varieties of causal explanation, which we call the *intentional* and the *non-intentional*. This distinction differs
from the distinction between meaning and causality obviously because it is not drawn in terms of what is or is not causal. But also, the distinction we propose appears at a different place in the spectrum of the sciences, not between the ‘hard’ natural sciences and the ‘soft’ cultural sciences, but rather between the natural sciences of physics and chemistry, and the (equally natural) biological sciences. In the biological sciences we find concepts of function, design, rules, information, and information-processing, which are the essential ingredients of intentional-causal explanation as understood here. Marking the distinction at this point, between the pre-biological and the biological sciences has the effect of assimilating biology to psychology, and indeed to the cultural sciences. Our point can be put briefly by saying that meaning is akin to, or is on a continuum with, the information that pervades biological systems and functioning. This proposal stands in contrast to those which in one or another way endorse a radical distinction between the meaning of mind, language, and culture, and anything to be found in the natural sciences, biological or otherwise. These alternative positions, which otherwise of course vary greatly among themselves, include materialism and hermeneutics, and the views of such contemporary philosophers as Quine and Davidson.

For psychiatry, which seeks models of aetiology and intervention, the exploration of meaningful processes is of interest only insofar as meanings are causes. Once this claim is defined and established in the first part of the essay, though Chapters 1 to 6, we turn in the second part of the essay, Chapters 7 to 9, to explore breakdown of intentionality, and the nature and limits of intentional explanations of psychological disorder. The notion of breakdown of intentionality is also relevant to the first part of the essay, however. Intentional-causal explanations, our whole way of conceiving the phenomena which they explain, are permeated by concepts involving normative distinctions, such as function, and hence dysfunction, design more or less suited to the environment and task, normal as opposed to abnormal environmental conditions, true/false belief, adaptive as opposed to maladaptive behaviour, and so on. In this sense themes concerning disorder and its explanation run through all of the chapters.

While the philosophy of psychology has a long and familiar history, and is currently flourishing, the philosophy of psychiatry has been relatively neglected. The most thorough and influential analysis of the philosophical foundations of psychiatry was Jaspers’, and the distinction between meaningful and causal connections was fundamental to it. Since Jaspers it would be fair to say that philosophical study of general psychiatry has been in limbo. Philosophers have perhaps been wary of tackling the problems of psychiatry because of unfamiliarity. In part this would be modesty appropriate in the philosophy of
any science, art, or scholarly discipline, but a further factor here is probably the one identified by Foucault, that in the modern age ‘madness’ became alienated from culture, delegated then solely to the psychiatric profession. This has been a result detrimental to all concerned. While the philosophical foundations of psychiatry suffered from inevitable neglect, attention focused rather on the two broad areas referred to earlier: the scientific status or otherwise of psychoanalytic theory, and the diverse ‘anti-psychiatry’ critiques. The former debate did not concern primarily the concept of disorder, nor, a related point, psychiatry in general. The latter debates certainly were about psychiatry and the notion of ‘mental illness’, but their problems were social, political, and historical, not primarily philosophical. Controversy about the scientific status of psychoanalytic theory continued, and mainstream, medical psychiatry defended itself against the radical critiques.7

We do not attempt in this essay to weigh into these well-known though by now dated debates. Our aim is rather as stated above, to examine some philosophical aspects of the problem of meaning and causality, in the light of contemporary theory in philosophy of mind and cognitive psychology, and their bearing on the concepts of mental order and disorder. This examination is relevant to the controversies surrounding psychoanalytic theory, and the notion of mental illness, but these are not the main focus. If the essay can claim allegiance to any ‘tradition’ in the philosophy of psychiatry it would be to that represented by Jaspers. That said, we have no pretensions to follow Jaspers in the non-philosophical direction of his work, concerned with the details of psychiatric phenomenology and its classification. That emphasis belonged with the idea that meaningful phenomena have no causal role: all that was to be done, in this case, was to describe and classify them. By contrast, insofar as meaningful phenomena are implicated in causal processes, the task is to try to explicate some basic principles of their operation.

Having described some context, colloquial and historical, for the present essay we turn now to a Synopsis of its main themes:–

Intentionality is critical in the regulation and prediction of action

Our everyday understanding of each other’s actions is in terms of mental states, such as experiencing, feeling, believing, wishing, planning, and so on and so forth. This ‘folk psychology’ was quite different from early experimental psychology based in principles of conditioning, but it seems on the surface at least to be more like contemporary cognitive psychology, which, as described in the first chapter, constructs explanations of behaviour inside and outside the laboratory in terms of cognitive states. We characterize mental or cognitive states in a standard way, using the technical concept of ‘intentionality’: such
states are typically ‘directed at an object’, and this ‘intentional object’ may be non-existent in reality. Intentionality will be explored throughout the book, not only in application to psychological processes but also, and more controversially, in application to biological processes, with special attention to the ways in which intentional processes can break down. In the first chapter we argue for key interrelated points that underpin subsequent chapters, that intentional processes are essentially involved in the regulation of action, and that explanations which invoke such states are effective in the prediction of behaviour.

The idea that knowledge of mind serves for prediction is most plausible in the third- (or second-) person case, while the position in the first person-case, in self-knowledge, is less clear. It is proposed that second-order representations in the first-person case are indeed not used so much for the prediction as for the production of action. This is consistent with the general point that intentional states generally, whether first- or second-order, regulate action in accord with them, and it qualifies the emphasis on predictive utility so that it applies more to the third- (or second-) person case. It is proposed in a variety of contexts through the essay that meta-representational capacity is essential beyond certain levels of complexity of intentional processes, in order to maintain the integrity of action (including joint action), protecting against disarray; at the same time however meta-representational capacity brings with it further possibilities of disorder, arising for example from conflict between first- and second-order representations. Second-order intentionality in the first-person case—knowledge of one’s own mental states—is characteristic of many psychological phenomena, and it is proposed that it—as opposed to (first-order) intentionality—is what is likely to be critical in distinguishing the psychological from the biological.

**Intentional processes are causal**

Our grasp of mental life enables us to understand one another and to anticipate one another, and hence to collaborate in joint activities. Our ‘folk psychology’—notwithstanding errors—is remarkably effective at prediction, good enough to support our social life. Prediction of course is also an aim of science, and current behavioural science typically constructs its models in terms of cognitive, or more generally information-carrying states. The predictive power of folk and scientific psychology suggests that they are describing causal processes. These causal processes however have characteristics that are apparently quite unlike those envisaged in the physical sciences: they apparently involve intentional processes, carrying information about the environment.

The conclusion of the first chapter that meanings are causes runs up against various well-entrenched preconceptions, and raises many questions to be
picked up in subsequent chapters. How do meanings as causes relate to causes of action in the brain? (In Chapter 2.) Does the relativity of meaning, shown for example in the use of ‘empathy’ in recognizing meaning, exclude it from the domain of proper empirical science? (In Chapter 3.) Can meaningful causes be after all brought under the umbrella of physical causation? (In Chapter 4.) What precisely are the distinctive features of causality that involve intentionality? (In Chapter 5.) How do intentional processes develop through the phylogenetic and ontogenetic scales, leading to, for example second-order intentionality? (In Chapter 6.) How in general do intentional-causal processes break down? (In Chapters 7 and 8.) These considerations are applied in Chapter 9 to a variety of kinds of psychological disorder with which psychiatry and clinical psychology deal.

The intentional processes that regulate behaviour are encoded in the brain

We start in the second chapter by noting that cognitive behavioural and neuro-sciences have incorporated the idea of causation by meaningful, information-carrying states by using the notion of encoding: the information (or meaning) that regulates behaviour is encoded in states of the brain. The rest of the chapter defends and explicates this way forward. While the behavioural and brain sciences are happy to proceed in this way, the encoding thesis, at least insofar as it is applied to meaning, has come in for much philosophical criticism. The philosophical criticisms are complex, turning on lines of thought such as the following. The brain basically consists of physico-chemical processes, following physico-chemical laws. As such they may well be able to instantiate ‘symbols’ and ‘syntax’ sufficient for computational purposes, but they never could possess genuine intentionality, which essentially involves a subjective understanding of their meaning. Or again, the causes of behaviour, of muscle contraction, must be local to the effects, and what is local are the physico-chemical, syntactic processes. Meaning, by contrast, is not local to the brain and behaviour, but essentially involves the environment.

The arguments used to defend the idea of encoding in the face of considerations such as the above all turn essentially on the assumption, already prepared in the first chapter, that there is a logical, conceptual connection between meaning and its expression in intentional activity. This broadly Wittgensteinian approach to meaning, though currently somewhat unfashionable in the philosophy of cognitive science, in fact can do a great deal of constructive work in this area. Its effect is to ground meaning in the (higher-level, intentional) interactions between the living being and its environment, and this avoids preventing problematic definition of meaning in other terms.
that are too subjective (for example consciousness) or too objective (an environment to which we are not sensitive).

It becomes clear in this kind of defence of the notion of ‘encoding’, however, that it needs to be interpreted in a quite specific way. In particular, ‘encoding’ should not be understood as implying that meaning is ‘in the brain’; rather, if meaning is anywhere, it is distributed over the interactions between the living beings and their environment and among each other. The claim is not that meaning is ‘in the brain’, but exactly that it is encoded in the brain. The concept of encoding serves among other things to explain how events non-local in space or time function as proximal causes in the production of behaviour. Further, what meaning is encoded is to be understood essentially in terms of what behaviours—in varying conditions—it plays a role in producing. —The second chapter begins on the basis of the familiar division between brain on the one hand and meaningful, mental states on the other. But this division ceases to be of primary interest as the arguments are developed. What is crucial to the regulation of intentional behaviour is that intentional (meaningful, information-carrying) states are involved, whether conceived as mental or cognitive states, realized in the brain, or as brain states, encoding meaning. The neural causation of intentional behaviour is in this way not only not incompatible with causation by intentional states, but is in fact an alternative expression of the same point.

Intentionality involves relativity, but can be part of science nevertheless

One long recognized problem of meaning in relation to science is that its recognition involves subjectivity and relativity, and this is considered in the third chapter. Our general approach is to endorse this relativity, however, as opposed to trying to wriggle out of it. We endorse it as an integral part of a philosophy and science that is based in the notion of action, which means interaction, and hence involves relativity. What is lost—the absolute object, represented by the absolute measure—we can do without. Relativity in knowledge of mind and meaning is apparent in the very old idea, recently revived in philosophy and developmental psychology, that it involves ‘empathy’, a kind of cognitive-affective perspective-taking. A much broader approach to the problem, concerning representation and knowledge in general, is found in Wittgenstein’s influential discussion of rule-following. The notion of rule-following serves to capture the concept of order in reality and thought, as being through time, in activity, as opposed to being static, in the form of objects. The negative conclusion of Wittgenstein’s analysis of rule-following is that the rule is not laid down in advance; the positive implication is that it is created in practice. This may be
expressed by saying that order is not given absolutely, independently of practice itself. At this stage the concept of agreement in judgement shows up as critical, and this in turn involves comparison between and allowances for points of view. Agreement is not a necessary or a sufficient condition of someone’s following a rule, but one person’s judgement about another that they are following a rule, is based on the observer’s inclination to agree with (or empathize with) what the other is doing. While a (liberal) notion of agreement is critical, signifying that ‘reality’ is for us closely bound together with the social, it is not the only basis of judgement. There is another constraint, on action itself, made by the independent reality within which we act: we are not free to act in whatever way we like, because reality prohibits certain options. The pragmatic constraints made by reality underlie a normative distinction for judgement: judgement is correct insofar as it involves predictions that facilitate successful action, and is wrong insofar what it predicts leads to action being thwarted.

Relativity has traditionally been thought, since Plato’s critique in the Theaetetus, to imply subjectivity and the collapse of objectivity. What is lost, however, in post-modernity generally, is (only) the notion of an absolute object, and what relativity really implies is the need for a different philosophy. Relativity arises because it is the human being—specifically the activity of the human being—that is the measure, the means of representation. In this context distinctive relativistic, non-absolute concepts of objectivity are required, in terms of invariance relations between results of measurement made from different points of view. Relativistic, non-absolute definitions of measurement and reality are in fact familiar in contemporary physical science. Relativity, conceived as interaction between the measure and what is measured, is familiar in all twentieth-century, post-modern, scientific paradigms. In this context the fact that meaningful phenomena show relativity does not at all rule out there being a ‘science of meaning’, but on the contrary suggests that such a science has a particular place among others. This conclusion of the third chapter is taken up in various ways in the following three chapters.

Causality involving intentionality is not the standard kind in the physical sciences, but essentially involves systemic functional activity

If meaning is a causal relation then an obvious and parsimonious option is to assimilate it to causal relations generally, and specifically to those that are reasonably well defined in the physical sciences. Since, on the other hand, it turns out that meaning cannot be assimilated to causality in that sense, the prospect appears of a new, distinctive form of causality that, unlike in the physical sciences, involves meaning. This is the line of thought pursued in the fourth chapter.
A common view in contemporary philosophy of science and metaphysics is, roughly, that A causes B if and only if A is always followed by B and this correlation is covered by a natural, specifically a physical, law. The proposal that this kind of analysis can serve to define “B means (or carries the information that) A” goes under the name of Causal Semantics. Causal semantics is subject to three main criticisms. Firstly, its explanation of the content of meaningful states tends to be either inadequate or vacuous: the former if environmental causes of content are defined in terms of physics, and the latter if they are defined in terms of the content they are supposed to be causing. Secondly, causal semantics cannot adequately explain the fact that informational or meaningful states can come to represent what does not exist: correlations between events can be more or less reliable, but there is no apparent sense to a mis-correlation, and hence none so far to the crucial normative distinction between ‘correct’ and ‘incorrect’ information. The third problem for causal semantics is that it cannot obviously account for the conventional nature of the link between sign and signified: the fact that “chair” means chair is apparently not a matter of natural law, physical or otherwise, but a matter of convention which could be, and of course in many languages is, different.

—According to the account proposed in preceding chapters, the diagnosis of these difficulties is in each case the same, namely, that Causal Semantics neglects, in fact goes out of its way to deny, the subjective involvement in meaning, the fact that the representing system contributes to it. This deficit is made good by so-called Functional Semantics, which specifies the causal relations of content by reference to the design of the representing system, this being understood in evolutionary theoretic terms. While this grounding in evolutionary theory is critical and important, it is possible to construct definitions of content, accuracy, and error that refer primarily to the (intentional) activity of the system, an approach consistent with the line of argument so far. Content is defined in terms of its use in regulating systemic activity. Content so defined cannot be circumscribed, as in Empiricism: it is not a matter of pre-given sensory qualities, but is as diverse and elaborated as is systemic function through phylogeny and ontogeny. To put the point another way, content is specific to particular kinds and instances of systems. It includes what is common to all or many living beings, such as edge-detection, but also, eventually, cultural meanings, and what is specific to individual human beings, so-called ‘personal meanings’. This is the great range of the content that regulates human behaviour. The increasing specificity of content corresponds to increasing specificity of causal principles: the causal principles required to predict the behaviour of biological and psychological systems become increasingly specific. At the end-point are principles that refer only to the individual and these
define the ‘self-caused’ actions of the agent. The conclusion of the fourth chapter that the causal role of content cannot be grasped in terms of causality found in the physical sciences, but rather implies a distinctive form of semantic causality, is elaborated in the next chapter.

Intentionality in biological systems

We have made the case that the causes of human behaviour have to be understood in terms of the relationship of the person to his surroundings. Behaviour can be predicted by beliefs and emotions directed to certain aspects of the external world that are of importance to the person as a psychological and biological being. So far we have argued that explanations of this kind, often referred to as ‘folk psychology’, are not in some way illusory or in need of replacement by a more sophisticated theory. In fact the explanations that we use in everyday life, and the way we understand them, appear to be on the whole quite good. They do not suffer from fundamental philosophical or scientific flaws. This should not be surprising, given that a key to our success as social beings is our ability to account for our own, and other people’s actions. We might suppose that an efficient evolutionary principle could be that the assumptions that we make in everyday life to predict behaviours would be substantially correct.

In one sense it may seem strange that we have laboured hard to get back to the point that most people start from. However it will have been apparent that many of the prevailing philosophical positions do not accord with folk psychology, and do suppose that the real explanations do not look like the ones we ordinarily use. There may be many objections to the case that we have put so far, one of which will undoubtedly be that it creates more problems than it solves. After all, it could be argued, if the explanation of behaviour and the workings of the mind entail meaning, and meaning does not map well on to physical entities nor physical causation, then the theory is bound to remain in the humanities, and is unlikely to be reconcilable with the physical sciences.

Our response to this is to return to the concept of intentionality. According to Searle ‘Intentionality is that property of many mental states and events by which they are directed at or about or of objects and states of affairs in the world.’ He and many others have confined the concept to the mind, and he has argued strongly that any extension to other systems is misleading. However if we restate the definition of intentionality leaving out the word ‘mind’ it becomes evident that it applies equally to a much wider range of processes. Indeed we make the case in Chapters 5 and 6 that intentionality is pervasive throughout biological systems, and far from divorcing mind from body, the reinstatement of folk psychology as genuinely causal, as part of a wider set of
intentional processes, makes it by the same token biological and psychological. It may appear that by taking that step the psychological is being ‘reduced’ to the biological and therefore that the thesis regarding the mind is mechanical and deterministic. However this is far from the case. Once the general principles of intentionality seen throughout biological systems have been outlined, it becomes clear that they have the potential both to create the conditions for predictable mechanical operation seen in physiological and many behavioural systems, and for flexible, creative, and generally less predictable functioning typical of human psychological functioning. In other words after we take intentionality ‘down’ we can identify those features that enable us to get back ‘up’ again. We claim that tracking down and up is valuable in rather different ways. Tracking down establishes the unity of causal processes throughout biology; tracking up enables us to make some predictions about psychological causality. We assume that the differences that we can identify between the operation of intentional systems in simple biological systems and in psychological processes specify steps that have occurred in evolution.

The case that intentional processes, as defined in the quotation by Searle, are seen throughout biological systems is made first through an example. This serves to highlight particular features of intentional processes that are unique to biological processes, and indeed help to define them. Blood pressure is regulated by a number of mechanisms including a circuit from receptors in the arterial wall (baroreceptors), via nerves to the brainstem, and further nerves to muscles in the arteries that alter blood pressure through contraction and relaxation. The electrical impulses in the nerves, and in the brain stem, carry information about blood pressure, and hence meet Searle’s definition. This formulation would not present difficulties for most physiologists but it would for Searle on the grounds that there is a lot that is different between the workings of the mind and the regulation of blood pressure. This is indeed true and so our task is to show the ways in which intentionality is the same in the mind and the cardiovascular system, then to show how the differences build on the similarities.

The feature of intentional process that takes us to the heart of their operation is their relationship to the physical properties of the system. It might seem that what travels from the baroreceptors is just a series of physical events, however what ensures that the information about blood pressure is transmitted is the link between the nervous impulses and the blood pressure. That link is not physical in the sense that it is not the energy or the force of the blood pressure that sends the impulses. Rather, changes over a specified range of frequencies correspond to changes in blood pressure. That correspondence is defined by rules. Rules stipulate what the response to a set of events will be.
In this case the rule links the blood pressure to the frequency of impulses. Crucially, that link could be specified in other ways, by different sets of rules, that preserve the information, and lead to identical control of blood pressure. The physics do not constrain the nature of the links, but the rules do. Furthermore the rules are in charge. That is to say you can get a prediction of the way the system will work from the rules but not the physics. In the case of the regulation of blood pressure some changes in pressure do not lead to any alteration in the frequency of impulses in the nerves from the baroreceptors, some to minor changes, and some to substantial changes. The frequency changes are not specified by the physics of the blood pressure but by the rules of correspondence, and in this case these do not operate in a linear association with the changes in pressure. The idea of the rule is crucial to the idea that the system responds to what matters for its effective functioning, whether in the environment of the body as in the case of blood pressure, or the external environment. Rules provide the means whereby there can be efficient information processing of the salient features of the environment for the organism. In the regulation of blood pressure it is the range of pressures to which it is important to respond in order to maintain oxygen to vital organs, especially the brain. A further example exemplifies the point. The frequency of impulses in the optic nerve of the horseshoe crab, *Limulus*, is roughly proportional to the logarithm of light intensity in its surroundings. This is adaptive because the crab is exposed to light intensities that vary by a factor of ten million. If the frequencies bore a linear relationship to these variations, the range of frequencies required to encode the information would, at the lower end of the range, require impulses every several thousand seconds, which could not result in effective signalling. The scope for the rule to vary, in contrast to the physics which can not, creates the conditions for the adaptation of the organism to the environment.

**Dual focus: driving intentionality down, and defining the biological contrasted with the physical**

The operation of rules is seen also in the link between DNA, RNA, and protein structure. The sequence of nucleotides in the DNA is not constrained by a physical law, and many sequences other than those found in DNA are physically possible. The physics permits, but does not constrain. The constraint derives from the rules linking nucleotide sequences in the DNA to the RNA structure and thence to protein structure. The rules are integral to the intentionality of the genetic code with respect to protein structure and function. This constraint also ensures that information about biological structures is passed from one generation to the next. The genetic code has intentionality
with respect to structure and function of the organism in the environment. If
the construction of genes were determined by physics they could not serve the
function of passing on this information; there would not be the flexibility for
the sequence of molecules in the DNA to correspond to structure and func-
tion of proteins. The primacy of the code over the physical determinants is
also demonstrated in that some areas of the DNA molecule do not code for
any amino acids, and in some instances nucleotides can be interchanged with-
out altering the information about protein synthesis. By contrast other
nucleotide replacements alter protein structure with radical implications for
function.

The concept of rules is also central to our idea of the way that evolution
occurs. As Polanyi argued, the fact that DNA structure is not specified by phys-
ical laws, creates the ‘slack’ which opens up the opportunity for mutations that
are essential to evolution. However of itself such slack would simply be chaos
if the rules for the assembly of molecules into biologically active structures were
not operating. The rules ensure that structure and function are preserved.

Thus rules are essential to biological processes in at least three ways: they
define the causal links between the environment and the organism, they
ensure replication of structure and function over generations, and they create
the conditions of balance between the physical indeterminacy of biological
systems and order that is required in evolution.

However, three further aspects of the operation of rules are implied in this
account, and need to be spelled out. Firstly rules are conventionalized within
biological systems. They have to be followed throughout the system for the
information to be preserved, and for this to happen the elements in the system
have to use the same convention. The term ‘agreement’ adequately captures
the essential point that how a rule is specified is open to substantial variation,
but that rule has to be adopted throughout the system, for it to work. This is
linked to the point made earlier in respect of Wittgenstein’s view of what is
involved in a person’s following a rule: the rule is made in a shared practice. In
respect of a person that means it is made in their shared social interactions, and
for a biological system it means that elements of the system work in consort
with other elements. In both cases the idea that the rule is made captures that
there is a convention that things will be this way rather than that; that it could
be otherwise, at least within the constraints of natural laws. That the making of
the rule occurs in a shared practice indicates that the convention is shared
among the participating elements.

Secondly the operation of rules creates the possibility of mistake and decep-
tion. If a rule specifies how the physical events in a system correspond to a
state of affairs A in its environment, then any other state of affairs that creates
the same physical events, will lead that system to respond as if the state of affairs A exists. This echoes definitions proposed earlier of correctness and error in terms of functional activity. For example if the nerves leading from the baroreceptors are stimulated electrically over the range of frequencies that convey information about blood pressure changes the system will respond as if those changes had occurred. This principle is exploited in the production of some vaccines. The immune system normally responds to infectious agents, however molecules that resemble sufficiently the key features of those agents that trigger the immune response can also trigger that response.

Finally, quite simply, a system can fail to operate according to the rules, leading to malfunction. Function and dysfunction, success and failure, health and disease, are in constant juxtaposition in rule-bound systems. By contrast there is no sense in which physical events determined solely by physico-chemical laws, malfunction, fail, or become diseased. In making this observation it is crucial that we see that the concept of malfunction is closely bound up with that of adaptation, and both are integral to the way rules operate in biological systems. A departure from the rules for the encoding of states of affairs leads to malfunction in the environment of those states of affairs, whether blood pressure, oxygen, or changes in light intensity. However it may lead to function in respect of a different state of affairs. If the outcome is adaptability to that state of affairs, then for the organism in that environment the departure from the rules for state of affairs A becomes following the rules for adaptation in state of affairs B. This process describes the role of mutations in evolution. For example a mutation of a gene involved in the synthesis of haemoglobin leads to the condition, sickle cell disease. However the sickle cell trait confers resistance to malaria and so is advantageous under some environmental conditions.

**Driving intentionality back up**

Although consideration of the operation of intentionality in biological systems leads directly to concepts of malfunction, it is not yet rich enough to inform ideas of malfunction in psychological systems. These require that we take intentionality back ‘up’. The key here is the specification of rules. If we accept that the operation of rules requires that a convention is developed, and that there is a co-ordinated use of that convention in the system, then there has to be a mechanism for generating this state of affairs. In the majority of organisms this appears to be determined as a component of inherited characteristics. The frequency ranges over which information about blood pressure, or about surrounding light intensities, are transmitted are invariant within species, and therefore presumably genetically determined. Different species
convey information about changes in light intensities over different frequency ranges. Living organisms transmit rules from one generation to the next. This requires a particular intersection of the invariant laws of physics and chemistry and rules. The rule about how an amino acid is coded in the DNA molecule is transmitted from one generation because the invariance of physical laws guarantees its replication. Working from general evolutionary principles we assume that good rules are selected for their survival value, or if the concept of the selfish gene is supported, then this translates into the selfish rule. The point about the physics is that it ensures that once the rule is established it is repeated, but the point about rules is that if they can be specified one way they can be specified in another. An apparatus that can generate and manage different rules for the interpretation of the external world can see the world in more than one way, and hence can act in different ways depending on the rules under which events are interpreted. This is the key to the operation of intentionality in human psychology.

Of course the evolution of such an apparatus did not start with humans. A major reason that rats were so much in demand as a possible model for human psychology was that they respond to some stimuli under one set of rules only, for example certain tastes, and can learn to link other stimuli to those same rules. They are able to learn. The more this capacity is developed the greater the potential for flexibility regarding habitats. How might this have operated in the evolution of the human mind? Let us start with an organism that responds to fire under a set of rules that denotes danger, and to a dead hen under a set of rules that denotes not good for eating. This organism will do fine in settings that do not require heat other than that provided by its natural protection, provided it is also a vegetarian. However if this organism is able to re-interpret the edibility of the hen once the fire has had an effect on it, then a wider set of food supplies comes available. However it is crucial that this organism is able to represent both the cooked and the uncooked state, and the dynamic process that links the two, not just one or the other. This then starts to open up the potential for an appreciation of causality. Furthermore the different interpretation of the edibility of the hen in relation to the fire also can lead to a reinterpretation of the fire. Once it has been reinterpreted once, that can happen again. Thus new distinctions and new generalizations can arise and this is the essence of rule generation.

However this brings new challenges. One has to do with the range of stimuli that are relevant to the organism. With respect to food the demands on the rules of interpretation are least where an organism has a limited range so that the rules regarding edibility can be limited to a few cues from sight, smell, or taste. If the range expands then the rules have either to stipulate a wider range
of specifics that denote edibility, or they have to identify key features that different foods have in common, such as colour. A second concerns the proportion of the rules of interpretation that are open to revision, or expansion. If an organism has a limited range over which rules are acquired but the majority are specified genetically, and are inflexible, then it is not vulnerable to any failures to acquire those rules or mistakes in learning them. However if the majority of the organism’s map is acquired then the risks are greater. A third challenge arises from the relationship of the rules of interpretation to action. In evolution the main function of effective interpretation of salient features of the environment is to facilitate action in response to cues for threat, affiliation, safety, or food. Inherited rules generally guarantee a smooth and rapid passage from representation to action. Acquired rules may not provide that guarantee if the extent of their generality, and the location of the boundaries of the discriminations, such as between well cooked and inadequately cooked meat, are inaccurate.

Humans, it seems, have ‘exploited’ the potential inherent in rule-bound processes, that events which can be viewed under one set can also be viewed under another. Furthermore they respond to numerous environmental stimuli; not only but for a long time three of the traditional elements earth, fire and water, and more recently air, and a wide range of organisms other than those that they eat. Having created new uses for items in the environment they have then added to the range of stimuli that need to be discriminated, and to which responses are required. They seem to be well suited to this because of a capacity both to generate broad areas, or domains of interpretation, and specific subgroupings within these broad domains. These domains not only refer to features that objects have in common, but also to the actions associated with them. Thus the general characterization ‘tool’ does not so much refer to the physical characteristics of the object as to the use to which it is put. Having emphasized the extent to which humans are capable of generating novel rules for interpreting the external world and their place in it, it is equally important to recognize the extent to which hard-wired rules of interpretation contribute. Some stimuli gain privileged and rapid access to areas of the brain that respond with an emotional charge that more or less determines the way they will be interpreted. For example some stimuli activate areas of the amygdala that produce fear, and the information about the stimulus by-passes areas of the brain involved in alternative appraisals. This means that the human brain includes structures that encode intentional processes in which the rule-bound responses are no less genetically specified and inflexible than those in the optic nerve of the limulus, and others in which the rules of interpretation are open to acquisition and revision. Clearly this combination offers some advantages
in the trade-off between flexible and potentially creative interpretations, which might be mistaken and may not provide efficient guide to action, and inflexible ones that are more likely to be correct, and guarantee a basis for action. However this is a co-existence that is in some senses uneasy and may create the conditions for disorder.

The task of taking intentionality back ‘up’ is not complete without a consideration of the way two or more organisms that have evolved the capacity for multiple rules of interpretation may co-exist, co-operate, or compete. As long as our examples concern the interaction between a rule-bound organism and the physical world, then only one side of the equation is open to variation. When both participants behave in ways that are open to variations, depending on the rules, there is scope for substantial misinterpretation. This is not a problem for many organisms in which the rules of social interaction are invariant and genetically set. This does not mean that they lack complexity. Bees communicate the direction and distance of nectar-bearing flowers in relation to the hive in a dance in which the distance and the angle of the central run to the sun carries the key information. This has all the features of intentional processes that we described earlier, notably that it is conventionalized and held in common by the community of bees. If human beings were not particularly social animals we might feel justified in postponing consideration of their social interactions until we had mastered their interactions with the physical world. Indeed perusal of many philosophical texts might suggest that this is a widely adopted strategy! However newborn infants give priority to face like stimuli over all others, and spend the first 6 months of life perfecting the art of communicating with their parents and other interested adults, before turning their attention to the physical world. When that time comes, they do it socially. When the normally developing child inspects an object, he or she checks whether the parent is also looking or brings it to show the parent; or points to it looking alternately at the object and the parent. Over time the child moves from the social world of the family, to the wider social world of peers, teachers, and other adults, and the move to mature adult functioning entails the independent establishment of social roles and relationships. The evolution of the human brain has also been the evolution of the social brain.

The advantages of social interactions between organisms that are capable of generating multiple rules of interpretation and action are clear. It opens up the possibility not only that individuals may find new ways of interpreting events in the environment and new uses for objects, but also of novel forms of cooperation among individuals and division of labours. Presumably this also provides the setting in which individual differences can flourish. Once it is
possible to create social structures it is also possible for a diversity of intellectual and motor skills to be selected. However our account of the way intentionality operates, once the rules are not hard wired, might lead us to conclude that social interactions are likely to be highly problematic. If each person has the potential to behave, and interpret the behaviours of others, under multiple sets of rules then how is it possible for each participant to know which ones to use? It would be tempting to see language as the solution to this problem, however developmentally children clearly encounter this issue before language has been established, and it is not difficult to generate examples where multiple meanings for the same utterance can be envisaged. Generally signs have meaning insofar as they are located in an order, or form. The implication here is that the order that underlies language is a matter of shared practices, or ‘forms of life’ to use Wittgenstein’s expression.

To this extent language is a sign of the solution to the problem rather than the solution. The solution itself requires a way of establishing and monitoring which interpersonal rules apply in any particular interactions. Developmentally this is a capacity that children acquire early. Experiments on children’s reactions when their parents put on masks illustrated the point. Typically their first response was to cease whatever they were doing, apparently appraising the situation, then depending on other cues, such as where the experiment took place, they responded either with distress or laughter. In other words they appeared to decide whether the prevailing rules were ones of threat or humour, and their subsequent behaviours and interpretation of further actions of the parent occurred within that framework. The most impressive evidence in the first years of life for a preoccupation with establishing the prevailing rules of interpretation comes from children’s play. The demarcation between play and non-play is clearly established and the difference in the rules understood between the participants. More generally social interactions require the specification of arenas, or domains, of shared rules: the algorithms of social life.

In taking further this consideration of the capacity of the human mind to operate under various and novel shared rules for interpretation and action we need to go back to our original description of the operation of intentional causal processes. We argued that intentionality links representation and action in the service of the welfare of the organism in the environment. As long as the intentional systems are comprised of hard-wired biological structures, these rules and the underlying conventions are not open to innovation or revision. Their harmonious operation has evolved over long periods and they have an established survival value. However, now we are considering examples in which the rules are in some degree acquired, and may vary rapidly depending upon internal states and needs, and external circumstances.
In other words the appearance of novel intentional sequences, which in evolution have occurred over thousands of years, may appear as a new perception, cognition, or action sequence, in humans from moment to moment. If the organism has the capacity to generate many representations underpinning a wide range of actions there is the risk that these may not consistently serve its interests. For example if different representations lead to contradictory actions each may undermine the other, or they may lead to confusion in the minds of other people. Diversity of representations needs to be accompanied by coherence. This implies a need for a capacity to monitor, not only the appropriateness of a representation to the demands of any particular situation, but also its compatibility with other representations and their associated actions, and the extent to which it is adaptive for the person. Our analysis stops well short of an adequate account of consciousness, however it does clearly suggest a purpose. The monitoring of the mental states of the moment has to cross reference with previous and other currently available intentional states, and to the future. This would seem to be the function performed by consciousness, by providing an awareness of these prior, other currently available, and possible future representations. The fact that we are referring to awareness and not just to information exchange is crucial to the issue of the preservation of coherence in the face of diverse representations. A central quality of awareness is a drive to integration and unity. This has the potential to ensure that multiple representations cohere in respect of actions in the service of the person as a whole, and to create discomfort when that is not achieved.

Intentionality and psychopathology

Our basic thesis regarding psychopathology is that once humans developed as organisms that can manipulate, manage, and create multiple rules for interpretation and action, they became vulnerable to a new set of psychological risks. Disorder of psychological functioning could therefore arise, not only from the kind of disruption of functioning that is familiar in all biological intentional systems, but also from the particular risks run by having this more complex capability. Before considering the nature of these distinctive risks we consider what we mean by disorder, and clarify breakdown in biological systems more generally.

In medicine, generally, the concept of disorder can be taken to refer to a failure of one or more physiological systems. In cases where life is threatened or the condition gives rise to suffering the definition is not problematic. In others there can be some dispute. However it is important to emphasize that there is an inherent relativity that is generally not very apparent. This is more evident in a definition of disorder along the lines of: ‘In medicine, generally, the concept of disorder can
be taken to refer to a failure of one or more physiological systems to maintain function within the range of environments encountered by the organism. In many instances this refinement makes very little difference because some key features of the environment on earth are invariant. For example all earthly environments contain oxygen, and all threats to the oxygen supply to the tissues of organisms that use oxygen, carry risk for disorder. However nutritional environments can vary considerably and there are variations in individuals’ capacities to respond to types of food that cause disorder in some situations and not others.

A second feature of disorder as generally understood in medicine directly concerns the role of intentionality. Physiological systems change in response to changing conditions, whether in the external world, or an individual’s behaviours, or within the body. Heart rate increases in response to exercise, respiratory rate in response to lowered oxygen in the atmosphere, and insulin levels increase in response to entry of glucose to the blood stream. Each of these physical facts, increased respiratory rate, heart rate or insulin, could be indicative of disorder or disease. Whether or not this is the case depends on whether they have come about in response to information about the conditions in the environment and themselves constitute effective and appropriate action to deal with those conditions. Thus the issue of the intentional status of the state of affairs is central to determining whether or not it denotes disorder. Indeed the definition of disorder requires the definition of function, and that is an intentional definition. We will return to this point after considering breakdown in physiological systems.

Thus far we have spelled out in some detail the nature of intentional causal processes. In Chapter 5 we contrast them with non-intentional, physical causal processes, and this contrast is crucial when we come to discussion of disorder and disease. Because intentional processes entail rules, information, and action, they require specialized equipment for their operation. For example the increase in blood glucose can only be the cause of increased release of insulin if there is a receptor that recognizes the glucose change and generates a signal for insulin release. The dance of a bee can only be the cause of another bee’s direction of flight if the bee has a processor that is able to recognize the key features of the dance. By contrast non-intentional causal processes simply follow the laws of physics and chemistry. This means that if a physical event takes place that undermines the intentional processes, i.e. the effective signalling and the effective action in response to environmental demands, then they break down. Thus a block in an artery impairs blood (and hence oxygen) supply to the tissues, and a tumour in the brain exerts pressure on nerves interrupting their ability to process information. The effect arises from the physical properties of the agent, its size, or force, or extent of radiation. (This is quite
different from intentional causal processes where what matters is the correspondence, which can have any sort of relationship to the physical properties of the stimulus provided it carries information about it.) Even though in these instances there is a non-intentional cause of the disorder, the analysis of whether it has indeed given rise to disorder has to refer also to intentionality. For example the size of a mass in the brain does not determine very precisely its effect on functioning. If a large brain mass did not interrupt the capacity of the brain to process information, nor threaten life, it would not be considered pathological. Similarly ionizing radiation can lead to small physical changes in DNA with devastating results, or to more extensive physical changes that have no consequences. The key issue is whether the physical changes alter the information, and whether that altered information has an impact on the functioning of the organism in the environment.

We turn now to the question of whether there are explanations for disorder that do not entail physical interruption of functioning. In one sense the answer looks straightforward. As we have outlined, once rules for responding and acting are acquired, and can be revised and multiplied, there is scope to make a mistake. Might that not provide the basis for disorder? Although it is highly relevant, in itself it is not enough, because an organism that is able to monitor and reflect on its own functioning should be able to spot a mistake and remedy it. The concept of disorder has to include the persistence of mistaken rules of interpretation and action. We are talking here of persistent misinterpretations of the actions of others, or recurrent thoughts that to not match external circumstances, or persistent mood change that is disproportionate to a person’s condition. Persistence and lack of permeability to contrary evidence are crucial.

In general terms our analysis hinges on the extent of the demands made in managing multiple sets of rules of interpretations, and the uneasy relationship between that capacity (mainly a function of the cerebral cortex) and the processes underpinning the more primitive and ultimately most pressing requirements for effective action, mainly a function of subcortical structures. In Chapter 8 we start with the observation, made both in analyses of the evolution of human thought and the functioning of biological systems generally, that rules of interpretation, manifest in humans as appraisals of events, beliefs and so on, are in the service of action. The principles are the same whether the actions refer to food and shelter, or to social functioning, or to the maintenance of an intellectual tradition. Representations that underpin or imply inaction are risky, because they leave the organism vulnerable. The general point then is that problems may arise because the link between acquired and revisable rules and action cannot be guaranteed.
This analysis does not presuppose particular routes to any disorder, however an example of one possible route helps to make the point. A child who is exposed to sexual abuse (assumed here to be a girl, but this applies equally to boys) is generally faced with a frightening and humiliating experience, for which effective action is often not available. This means action neither to obtain comfort nor to prevent it happening again. This may be the case whether or not the perpetrator is a parental figure, but where it is, the limitations on action may be even more severe. Then the link between the rules of interpretation and their associated emotions, i.e. ‘I am being abused and I need to be cared for and the perpetrator should be punished’ and action, may be severed. Instead actions are underpinned by beliefs and emotions that omit this information. Then two kinds of outcome may follow. Firstly the child may in effect place limitations on the scope of the rules of interpretation that she is able to make use of, and place limits on the extent to which they can be revised. If that limitation is cued initially by the fear associated with abuse then subsequently it may be activated by other cues for fear, thus becoming a more general mechanism. Then the factors maintaining this way of coping are likely to undermine simple attempts to correct ‘mistakes’. In effect the representational system that underpins action becomes constricted and not available for revision. Secondly the accurate rules of interpretation of the abuse and perhaps then of other fear-inducing events, and their associated emotions are likely to exist in an intermediate state where they are not capable of generating action and therefore safety. These can be seen as unresolved states that are likely to remain available to underpin or to undermine action at other times, for example in adult life. These also are likely to be representations that have not been available to testing and revision, and also are charged with emotions that belong with the original trauma rather than any current circumstances that may have triggered them.

The general analysis attached to this example may be applied in many other ways. Take two further cases. In the first, aspects of the environment make it difficult for the child to determine the prevailing domain in which social interactions take place. For example a young child goes to his parent crying because he has fallen over and hurt his leg. This, under most circumstances provides the parent with cues for entering the attachment domain, i.e. interactions in which the participants interpret each other’s behaviours within a framework of distress for which comfort from an attachment figure is needed. However the parent may respond in other ways, for example with anger because the crying is perceived as oppositional, or with laughter because it is seen as not serious or pathetic. The parent’s response creates an ambiguity as to whether s/he is responding to the child with anger, humour, or comfort.
INTRODUCTION AND SYNOPSIS

This may lead to a failure to act, or behaviours that belong to mutually contradictory actions, so that they do not cohere into effective action. This is exactly the kind of phenomenon that is seen in disorganized attachment where the infant may approach the parent with one part of the body, avoiding with another. A resolution of this kind of confusion may be achieved that preserves coherent action provided the child learns ways of omitting some of the facts in determining the domain of social interactions. Again, because the distortion creates the basis for action, it may be relatively impermeable to revision in the light of evidence. In the second, the origins of such distortions is found in the capacity of the individual to process information about the prevailing social rules. Some cognitive theories of schizophrenia propose that there is a deficit in the person’s ability to identify the salient features of context, particularly social context, leading to information overload, and hence difficulty in elaborating action. This may contribute to the ‘apathetic’ negative symptoms of schizophrenia. By contrast the positive symptoms of schizophrenia are characterized by highly inaccurate appraisals of external stimuli that do lead to action. Thus it may be that by narrowing the focus of information processing the individual in psychosis restores a basis for action, but at the expense of the accuracy of their rules of interpretation of events.

Summary

In spite of strenuous efforts, the attempt to preserve the unity of the sciences by supposing that psychological explanations can be recast in terms of physics and chemistry has not worked. Our aim in the first chapters of the book is to show that it cannot work, and indeed it would not be possible to conceive of evolutionary processes if it did. The key to understanding the antecedents and consequences of mental states and behaviours is an appreciation of the causal principles that emerged with the appearance of living organisms. These principles underpin the physical states of biological systems that are directed towards, and represent, aspects of the environment that demand a response, if the organism is to survive. Directedness is a hallmark of intentionality, but intentionality is not the sole province of mental states. Intentional causal principles are quite unlike those of the physical sciences, being spelled out not in terms of universal laws of energy and matter that apply without mistake or failure, but in conventionalized rules open to innovation, testing, revision, error, and deception. Over the majority of evolution these processes have been evident through selection of genes over many generations. The recent evolution of the human brain has resulted in a capacity to realize the same processes through the selection of mental representations and solutions, over the lifetime of each person. This has introduced quite new demands to monitor their
appropriateness, accuracy, and adequacy to underpin actions, in relation to
the physical and social environment; and new vulnerabilities that are evident
in various forms of psychopathology.

1. For an historical, critical review of these distinctions see G.H. von Wright,
_Explanation and Understanding_ (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul,
1971).

English translation by J. Hoenig and Marian W. Hamilton, _General

3. Hermeneutic readings of psychoanalytic theory included P. Ricoeur, _Freud
and philosophy_ (Yale University Press: New Haven, Connecticut, 1970); J.
Habermas, _Knowledge and human interests_ (Trans. J. J. Shapiro. Beacon
Press: Boston, 1971); G.S. Klein _Psychoanalytic theory_ (International
Universities Press: New York, 1976); and R. Schafer, _A new language for
A. Grünbaum provided important commentary ( _The Foundations of
Psychoanalysis: A Philosophical Critique_. University of California Press:
Berkeley, 1984; Précis of _The Foundations of Psychoanalysis: A Philosophical
Critique_, with peer commentary, _The Behavioral and Brain Sciences_, 9,
217–84.

4. Szasz, T. _The Myth of Mental Illness: foundations of a theory of personal


6. Foucault, M. _Madness and civilisation: a history of insanity in the Age of
Reason._ Trans. by R. Howard of _Folie et déraison: histoire de la folie à l’âge

7. E.g. A. Clare, _Psychiatry in Dissent_ (Tavistock Publications: London, 1967);
J. Wing, _Reasoning about Madness_ (Oxford University Press: Oxford,
1978); M. Roth and J. Kroll, _The Reality of Mental Illness_ (Cambridge
University Press: Cambridge, 1986); and L. Reznek, _The Philosophical

8. J. Searle, _Intentionality: An Essay in the Philosophy of Mind_ (Cambridge:
Cambridge University Press, 1983).

9. M. Polanyi, _Personal Knowledge: towards a post-critical philosophy._
Chapter 1

Mind, meaning, and the explanation of action

1.1 The ‘cognitive paradigm’ in psychological science

1.1.1 Cognition in the explanation of behaviour

The main idea of this chapter is that explanations of behaviour in terms of meaningful, mental states have theory-driven predictive power and are therefore causal. This idea is applied to our everyday folk psychology, but is tied here primarily to psychological science, specifically the ‘cognitive paradigm’. It should be said that the problematic—the nature of mind and meaning and their relation to causality—is impossible to understand in isolation from the history of ideas. Common sense and ordinary language have no difficulty with the idea that meaningful, mental states are causes, in the sense that explanations which invoke beliefs, desires, and so on, typically use terms such as ‘because’, ‘cause’, etc. The problem is not apparent here, but becomes so only in relation to preconceptions about the nature of mind, its relation to the body, and about the nature of meaning and causality. The problem has relatively little to do with common sense, but is much more to do with background philosophical assumptions.

Since the beginnings of the modern scientific view of the world, mind and its place in nature have been problematic. The problems were expressed by Cartesian dualism, the theory of two quite distinct substances, res extensa and res cogitans, which accompanied the development of the scientific world-picture. As Burtt argued in his classic study, Cartesian dualism accompanied the growth of the modern scientific world-picture not only in time, but was an inevitable complement to it (Burtt 1932; see also Bolton 1979, pp. 51–53, for a summary of philosophical themes in Burtt’s argument). The world described by the new physics was spatial (geometrical), material, independent, and objective. Mind, by contrast, was immaterial, non-spatial, and essentially subjective. This modern dualism effectively split the human being in two. The human body was conceived as matter like the rest of nature, and then mind comprised everything human that could not be construed as material.
In this way not only was the spiritual, or rational, soul distinguished from the body and from nature, but so also sensation, perception, appetite, and will, which would seem so clearly to be bodily qualities and functions, except insofar as the body, like the rest of nature, had been stripped of all sensitivity and life. Modern dualism split the *natural* human being in two; in this respect it was a new conception, distinct from the various kinds of dualism found in ancient and scholastic thought (Burtt 1932, pp. 113ff.; Copleston 1960, pp. 120ff.).

The modern distinction between matter and mind raised very many problems, including the problem of causal interaction. It always was unclear how mental processes, being immaterial, could causally influence matter, specifically the body and the brain, or vice versa. Further, insofar as the material universe constituted a closed system in which energy remained constant, it seemed impossible that events within it should be affected by, or should affect, events in a different kind of reality altogether. In brief, it was apparently impossible for Cartesian mental events to cause material events; in particular, they apparently could not be causes of behaviour. From here it may be seen that if explanations of behaviour in terms of mental events are causal, the mental events in question are unlikely to be of the sort defined by Cartesian dualism. And the implication then would be in turn that the behaviour to be explained would not be of the sort defined by Cartesian dualism, either. The Cartesian concepts of mind and matter (including the body and behaviour) stand or fall together.

In positing two such distinct substances as mind and matter modern dualism made the prospect of relation between them irredeemably problematic. So far as concerned mind and body in particular, a relatively straightforward sign of the problem was the apparent impossibility of causal interaction between the two. But the same underlying difficulty gave rise to a variety of problems concerning the expression of mind in behaviour, among which was the ‘problem of knowledge of other minds’. Cartesian mind was private: mental states, according to dualism, are known directly in one’s own case, but otherwise they can be known only indirectly, by problematic inference from behaviour and speech. This epistemological problem did not arise at the start. The great seventeenth-century epistemological problem was not knowledge of other minds, but knowledge of the reality posited by the new physics. It should be emphasized that this reality was not the familiar one apparent in perception. Rather, the epistemological problem followed on the distinction between the world of sensory appearance and the *absolute* reality ‘behind’ it, a distinction fundamental to seventeenth-century science and made explicit in Cartesian dualism (Burtt 1932). The problem of knowledge of the external world (nature itself) remained the ‘scandal of philosophy’ until Kant. Within the
Cartesian (seventeenth-century) metaphysics, matter and mind were both problematic, each in their own though interdependent ways. Within this context, however, there was no problem of knowledge of other minds. This question, as to how one subject can know another, was beside the point, indeed could not arise, while there remained the problem of the (one) subject’s knowledge of object. Rather, the problem of inter-subjectivity began to make its appearance, through the nineteenth century, within post-Kantian Idealism, as the subject came to be seen as embodied, within nature, and among others (Bolton 1982; Mensch 1988).

The problem of knowledge of mind, that is to say, of ‘other minds’, arose in a particularly stark form within the foundations of psychological science in the latter decades of the nineteenth century. The possibilities and the problems of the new science were defined by dualism. Given acceptance of the Cartesian concept of mind, scientific psychology confronted two main tasks: study of mental phenomena (consciousness, sensation, perception, memory, and so on), and study of their relation to physical events. The first programme constituted the core of psychology, the second was the subsidiary psychophysiology. Both required a method of observing mental events, and the methodology implied by dualism was clear: mental phenomena are observed directly by their subject in introspection, while they are known only indirectly by others, on the basis, primarily, of the subject’s introspective reports. However, this introspectionist methodology was problematic on various counts, such as reliability, and its restrictive reliance on language-use. Behind such practical disadvantages lay the fundamental problem that Cartesian mental states were epistemically private, inaccessible to public observation and verification. This privacy, and the ontological status of mind as distinct from matter, were thoroughly problematic from the point of view of science method.

New options were needed. An alternative was indeed available within dualism, for inherent in it was the possibility of an alternative methodology concerned exclusively with the material world, and to what is accessible to public observation, namely, behaviour. While behaviourism represented a radically new approach to psychological science, still it operated within the thought-space defined by Cartesian dualism. Behaviourism was defined by dualism, negatively and positively. Dualism defined what it was that behaviourism was excluding as irrelevant to science, namely, the Cartesian mind. Further, and positively, Cartesian dualism bequeathed to behaviourism its general model of the topic of the new science, according to which the body, as Cartesian matter, is fundamentally non-intelligent, or mechanical, in particular, governed by the operation of reflex arcs. Behaviourism as a methodology eschewed reference to mental states for the purpose of explaining behaviour. Without a role in
explanation mental states were, from the point of view of psychological science, non-existent: there was no reason to posit them. Explanation of behaviour confined itself to causes in the environment, to stimuli affecting the agent. There was, however, available to methodological behaviourism a limited notion of something going on within the organism, namely, direct causal connections between stimuli and responses. These direct stimulus–response connections could be innately wired in, as anticipated in the Cartesian notion of the reflex arc, or made in learning procedures, according to the principles of association, in classical or operant conditioning. (On the early development of modern psychological science see e.g. Zangwill 1950; Robinson 1976; Gardner 1985; Baars 1986; Brennan 1986; Leahey 1994).

Methodological behaviourism combined with Stimulus–Response psychology dominated animal learning theory in the first decades of the century. There were signs of dissent even within animal learning theory, however, as psychologists in the 1930s and ‘40s sought to model ‘higher’ forms of behaviour, and apparently found the need to invoke cognitive states and processes. Two related features of behaviour were particularly important here. Firstly, animal behaviour is characteristically *purposive*, or *goal-directed*, and secondly, that this purposive behaviour is frequently *plastic*, that is to say, is flexible according to circumstances. One kind of example of plasticity is that of rats which, having learnt to run through a maze to the goal-box will, if the maze is flooded, swim to it (Macfarlane 1930). Flexible, purposive behaviour exhibits certain *higher-order invariants* that are not evident at the level of simple, physical (geometrical) descriptions of behaviour. Distinct sequences of behaviour can have in common that they lead to the same goal, and also, as in the example above, two behavioural sequences can follow the same path. It is then plausible to suppose that behaviour exhibits these invariants because the relevant features of the environment are *represented in* (encoded in) the animal. This is to say, what the animal acquires in the learning process is a ‘map’ of the maze, and an ‘expectancy’ of the goal. In this way plastic, purposive behaviour lends itself to cognitive modes of description and explanation, while non-purposive, or uniform, stereotyped behaviour, does not. Many experiments were devised to demonstrate the purposive nature of behaviour, and, in particular, various types of plasticity of means to end.¹

Cognitive learning theory stands in contrast to the more straightforward Stimulus–Response model. According to the former, what is acquired are associations between stimuli, not only associations between stimuli and responses. The contrast here can be expressed in various ways. One is to say that the cognitive model posits *representations* of the environment, something like a ‘mental map’, the simplest form of which would be patterns of stimulus–stimulus
associations. On the other hand, it is worthwhile noting that the Stimulus–Response model can be construed as positing a kind of representation: stimuli are represented at least in the sense that they cause specific responses. The connection between representation of the environment and the behaviour to which it gives rise is very clear in Stimulus–Response theory. In fact, however, the connection is made too close, so that the difference between representation and the behaviour caused collapses, and we are left only with the latter. What happens in cognitive theory is that representations of stimuli are allowed to interact with one another before the production of behaviour. This feature of the theory accommodates the fact that there are not, in ‘higher’ behaviour, one-one links between particular stimuli and particular responses. Hence also the frequently cited characterization of cognitive as opposed to Stimulus–Response theory, namely, that it explains behaviour as a response to interpretations of stimuli, not to stimuli immediately; or again, that the connection between stimuli and responses is mediated by representations.

Another way of making out the difference between the cognitive paradigm and the earlier Stimulus–Response psychology uses the term information. According to the cognitive model, information is picked up from the environment, processed, which processing includes assimilation into pre-existing cognitive maps, and states carrying processed information states mediate between stimulus and response. Stimulus–Response explanation, on the other hand, needs a notion of information defined only in terms of the S-R linkage, and notion so minimal that it does not require separate consideration.

Stimulus–Response psychology belonged with behaviourist methodology, as noted above, and so naturally the theoretical move towards the cognitive paradigm implied also a methodological shift. The methodological question is: what is required for an adequate explanation of behaviour? Given Cartesian preconceptions according to which mental states are immaterial and causally irrelevant, it follows readily enough that they will have no role in the explanation of behaviour, that our methodological presuppositions should be confined to environmental stimuli, and their direct causal effect on behaviour. The question, then, was whether this alone could do all the required explanatory work. And the answer seemed to be ‘no’ in the case of explanation of the goal-directed and plastic characteristics of higher animal behaviour. And insofar as these characteristics require for their explanation the postulate of representations, or information-carrying states, then this postulate becomes a methodological presupposition.

In the background of this move away from behaviourism is an epistemological change on a large scale. A fundamental reason why early psychological science eschewed mental states was that they were epistemically private, accessible
only to the subject, by introspection. The issues in animal learning theory, however, were already well removed from this Cartesian concept of mind. The issues of course had nothing to do with rats introspecting mental states, but rather concerned what was needed in theory for the explanation of behaviour and for predictive power. In psychological science mental states are introduced into the picture, if they are introduced at all, if theory requires them for the purposes of explanation and prediction of behaviour. As already indicated, their role in theory is essentially a matter of carrying information, used in the control of action. This use of the notion of mental states is quite different from the Cartesian. In the Cartesian framework the definition of mental states is fundamentally epistemological: mental states are known immediately, infallibly, by their subject. It is precisely this property that makes mental states so far irrelevant to psychological science. Mental states become relevant to psychological science insofar as postulating them facilitates the purposes of scientific theory, these being, briefly, explanation and prediction. This handle on the notion of mental states presupposes, indeed is, an epistemology. The theory of knowledge of mental states is in very broad terms as follows: mental states are known (beliefs about them are evaluated) with reference to the predictive power and success of theory that postulates them.

Two features of this new epistemology may be noted here. Firstly, it suits primarily a third-person perspective, and owes an account of any special characteristics of first-person (subjective) knowledge of mental states. The position in this respect is exactly the opposite to the Cartesian. Secondly, the new epistemology of mental states, with its appeal to theory as opposed to direct observation, belongs with a more general ‘post-empiricist’ epistemology. These two points, concerning post-empiricist epistemology, and knowledge of one’s own mental states, will be taken up later in the chapter (Section 1.3).

There was much to be said on either side of the debate within animal learning theory between the Stimulus–Response and cognitive approaches, but as is well-known, and as just implied, the issue was not at all just a local one. A paradigm shift in and around psychological science was beginning. The debate within animal learning theory came to be decisively settled in favour of the cognitive model, largely under the influence of external developments, which showed up inadequacies in the concepts of Stimulus–Response theory, and which replaced rigidly construed behavioural methodology by methodologies explicitly employing cognitive concepts. These developments were particularly in linguistics, artificial intelligence and mathematical information theory, and they promoted what has come to be called the ‘cognitive revolution’ in psychology in the 1950s and ‘60s. Let us review briefly these external influences.2
We consider first Chomsky’s well-known critique (1959) of Skinner’s project of explaining language learning and use in terms of the concepts and principles of Stimulus–Response theory. Chomsky’s criticisms illustrate the points discussed above concerning the weaknesses of Stimulus–Response theory and its accompanying strict behavioural methodology. Early in the paper Chomsky remarks on the reason why Skinner’s programme appears so ‘bold and remarkable’ (Chomsky 1959, pp. 48–49, original italics):

It is not primarily the fact that he has set functional analysis as his problem, or that he limits himself to study of observables, i.e., input-output relations. What is so surprising is the particular limitations he has imposed on the way in which the observables of behaviour are to be studied, and, above all, the particularly simple nature of the function which, he claims, describes the causation of behaviour. One would naturally expect that prediction of the behavior of a complex organism (or machine) would require, in addition to information about external stimulation, knowledge of the internal structure of the organism, the ways in which it processes input information and organizes its own behavior.

Such reference to ‘internal’ structure and processes was precisely what Skinner wished to avoid, emphasising rather external factors, such as stimulus, reinforcement, etc. Chomsky proceeded to argue, however, that these (and related) fundamental concepts of conditioning theory, while they may be given relatively specific operational definitions in the experimental paradigms of animal learning theory, come to lose clear meaning outside of these contexts, and the principles (laws) which employ them become vacuous or trivial. On the notion of stimulus-control of an utterance, for example, Chomsky writes (Chomsky 1959, p. 52, original italics):

A typical example ... would be the response to a piece of music with the utterance Mozart or to a painting with response Dutch. These responses are asserted to be ‘under the control of extremely subtle properties’ of the physical object or event [Skinner 1957, p. 108]. Suppose instead of saying Dutch we had said Clashes with the wall-paper, I thought you liked abstract work, Never saw it before, Tilted, Hanging too low, Beautiful, Hideous, Remember our camping trip last summer?, or whatever else might come into our minds when looking at the picture ... Skinner could only say that each of these responses is under the control of some other stimulus property of the physical object. If we look at a red chair and say red, the response is under the stimulus control of the stimulus redness; if we say chair, it is under the control of the collection of properties chairness ..., and similarly for any other response. This device is as simple as it is empty.

The point at issue here is that in complex behaviour, such as speaking a language, there is plasticity in response: we can respond in many ways to the same stimulus. Or better, in many ways to the same stimulus as described in physical terms. To say in these terms that behaviour is under stimulus-control is false.
On the other hand, we can adopt an alternative way of characterizing the stimulus, namely, the stimulus as represented by, or, as described by, the subject; but then, we lose complete objectivity in the description, and rely on the familiar concepts of common sense, mentalistic psychology. And to say is these terms that behaviour is under stimulus-control may well be true, but if so, trivially. The same general obstacle faces the attempt to define the meaningful content of information-carrying states in terms of their causes, a project that goes under the name of causal semantics and which will be discussed in Chapter 4.

Related problems are encountered in the definition of response. One problem pointed out by Chomsky is that Skinner does not attempt to specify what kind of similarity in form is required for two physical events to be considered instances of the same operant. Chomsky, as Skinner, is concerned here of course with identifying units of verbal behaviour, but the problem of criteria of identification of responses is a general one for operant theory. Consider an example that is not to do with language: the movement, physically defined, of lifting one’s arm. This could count as a variety of actions (or behaviours), such as: stretching, greeting, holding up the traffic, surrendering—depending on the context, internal and external. The same physical event (bodily movement) can be many behaviours, but also vice versa: the same behaviour (or action) can be instanced by a variety of bodily movements. In this critical sense the notions of same behaviour, and of behaviour itself, await definition. As Chomsky observes in connection with linguistic utterances, ‘extrapolation’ of the definition of response from the limited experimental paradigms is of no use: operational definitions cannot (by definition) be applied to a different class of phenomena (Chomsky 1959, p. 53).

Following his critique of Skinner’s programme, Chomsky outlines a positive way forward, namely, consideration of the syntactic structure of language, and of the way in which knowledge of grammar, internalized in the speaker, contributes to verbal behaviour. In this way the notion of internalized structures and rules becomes central to a cognitive, non-behavioural, theory of language learning and use. The details, however, of Chomsky’s new linguistics are not our concern in the present argument. What is relevant are the general points which may be summarized as follows: that Stimulus–Response psychology, and the concepts of conditioning on which it is based, are inadequate for the explanation of complex, plastic behaviour, that its systematic attempt to downplay the subject’s contribution in such behaviour becomes combined with implicit and illicit reliance on the mentalistic concepts of common sense, and that an explicit theory of the subjective contribution to complex behaviour typically postulates internalized structures and rules. It is this latter idea that became pivotal in the new ‘cognitive revolution’ in psychology.
A second major influence contributing to this revolution in the 1950s and '60s was the application in psychology of methods and models from the new discipline of Artificial Intelligence (AI), which constructs machines able to emulate aspects of (natural) intelligence. The relevance of AI methodology to cognitive psychology is profound. It provides ways of conceiving and modelling mental processes, such as (obviously) computation, and (less obviously) attention and perception, which on the one hand permits experimental investigation and test, and which, on the other, carries no implication that these mental processes operate within some non-physical medium. In these ways the new methodology removed two major obstacles to the scientific study of the mind, obstacles that had given rise, inevitably but temporarily, to behaviourism. AI terminology and methodology greatly influenced theory of and research into particular cognitive capacities such as attention, perception, memory, and language-comprehension, but in addition to this influence in faculty-specific research, and of course related to it, the new AI gave new and powerful form to cognitive theories of behaviour. It endorsed and elaborated the idea that cognitive processes are involved in the organization and regulation of complex, plastic, rule-guided behaviour (Miller et al. 1960). It is this contribution of AI that is of particular relevance to the present theme.

It should be remarked, however, that the AI model of cognitive processes at work in the mediation of behaviour raises as well as solves conceptual problems. As noted in the above discussion of cognitive theories of animal learning, what seems to be required for explanation of complex behaviour is the concept of a *representation of the environment*. Now while AI offers a model of internal processes which underlie intelligent behaviour, the model is essentially one of *computations*, that is, roughly, rule-following manipulations of (transformations of) symbols; but there is apparently no mention yet of anything like *representation of the environment*. This is to say, the concepts in AI pertain at least in the first instance to the *syntax* of symbols, but they do not yet explicate their *semantics*, that is, their meaning, or their representational properties. This indeed has been regarded as one of the major inadequacies of AI models of mental processes. Or, the argument can be turned the other way round: success of computational models of mind can be used to cast doubt on the legitimacy of concepts of mind which invoke meaning. These issues are taken up in detail in the next chapter.

A third major influence contributing to the cognitive revolution in psychology was mathematical communication theory (MCT) (Shannon and Weaver 1949). MCT is concerned with certain statistical quantities associated with ‘sources’, ‘channels’, and ‘receivers’. When a particular condition is realized at a source, and there are other conditions that could have been realized,
the source can be regarded as a *generator of information*. For example, in throwing a dice the result reduces 6 possibilities to 1 actuality, and therefore generates information, quantified as \( \log_2(6) = 2.6 \) bits. The amount of information generated is relative to a receiver, in particular, to the amount of information already in the receiver about the source; in the example above it is assumed that prior to the throw we know only that six results are equally possible. Various applications of MCT to psychology were made, for example in psychophysical models (e.g. Miller 1953; Atneave 1959; Garner 1962). However, in addition to specific applications of details of the theory, it reinforced use of the information-processing terminology that has come to pervade cognitive psychology and the cognitive sciences generally. The terminology can be used to formulate the basic tenets of cognitive psychology such as the following: information is picked up from the environment, by the sense-receptors, processed (transformed, encoded) in certain ways, including into representations of the environment, which then serve in the organization and regulation of complex (purposive, plastic, rule-guided) behaviour. On the other hand, it should be noted that the concept of information used in this way is quite distinct from, though related to, the concept as used in MCT. The concept required in cognitive psychology is, as we have already seen, a semantic one: we are interested in the fact that particular signals carry information from (and about) the environment, that it is this informational content which is employed in the production of representations and the regulation of organism/environment interactions. The idea of informational content does not, however, figure in MCT. The mathematical theory is concerned with *how much* information is carried, not with *what* information is carried. Indeed it does not deal with particular signals at all, hence not with their content, but with classes of signals, and the statistical averages of the amounts of information carried. In this sense the mathematical theory is of no immediate relevance in explicating the concept of semantic information that underpins theorizing in cognitive psychology, and cognitive explanations of behaviour in particular.³

Following this partial and brief survey of some of the major driving influences in the cognitive revolution in psychology, let us return to the issue with which we began, the conflict within psychology between cognitive and Stimulus–Response learning theories. The characteristics of animal behaviour cited in order to introduce the concepts of cognition were goal-directedness and plasticity. Behaviours with these characteristics have been traditionally contrasted with behaviours, such as salivation, for which Stimulus–Response theory seems adequate. From a biological point of view, however, there is every reason to say that the systems serving responses such as salivation are
goal-directed, and indeed the information-processing paradigm applies here. So the distinction between behaviour explicable in terms of stimulus–response connections, and ‘higher’ behaviour of the sort emphasized by the cognitive learning theories cannot be brought out in terms of goal-directness and information-processing. The notion of ‘higher’ here requires explication in some other way, in terms of plasticity. In the absence of plasticity it is plausible to say that patterns of information are already in the environment, requiring only to be picked up and used (acted upon) by an appropriately designed system. But to the extent that there is plasticity, patterns of information already in the environment are not of the kind apparently at work in the regulation of behaviour. Rather, what regulates behaviour has to be considered the result of work done within the system: the information has to be more ‘processed’. The implication is, then, that information-processing systems are more complex, ‘higher’, indeed increasingly ‘cognitive’, to the degree that the result of processing that regulates behaviour of the system is different from the information being received; or again: to the degree that behaviour is determined by ‘subjective’ as well as ‘objective’ factors. These considerations, concerning plasticity, informational content, the importance of contribution of the agent, the distinction between lower and higher forms of cognition, will recur repeatedly in one context or another throughout the essay, and especially in Chapters 4 and 6.

The cognitive paradigm in psychological science posits cognitive, information-carrying states for the purpose of explaining and predicting complex behaviour. It is clear that the cognitive paradigm is apparently closely linked to folk psychology, which invokes meaningful states not only for the hermeneutic purpose of making sense of the phenomena retrospectively, but also for the purpose of predicting action. Action may be predicted by a detached observer, but ‘prediction’ here also and most importantly means the mutual anticipation that is a condition of social life. On the other hand, the folk psychological notion of meaningful content does not cover all the kinds of informational content invoked in cognitive psychology. Rather, the folk psychological notion refers particularly to that highly processed information that is involved in the regulation of action. The cognitive psychology paradigm applied to human action requires the concept of highly processed information which serves in the regulation of that action. The proposal is that the concept required here is captured by the familiar common sense notion of belief with meaningful content. In brief: the information regulating action is typically specified by statements of the form ‘S believes that p’. However and of course, cognitive psychology has aims other than the prediction of action. In particular, it seeks to determine methods of information pick-up and processing which precede the use of information in action. On these issues folk psychology has conspicuously
little to say. Its grasp of perception, for example, is pretty well exhausted by the
simple description ‘S sees that p’, a description which refers to the result of
much processing. In general what matters to folk psychology is not the input
side of information-processing, but is rather the end result: highly processed,
meaningful states involved in the organization and regulation of action. This
is what matters to folk psychology, because the prediction—anticipation—of
action is what matters to the folk.

1.1.2 Cognition, affect and consciousness

It is obvious enough, given the formative influence of such disciplines as trans-
formational linguistics, AI modelling, and Mathematical Communication
Theory, that cognitive psychology erred on the side of saying little about
affect. Producers of syntactic strings of symbols, computers, and mathemati-
cally defined signal exchangers are so far unemotional. On the other hand, and
as made prominent in the presentation in the preceding section, fundamental
to cognitive psychology was the project of explaining animal behaviour in
terms of cognitive states. The cognitive theory of action has to posit at least
goals, methods of achieving them, and means of determining success or fail-
uire, and these elements are enough to provide a basis for the concept of affect.
Cognition and affect are both defined in terms of action: cognition serves
action by processing information; affect signifies the point of it all. But these
are interwoven, aspects of one activity. The goals of action have to be repre-
sented, and its methods have to have an aim. From the point of view of the
philosophy and psychology of action, emotion has cognitive structure and
content, and cognition is in the service of achieving aims, and hence involves
affect.4

Although there are close links between cognition and emotion, this is not
to say that the two are indistinguishable. Clearly they are, to some extent,
depending on the type of case in hand. Cognitive processing can be relatively
affect-less, in the absence of any real goal, or again, if divorced from action.
How far processing here is typical of cognition in everyday life is open to
doubt, and this is reflected in the increasing shift of focus in cognitive psychol-
ogy from artificial experimental paradigms to those with more ecological (and
biological) validity. Also, emotion may be in various ways independent of cog-
nition, and this is exploited in research on the effects of mood on cognition. It
is for example possible to make someone unhappy by giving her information
(e.g. about a loss) and then to study what effects this negative mood state has
on memory, e.g. that she remembers negative events, such as previous losses.
Clearly this kind of interaction does not count against the general principle
that emotions are cognitive and cognitions emotional.5
On the other hand, emotion may be experienced in the apparent absence of appropriate cognition. In this case however, assuming that the emotion is salient (intense, persistent, with effects on behaviour), the apparent absence of appropriate cognition raises the question of abnormal function. A possible explanation is that the emotion has been caused not by the processing of information but by lower-level interference to the physiological structures and processes which serve the emotions, e.g. by naturally occurring biochemical imbalance. Another kind of explanation is that emotion and cognition have become dissociated for psychological reasons: the object of the emotion may be intolerable to the person for example. In the same way there are broadly speaking two ways of explaining cognition in the apparent absence of the appropriate emotion. One posits lower-level disruption of information-processing, the other invokes rules at the level of the information-carrying states themselves. The distinction between these two kinds of causal pathway, and their roles in the generation of disorder, will be developed as major themes in the essay, especially in Chapters 5 and 7, and need not detain us here. For now the main point is simply that the apparent absence of connection between (strong) emotion and appropriate cognition so far suggests a breakdown in normal functioning, and in this sense such cases are exceptions that prove the rule.

The interwoven nature of cognition and emotion in living beings may be expressed by saying that cognitive states, to the extent that they are emotionally charged, are already sources of energy, specifically motivators of action. The formulation is relevant to the conclusion drawn in this chapter, that explanations in terms of cognitive states are causal, and to the claim worked out through Chapters 4 and 5 that information-processing, or intentionality, is the basis of a distinctive form of causal explanation.

It has taken some time for the main significance of the cognitive revolution in psychology to emerge. The point is not just that cognitive functions can be studied by scientific methods—creating possibilities other than introspectionism and behaviorism—but is rather that cognitive functions are essentially involved in the regulation of action. The cognitive paradigm has been frequently charged with being excessively computational and ignoring all else, such as intentionality, emotion, and biology. However, as cognition has been increasingly viewed as linked to—in the service of—action, these hitherto underemphasized aspects fall into place within a broader, more mature, science of cognition.

We turn now to consider the role of consciousness in the cognitive psychology paradigm. Cognitive states are posited as representations (information-carrying states) involved in the regulation of action. This conception, or definition, of cognition stands in marked contrast to the Cartesian.
In Cartesian dualism, cognition is a feature of mind, as opposed to matter, and
the defining characteristic of mind is that it is known indubitably to the sub-
ject. In this conception, it is not at all part of the definition of cognition that it
serves action, nor indeed that it represents anything external: Cartesian mind
could in principle be just as it is even in the absence of the body and of the rest
of the external, material world. The absence of any role for mind in the run-
ning of behaviour in the Cartesian framework shows up clearly in its concep-
tion of behaviour as mechanical, as ‘non-intelligent’. But just as the Cartesian
conception has little to say about those features of mind, cognition and behav-
ior which are treated as axiomatic in cognitive psychology, so conversely,
cognitive psychology has some difficulty encompassing what is fundamental in
Cartesian dualism: subjective awareness, or consciousness. This is to say, these
concepts are not built into the foundations of the theory, historically or logically.

Within the cognitive psychology paradigm, the essential function of cogni-
tive states is to serve in the regulation of action, and it does not belong to their
definition that they are known to the subject. Indeed, and this is the point
already implicit in the paragraph above, the paradigm so far has nothing to say
about cognitive states ‘being known to the subject’. Cognitive psychology can
accommodate the notions of consciousness and subjective awareness in its
own terms, that is, insofar as they have a role in explanation of certain features
of information-processing and (ultimately) the regulation of action. These
features may include such as selective attention, high levels of analysis (pro-
cessing), executive control, and the subjective report in language of information-
processing and information-carrying states. It is typically for the purpose of
explaining phenomena of these kinds that cognitive psychological models
invoke the notion of consciousness.6

Before leaving the topic of consciousness later we may note that philosophi-
cal as well as empirical questions surround the concept. These ‘philosophical
problems’ derive from the Cartesian concept of mind and the deep theory
change involved in its replacement by the cognitive-behavioural paradigm.
The dualism of mind and matter in seventeenth-century philosophy, as for-
mulated by Descartes, was over-determined, being many distinctions at once.
Mind was equivalent to consciousness, to appearance, and to representation
(thought), in contrast to matter, which was the reality represented by thought.
The seventeenth-century picture as a whole was highly and irredeemably
problematic, mainly because the postulated reality lay beyond the appearances
and could not be known directly, or at all, by the subject of thought, the
Cogito. But notwithstanding this major anomaly, the theory stood, supported
by fundamental assumptions. As already indicated (Section 1.1.1), a major
assumption of the modern world-view was that the material world described by the new philosophy of nature (physics) was absolute, and therefore had to be distinguished from the objects given in sense-appearances, which are relative objects, tainted by subjectivity.

Moving beyond this original seventeenth-century metaphysics, a more superficial dualism takes for granted the material world, including (human) bodies, and then wonders whether these bodies (other than one’s own) have immaterial minds. This ‘problem of other minds’ has already been mentioned (in Section 1.1.1) as implicated in methodological behaviourism. It is however essentially a hotch-potch problem, because it is a transitionary thought-stage between the original Cartesian dualism and the non-dualist idea that mind is revealed in the activity of the human body (being), an idea which in turn permits knowledge of one subject by another. The view that mental processes regulate higher activity, and hence can be inferred on the basis of that activity, has become commonplace, and accordingly scepticism about other minds has become out of date, a ‘philosophical’ problem only, or one belonging to the early history of psychological science.

Still, however, the transitionary problem lives on in a still more emaciated form, as the ‘philosophical’ problem of consciousness, identified as ‘the hard problem’ by Chalmers (1996). Do living beings, or some of them, have conscious states (sometimes called ‘qualia’), or some special quality of awareness, over and above particular forms of information-processing, undetectable by any means known to man or woman? What can be detected, from the outside, are (only), we are inclined to say, signs of consciousness, of particular forms of information-processing, such as selective attention, and self-report. But consciousness itself, so this line of thought continues, seems unknowable, except in one’s case. But then—and here we have the feeling of a typically philosophical conundrum—in one’s own case one seems to be aware of nothing but objects of consciousness. This recalls the original Cartesian problem (Section 1.1.1), that what one knows in one’s own case are conscious sense-experiences (sights, sounds, touch, etc.), not any material substance over and above (or underneath) these. The correct inference here is that consciousness cannot be thought of as something separable from the objects of empirical knowledge. There is, by all means, a distinction to be drawn between the subject’s knowledge of objects and the subject’s knowledge of other subjects. In the former, consciousness is indistinguishable from the experience of reality. In the latter, consciousness in another subject is indistinguishable from its appearances in the person’s activity, and this is the methodological assumption suited to cognitive science.7
1.2 Intentionality

1.2.1 Some definitions and some old theories

Intentionality is a concept much used in current philosophy of mind and psychological theory. It has two main aspects. First, it refers to aboutness (or directedness). To say that a belief (or fear, or hope, or any other information-carrying state) has intentionality means partly that it is about something, typically an object, or state of affairs. Further, and this is the second aspect of intentionality, it is not necessary that this ‘something’, that which e.g. the belief is about, exists in reality. One can believe that such-and-such is the case, when it is not; one can fear something that does not exist; and so on. The proposal that intentionality is the defining characteristic of mind, credited to Brentano (1874), has become the focus of many issues in contemporary philosophical and theoretical psychology. Readers unfamiliar with this term of philosophical art should note that intentionality as meant here has nothing specifically to do with intentions in the everyday sense, except insofar as intentions like any other mental states have intentionality, and the concept has still less to do with conscious, verbally expressed intentions.

A philosophical term of art distinct though connected to intentionality is intensionality (spelt with an ‘s’ rather than a ‘t’). It may be thought of as applying directly to sentences, and secondarily to the states they describe. Two characterizations of intensionality may be given, though they can be made into one. One of the characterizations is plainly close to the definition of intentionality: a compound sentence is intensional if its truth-value does not depend on the truth-value of its component. Thus, it may be true that John believes that angels exist irrespective of whether they do. The second way of characterizing the intensionality of sentences is as follows: a sentence is intensional if its truth-value is not preserved by substitution of co-extensive terms. John may want the biggest teddy bear in the room, though he still may not want Jill’s teddy, even if .. etc. We can also take an example relevant to attempts to define informational content in terms of evolutionary theory, discussed at length in Chapter 4 (4.5). Frogs snap at flies but also small, amiant black dots which are not flies. What is the content of the informational states driving the behaviour: ‘fly’ or ‘(any) amiant black dot’? In effect we are asking here what is the nature of the intentional object of the information-carrying state and of the behaviour that it regulates, and this can usefully be understood as a question about the appropriate intensional description. Most mental states are described by sentences that are intensional in one or both of the above senses. Implications include that we can believe and want things that do not exist,
and that we may believe or want certain things under some descriptions but not under others. These are of course enormously important facts about us, about our mentality in particular, to which we shall return in various ways throughout the essay. The main point may be briefly stated by saying that the mental states are about reality conceived in specific ways, in certain ways rather than others, and may be about what in reality does not exist.

Concepts closely linked to intentionality (and intensionality), include thought, representation, meaning, and information. All of these are essentially to do with ‘aboutness’ and ‘inexistence’ in the senses outlined above. The link between intentionality and thought (or thinking) suggests that Brentano’s thesis is to some extent anticipated in the Cartesian idea that the cogito defines the mind. The close link between intentionality and meaning is expressed in the fact that intentional objects may also be called the meaning, or the meaningful content, of the intentional states. Information, too, seems to have intentionality: signals carry information about e.g. relative spatial position, or the information that such-and-such, etc., and it is also possible for informational content to be in error.

A main theme in the essay will be that intentionality, in the technical sense defined above, in terms of aboutness and ‘inexistence’, characterizes the ‘information’ invoked in cognitive psychological models, and indeed also that invoked in the information-processing models that permeate biology. It is obviously critical to these lines of thought that intentionality is understood with the technical meaning as standardly defined, and specifically that it is not understood as automatically implying restriction to mental states, and probably to conscious mental states. Such a restriction is of course a substantive theory about the states that have intentionality in the technical sense, one credited to Brentano, but echoing the older Cartesian philosophy, as remarked above.

One way of expressing the line of argument to be developed later, referred to in the preceding paragraph, is to say that it extends Brentano’s thesis downwards, the proposal being that intentionality characterizes not only states of mind, but also more generally, the information-carrying states in functional, biological systems. The connection between intentionality, activity and function will be discussed briefly in the next subsection and in more detail in Chapters 4 and 5. First we consider what the proposed view stands opposed to, this being briefly, that intentionality (representation, thought, meaning) is a matter of being something like a picture of reality.

In cognitive-behavioural psychology mental states are attributed to an agent, and on this basis action is explained and predicted. An essential feature of at least some of these mental states is that they carry information about the environment, about the scene of action. Such information-carrying, meaningful
states are variously known as perceptions, beliefs, representations, mental models, and so on. At this stage many questions arise. Some are very old: What is a representation? How does anything represent anything else, and some particular thing? Other questions are new, such as: How can a meaningful sign serve in the generation of action? These questions are all very closely linked together: the answer to any one of them already fixes the terms of answers to the others. It should also be remarked that the issues are general ones, independent of the vehicle by which meaning is carried. Many kinds of item can carry information: mental states, but also such as pictures, words, written and spoken, and presumably states of the brain. In what follows we approach the problems of representation and meaning in relation to pictures and language. Questions as to how and in what sense the brain is a semantic system will occupy us throughout Chapter 2.

First consider the question: What is a representation? It may be noticed straightaway that the word ‘represent’ apparently has the connotation that something (some object or state of affairs) is being in some sense replicated, presented again, in the sign. This in turn belongs with the idea, of which more later, that a representation must be in some sense like a picture, or image. Not all of the terms which require explication have this connotation; not, for example ‘belief’, or ‘information-carrying state’. But in any case the line of thought that links re-presentations to pictures and images is a very powerful one. It belongs, however, to modern thought, to seventeenth-century philosophy, including Cartesianism and empiricism, not to the present.

In fact the idea that representation is a matter of one item (the sign, or model) copying another (reality) has a much longer history. It was conscripted into use in seventeenth-century philosophy, in the context of Cartesian dualism, but it has other origins and applications. In its clearest and strongest form the idea is simply this: A represents (means) B in case A is a resemblance of B. This account of course looks most plausible in the case of pictures and images, and has therefore been applied primarily to mental representation, in which pictures and images seem to play a role. The account seems less well-suited to that other paradigm of meaning and representation, language. At the start, Plato saw (in the *Cratylus*), that words apparently do not sound like what they represent. Characteristically, Plato was concerned with spoken language rather than with written. But it is equally true that written language does not look like what it represents. If the resemblance theory of meaning and representation is to be made to work for language, it has to be argued that in some sense ‘beneath the surface’, despite appearances, there is indeed a resemblance between language and the world. Plato considered, without enthusiasm, the possibility that resemblance could be found in the history (etymology) of words.
In the present century, a very different form of resemblance theory for language was constructed by Wittgenstein in his *Tractatus* (1921). The proposal was that propositions are pictures of states of affairs, though the pictorial form of language is beneath the surface, to be revealed by logical analysis. Neither Plato nor Wittgenstein was led to a resemblance theory for language because of superficial plausibility, which it conspicuously lacks. They were led to it rather under pressure from a profound argument, concerning the fact that language can, like other forms of representation, be *true or false* of the world. The problem is to explain how signs can be meaningful (can represent something in reality) without thereby being true; or again, it is to explain how a meaningful sign can be false. The problem can be posed as a paradox: if a sign is meaningful (is a *sign* at all), then it must stand for something in reality—but false signs correspond to nothing. The theory of meaning as resemblance serves to resolve this paradox of the false proposition. As we shall see later, in Chapter 4 (Section 4.3), causal accounts of meaning have great difficulty accounting for the fact that a meaningful, information-carrying state can be false as well as true. The solution offered by the resemblance theory, expressed as in the *Tractatus*, runs briefly as follows: a picture is meaningful because its parts stand for objects in reality, but can nevertheless be false, in case the objects signified do not stand in the relationship shown in the picture. Conversely, the proposition as picture is true in case it is *like* the state of affairs depicted. This theory of representation as resemblance gives clear expression to the idea of *truth as correspondence with reality*. The implication is that once the resemblance theory of representation is abandoned, we shall require an account of truth and falsity that is not based in the notions of correspondence and failure of correspondence between signs and reality. Aspects of this implication will be pursued in later chapters. The picture theory of language encounters many problems, not the least of which is the one already mentioned, that sentences simply do not look like pictures of what they mean. This problem however, like others, can be handled by appropriate saving devices, including particularly the notion of a logical form hidden beneath surface grammar. The overthrow of the picture theory required not only pressure from anomalies, but primarily the construction of a radically different theory of language and meaning.

1.2.2 *Intentionality based in action*

Wittgenstein went on to propose a new theory of language and meaning in his later period. The proposal was, in brief, that *the meaning of a sign is given by its use in human activity*. Wittgenstein’s proposal is simple on the surface but is philosophically exceedingly complex. It pervades all the later period works,
being introduced for example in the first pages of the *Philosophical Investigations* (Wittgenstein 1953, paras. 1–37, with commentaries in, e.g. Folgeli 1976, Bolton 1979, and Pears 1988). Wittgenstein’s theory of meaning as use in activity is thoroughly conducive to the proposals worked through in this essay. So far, following the general method of cognitive behavioural science, we have introduced meaningful mental states essentially in relation to the explanation and prediction of action. It is to be expected that the theory of meaning that belongs with this approach will likewise affirm a fundamental connection between meaning and action—and this is what Wittgenstein’s later period account does. It will be drawn on frequently in subsequent chapters; for example in Chapter 2 in defining the sense in which the brain encodes meaning (Section 2.6), and in Chapter 3 in connection with rule-following and relativity.

Broadly speaking it would be fair to say that the link between intentionality and action is relatively clear in psychological theory, in the context of its aim of explaining behaviour. The link was already apparent in the primitive Stimulus–Response theoretic definition of meaning (Skinner 1957; see also Section 1.1.1 on Chomsky’s critique), and it is fundamental to the whole enterprise of explaining behaviour by appeal to cognitive states. The close link between cognition and action can be expressed in the idea of the mind as embodied, which is increasingly influential in cognitive science. Clark (1997) describes how current research programmes in robotics invoke not so much central processing but the use of the body along with devices in the world for efficient problem-solving. Dennett (1997) argues for a similar conclusion, proposing for example that early in phylogenesis it is the physical properties of organisms that are exploited for the purpose of information-processing. Perception is intimately involved with, using similar coding as, the planning of action (Hommel *et al.* 2001; see also O’Regan and Noë 2001). Central features of cognition including working memory can be related to moment-by-moment dispositions of body features such as eye movements and hand movements (Ballard *et al.* 1997). Infant perseverative reaching can be modelled in terms of cognitive embodiment (Thelen *et al.* 2001). It should be said that the image of mind as situated within the body, world and action, has been clear for some time in Continental European philosophy, for example in Heidegger (1927/1962) and Merleau-Ponty (1942/1963), but it is becoming incorporated in the cognitive science paradigm, indicating that it is becoming amenable to empirical as well as hermeneutic elaboration.

It would be fair to say in contemporary philosophy—outside of Wittgensteinian and hermeneutic circles—there is no general acceptance of the idea that there is a conceptual link between intentionality or meaning and action. Since the *Tractatus* philosophers have abandoned the idea that
language represents by virtue of resemblance, or, what comes more or less to
the same, the idea that the truth of a proposition consists of a quasi-spatial
matching between (complex) sign and state of affairs. What have largely taken
its place have been so-called causal theories of meaning, in which the connec-
tion between meaning and activity generally does not appear as fundamental.
The definition of meaning in terms of causal relations of course makes mean-
ing dynamic as opposed to static, and in this sense moves away from the
resemblance/picture theory and towards the connection with action. However,
it fails to capture the normative distinctions essential to meaning, in this sense
achieving less than the older theory, and it fails to grasp the various kinds of
creativity involved in meaning.

Making good these shortfalls leads us in effect to the link between meaning
and action, insofar as action is activity which admits of normative distinctions
and which is creative in various connected senses. Action as the creation of
order is discussed in the context of rule-following in Chapter 3 (Section 3.3),
the weaknesses of causal semantics and the need for a functional, action-based
semantics, are discussed in the Chapter 4 (Section 4.3), and the implication
that a new form of causality is identified is elaborated in Chapter 5.

Representations serve in the regulation of behaviour, in its direction accord-
ing to a rule. The notion of regulation is central to the theory of action, and
generally to cybernetics and the theory of (functional) systems (e.g. Wiener
1948; Von Bertalanffy 1968; Sayre 1976; Varela 1979). The notions of rules and
regulation are introduced into explanations of systemic activity at a very
abstract (philosophical) level. They capture the fundamental idea that activity
(interaction with the environment) is ‘right’ or ‘wrong’. But it should be
emphasized that there is no commitment here yet to the idea that representa-
tions as rules are objects. It may be that ordered activity involves the use of
object-like items, various ‘expressions of rules’, in the form of language, or pic-
tures, but this is so far speculation, philosophical or empirical. What has to be
guarded against particularly is philosophical pressure to suppose that there
must be object-like representations, hidden in the mind or brain, if not evident
in the hands. As we have seen, this supposition belongs primarily with the idea
that representation is something done by an object, whereas the conception of
representation as a rule belongs with the idea that representation is achieved
by activity. These issues surface again in the second chapter in considering
various models of how reality is represented (how information is encoded) in
the brain.

It may be noted that the account of meaning in terms of rule-following
practice makes transparent what remains obscure according to the resemblance
theory, namely, the intimate connection between meaning and the prediction
of action. Theories that invoke meaningful (information-carrying) states are effective in the prediction of action because they attribute to the agent the propensity to follow certain rules, and therefore they can be used to predict, rightly or wrongly, what the agent will do. This point leads us to consider the highly influential framework proposed by Dennett (1979, 1987, 1988), which clarifies the logic of mentalistic explanations of behaviour, their predictive power, and their relation to other forms of explanation. The framework is fruitful not only in the philosophy of psychology generally, but also in the philosophy of psychiatry. Dennett proposed that there are three stances that can be used in the prediction of behaviour: the Physical Stance, the Design Stance, and the Intentional Stance. He illustrated these in application to what is apparently the simplest case, artificial intelligence, taking the chess-playing computer as example (Dennett 1979). The moves of the computer could be in principle predicted from knowledge of the physical constitution of the machine and of the physical laws governing its operation. This would be prediction from the Physical Stance. Prediction of the computer’s moves could also be based on knowledge of the design of the machine, including its programme. This would be prediction from the Design Stance. It requires no knowledge of the physical constitution of the machine. Dennett argues that while the Physical and Design Stances can in principle be used for prediction, they are in practice inapplicable in the case of the more sophisticated chess-playing computers. There is, however, a third possibility, one that requires neither knowledge of the physical constitution of the machine and covering physical laws, nor knowledge of the programme. It consists, simply, in predicting that the computer will make the most ‘rational’ move! This is prediction from the Intentional Stance. In the Intentional Stance we attribute to the computer, in scare quotes, certain ‘beliefs’ and ‘desires’. This is to say, we attribute regulation by intentional states, carrying information about the state of play, and about goals. Dennett’s framework is relevant to many themes of the present essay, concerning the mind–body relation, the predictive power of explanations that invoke information-carrying states, and the concept of psychological disorder.

On this last point, Dennett makes the plausible suggestion, in passing, that in order to explain breakdown of function, for example in the chess-playing computer, we have to drop to the Physical Stance, there to appeal to, for example short-circuits, over-heating, blown fuses, etc. (Dennett 1979, pp. 4–5). The point behind this suggestion is that when function fails we precisely have to abandon the intentional stance, with its reference to rules, strategies, etc. and look instead for physical defined causes. A priori inference of this kind lends support, in the case of psychological disorder, to the ‘medical model’ in psychiatry,
insofar as it favours theories of organic aetiology. Psychological disorder is the breakdown of psycho-logic, that is, of meaning, rationality, and so on, and beyond this limit we apparently have to abandon our normal intentional forms of explanation (the theory of mind) and posit instead causal processes at the biological level which disrupt normal processes. However, the supposition that breakdown of function can be explained only from the Physical Stance is invalid, invalid even in the relatively simple case of the chess-playing computer. There are options from within the Design Stance, and also some from within the Intentional Stance, though these are more complicated. Dennett, by the way, does not develop these other options, since they lie outside his primary concerns, but they are not incompatible with his account. Consider first the option of explaining disorder from the Design Stance. The chess-playing computer makes irrational moves, inappropriate to winning the game, because it follows the wrong rules (for this purpose). Here we envisage a causal pathway to breakdown of function in which there is no physical disruption to information-processing, but rather use of inappropriate rules. Contemporary models of major psychological disorders such as autism, or schizophrenia, discussed in Chapter 9, may be seen in Dennett’s terms as making use of the Design Stance as well as or instead of the cruder Physical Stance. On the other hand, as will be discussed later (Section 7.2.2), the notion of ‘design’ is considerably more complex, and problematic, in the case of living beings as compared with computers. As to the possibility of explaining disorder from within the Intentional Stance, this seems to be ruled out *a priori*—at least at first sight. Disorder apparently is precisely the breakdown of intentionality, and hence it does not admit of explanation in terms of intentional processes. In the psychological case, the concept of disorder signifies the point at which there is (serious) breakdown of meaning: disorder means, roughly, (serious) breakdown in meaningful connections. Hence it cannot be explained in terms of such connections. This simple and powerful line of thought is fundamental to the problems with which we are concerned, the role of meaning in the causal explanation of order and disorder. Its simplicity and power derive primarily, however, from limiting consideration to systems that have only one function. We are in fact concerned with complex systems with many goals and sub-goals, routines and sub-routines, and in this case there are several possibilities that avoid the apparent contradiction in explaining breakdown of intentionality in terms of intentional processes. One possibility is that two or more sets of rules come into conflict, leading to disorder in action. Another is that one goal can be abandoned in order to achieve a higher goal, that in this sense one function will be sacrificed, but as part of an intentional strategy. It is in these kinds of ways that intentional processes can be implicated in breakdown, and they are elaborated on in later chapters (7, 8, and 9).
Having described Dennett’s framework and its relevance to the present essay, we should remark on a major divergence of emphasis between Dennett’s theorizing and ours, on the fundamental issue of how the Intentional Stance and the intentional systems to which it applies are to be defined. Dennett tends to define the Intentional Stance in terms of the assumption of rationality, and intentional systems (trivially) as those to which the Intentional Stance can be usefully applied (Dennett 1987, Chapter 2, 1988). The way taken here is different. We begin by defining intentional systems in terms of the behavioural characteristics already discussed in the first section of the chapter (Section 1.2.2) as supporting cognitive as opposed to S-R models of animal behaviour. These characteristics are, briefly, goal-directedness and flexibility according to circumstances. The Intentional Stance is then seen to explain and predict the behaviour of systems with these characteristics precisely because it posits regulation by states which carry information about goals and the current environment (or organism–environment interactions). These differences in definition have several consequences. Dennett’s approach suggests that the Intentional Stance is restricted in application to ‘rational’ systems. Rationality is a high-level cognitive capacity of human beings, some other relatively advanced animals, and artificial simulators. The behavioural definition of intentional systems proposed here, by contrast, has to do only with ends and means, and applies far down the phylogenetic scale, and to biological subsystems as well. Second, and connected, Dennett’s approach apparently does not envisage the Intentional Stance being used for predicting the behaviour of irrational systems. But it can be. I may learn for example that the chess-playing computer prefers its black bishop to its queen (systematically moves in such a way as to retain the former rather than the latter given these alternative outcomes), and this rule is as useful for prediction as the more rational opposite. What matters to the use of the Intentional Stance is that some or other identifiable strategy is being used to achieve some identifiable end-state; it is not also necessary that the strategy or the end-state is reasonable. This point is of course critical to the problem tackled later in the essay, concerning the role of intentional processes in disorder. A third consequence of Dennett’s approach is that by understating in the foundations of the theory the role of behavioural criteria in warranting attributions of intentionality, their objectivity looks less secure than it might otherwise. The problem of objectivity with reference to Dennett’s remarks on it is discussed in Chapter 3 (Section 3.4).

The Intentional Stance is effective in the prediction of behaviour, but it should be emphasized that the predicted behaviour is in general not defined in physical or geometrical terms, but is rather brought under intentional descriptions. The distinction here between behavioural movements and (intentional)
action has been much discussed in the philosophical literature (e.g. Anscombe 1957, Davidson 1971, Hornsby 1986). The kind of behaviour predicted by intentional psychology is behaviour which itself has significance, meaning, and intentionality. Such behaviour has intentionality in the same sense as applies to the cognitive states that regulate them; that is to say, actions are typically object-directed, and this ‘object’ may not exist in reality. For example, an animal trying to find food searches in the same way regardless of whether or not there is any food to find. The point at issue here is not simply that ‘we can describe behaviour in two ways’, i.e. as physical movement, and as intentional. Behind this contrast are the important issues concerning the point of modes of description, and what practices they belong to. Specifically, intentional in contrast with non-intentional characterizations of behaviour belong with the aim of trying to capture, to understand, explain and predict, complex interaction between living beings and their environment. Further, it is because this interaction is what we are trying to explain, that the mental states we invoke have intentionality, or meaning. Intentionality and meaning, which can seem utterly mysterious or suspect, or both, in fact appear as clear and inevitable in the context of this simple connection. Let us consider this point further.

What is it that explanations of behaviour seek to explain? It is true, just about, that we can describe behaviour narrowly, without mentioning the environment, as bodily movements. Supposing the explanandum to be of this kind, it would presumably follow that the explanans also would not require reference to the environment. Explanation in terms of inner processes would then not invoke information, or meaning. But of course behaviour in this restricted sense is precisely not what interests us. We don’t want to know, for example, why Jones moved his arm in such-and-such a geometrically defined way; we want to know why he picked up the cup; why and how the rat found its way round the maze to the goal-box, etc. The behavioural explanandum, that is to say, is typically an (invariant in the) interaction between the living being and its environment. This being so, it is not surprising that, indeed it has to be the case that, the explanans cites facts about the agent, facts about the environment, and (primarily) facts about the interactions between the two. We say, e.g. Jones saw the cup, wanted a drink, so picked it up; the rat learnt that the sequence L-R-L leads to food; etc. Such explanations cite features, actual or possible, of the environment, but these as being represented, stored, or encoded within the subject. They are applicable in both psychology and biology: in the former semantic or representational properties are attributed to mental states, in the latter to material processes in the brain. The mind/matter distinction is less critical here than the fact that in both types of explanation of behaviour the concepts of information-processing are fundamental. The contents of
information-bearing states, mental or material, have to be characterized by reference to environmental features precisely insofar as they are invoked to explain behaviour as interaction between the organism and its environment. Information-processing concepts are justified by their role in providing adequate causal explanation of interactions between the living being and its environment.

A fundamental concept here is that information about the environment is stored (in some code) within the subject. One simple aspect of the logic of such attribution can be brought out by comparison with the notion of stored or potential energy in physics. Explanations of clockwork, for example, invoke the concept of potential energy stored within the spring-mechanism, in order to explain why energy expended in interaction between the mechanism and something else, during winding of the clock, effects the behaviour of the mechanism at a later time. The concept of energy storage serves here at least to preserve the principle that causation is spatio-temporally local. The same general logic underlies the notion of information-storage in biology and psychology. It is invoked at least in order to explain how information picked up in interaction between the living being (or biological sub-system) and its environment at one time can affect its behaviour at a later time. The fact that the bio-psychological concept of information, and even more so of highly-processed information, is more complex that the concept of energy in physics is connected of course with the complexity of the behaviour of living beings as compared with e.g. clockwork. There are diverse relations between input and output, stimulus and response, there is evidence of interpretation, construal of a stimulus as a this or a that, of success or failure in relation to apparent goals, of behaviour based on error, or on imagination; and so on. To cut a long but familiar story very short: it is the ‘intelligent’ behaviour of living beings in their environment, its evidence of learning, variety, plasticity, creativity, goal-directedness, etc. which underlies attribution to the living being of information-carrying states with particular, more or less processed, contents.

There is a qualified argument here for the impossibility of eliminating the concept of intentionality or meaning from behavioural science. It is perfectly possible to manage without intentional concepts, but what can then be predicted is only non-intentional behaviour. If the goal is explanation and prediction of intentional behaviour (complex organism–environment interactions), then the methodological assumption has to be that the agent is regulated by information about the environment, that is, by intentional states, either mental, or encoded in the brain, or both. This line of thought is invoked repeatedly through Chapter 2, as we consider various objections to the claim that information (or meaning) is encoded in the brain. For example, it runs counter to
the widely held assumption that brain states cannot encode so-called ‘broad’ content (Section 2.5.6).

1.3 **Theory and theory of mind**

1.3.1 **‘Theory’ in post-empiricist epistemology**

The assumption that psychological explanation of behaviour, scientific or folk, is embedded in a theory has been made throughout the chapter so far. Further aspects of the ‘theory of mind’ are considered later in this section, but first we consider in general terms the notion of ‘theory’ and its role in post-empiricist epistemology. This topic interacts with many of the themes in this chapter and in the essay as a whole.

Empiricism was a major theory of knowledge from the seventeenth century onwards. It began life, in Locke and Hume, as much psychology as philosophy, and it assumed a central role in the development of psychological science towards the end of the last century. Also during the nineteenth century empiricism increasingly dominated conceptions of the physical sciences. In philosophy empiricism assumed a new form in the first decades of the present century, as logical empiricism, or logical positivism, which applied some empiricist assumptions to the theory of meaning (of language). Throughout the twentieth century, however, in very many and diverse ways, empiricism has been deconstructed, and we are now the owners and users of a different kind of theory of knowledge, at its most clear, perhaps, when defined in contrast to what it replaces. Post-empiricist epistemology interacts with so many themes of this essay, and will be used or referred to so frequently, that a statement of some principles in this one place will prove useful.

Empiricist epistemology supposed that all knowledge (except of the logical truths) is based in experience. This implies a one-one or one-many mapping between beliefs and experiences, and it presupposes that experience is given as independent of beliefs, as so-called ‘hard’ (uninterpreted, infallible) data. These empiricist assumptions were dismantled in the twentieth century. It was recognized that empirical beliefs form a theory in which there is no mapping of the required kind between individual beliefs and experience, and that there is no sharp distinction between theory and empirical data. This latter point is usually expressed by saying that all observation is theory-laden. The fundamental idea of empiricism is that knowledge is derived from sense-experience, conceived as an absolute (unconditional) given. Sense-experience is, on this view, essentially passive, involving no activity on the part of the subject, but only simple ‘awareness’. By contrast, once the subject is an agent, perception has to be active, in various senses. Sense-data have to be processed into
information relevant to action, to its aims and methods, in the context of information already held. Sense-experience involves cognitive activity. Another aspect of the same point is that perception is fundamentally in the service of action, in the sense of activity of the living being as a whole. Hence also, when perception is conscripted into use for planning action, it essentially involves hypotheses (expectations) about the scene and outcomes of action. Beyond a certain level of complexity, these hypotheses assume the form of a systematic theory.

The above characterization of post-empiricism runs together two themes: firstly, a set of interrelated claims about theory and experience (that theory is systemic in relation to experience, that the distinction between the two is not sharp, etc.), and secondly, that sense-experience (and cognition generally) is in the service of action. The first is the most familiar theme in post-empiricism. We suggest, however, that the second also belongs to the epistemology that replaces empiricism. Fundamental to empiricism was the view of sense-experience as being a passive reflection of reality, whereas by contrast experience in post-empiricism is active, in various senses, but including, that experience (and cognition generally) is essentially in the service of action. This same view of cognition is of course also axiomatic in biology, evolutionary theory, and cognitive-behavioural psychology. Philosophical and bio-psychological theory coincide here.

In order to make as clear as possible the context for and relevance of what is inevitably a much over-simplified and very partial discussion of empiricism and post-empiricism, let us list their points of contact with issues discussed elsewhere in the essay. The list is of some of the more obvious points only, and they are all connected with one another:

Firstly, as already noted, empiricism belonged with the idea that the subject is a passive observer of ready-made images, whereas post-empiricism, by contrast, posits activity in many connected senses. The assumption that cognition is essentially involved in the regulation of action, axiomatic to cognitive-behavioural psychology, is typical of post-empiricist epistemology. The present essay is based on this assumption, and invokes it throughout. The sixth point to be made below also directly concerns the active nature of cognition.

Secondly, Locke’s empiricism was closely linked to the Cartesian concept of mind (discussed in Section 1.1.1), in particular to the theory of introspection, i.e. the Cartesian theory of first-person knowledge of mental states, the inference being that post-empiricism implies a new kind of account of self-knowledge (Section 1.3.2).

Thirdly, Hume’s empiricism comprised a theory of learnt connections between mental states, one which relied heavily on the notion of association. This notion re-appeared within psychological science, in particular in the
theory of conditioning. Association (in space and time) has nothing much to do with content. The implication is that post-empiricist psychology will invoke connections between mental states other than (mere) association, and in particular connections which depend on semantic content. This is linked to the shift from conditioning to cognitive psychological theories discussed above in Section 1.1.1, and also directly to the problem of causality and meaning, which is the next point:

Fourthly, Hume’s analysis of causality turns precisely on association only and not internal connections between events (Section 4.2.1). The implication is that post-empiricism can envisage a different kind of causality, involving internal, content-based connections. Such a form of causal explanation will be explicated through Chapters 4 and 5.

Fifthly, empiricism promotes a particular view of psychological science, namely, that it seeks generalizations over hard empirical data (e.g. movements of the body). Post-empiricism envisages a more theoretical view of hypotheses, and indeed of the data. This is reflected in psychology in liberation from behaviourism by the cognitive paradigm (Section 1.1.1). But along with this shift in the methodological assumptions of psychological science there is a corresponding shift in the conception of its subject-matter:

As a sixth point, empiricism implies that the subjects under study in psychological science are in the business of learning generalizations over (associations between) hard empirical data (R-S or S-S links etc.). In contrast, post-empiricist psychology envisages that subjects, at any rate beyond a certain level of cognitive development, are engaged in a task more like theory-building. The capacity of cognitive psychology to handle cognitive processing more complex than conditioning (Section 1.1.1) is a sign of its close relation to post-empiricism. A connected point is that within the cognitive paradigm, the role of cognitive states in mediating between sensory data and action is a function not only of the sensory data but also of interaction among the cognitive states themselves. The mediating role of cognitive states is thus systemic, in a sense consistent with post-empiricist epistemology. There is no simple one-one mapping between what presents to the senses and the cognition, or behaviour, to which it gives rise.

Finally, among the higher level theories envisaged by post-empiricism would be one for the explanation and prediction of behaviour in terms of mental states, the theme of this chapter. Such a theory can be called a ‘theory of mind’ (Section 1.4.2). We move away here from the Cartesian idea that mental events are inaccessible, ghostly processes, towards regarding them as something more like theoretical constructs, which is the kind of status they have in cognitive psychology.
In brief, the shift from empiricist epistemology to post-empiricism interacts at various levels with many issues relevant to psychology and addressed in this essay. Further, the issues concern not only mind, causality, and the nature of explanation, as indicated above, but also mental disorder. This implication will be brought out in Section 1.4.3 below. Essential background to that discussion are those parts of post-empiricist epistemology which deal with the preservation of theoretical order. The issues here have been well worked through in the philosophy of science. They are of central importance in many contexts and we turn next to consider them briefly.

As already discussed, empiricism implies that particular beliefs correspond to particular conditions of experience. The claim can be expressed by saying: in the case of any proposition (which purports to represent reality) we should in principle be able to say what conditions of experience would make it true or would make it false, or, would lead to its acceptance or rejection. The kind of claim was presupposed in Popper’s attempt to distinguish science from non-science using the principle of falsifiability. The principle seemed to presuppose that all propositions in scientific theory could be unambiguously falsified by certain experimental data. This supposition is apparently empiricist in the sense outlined above, and insofar as this is so, it would be correct to say that Popper’s principles of falsifiability and demarcation were among the last expressions of empiricist dogma. The principles were applied in various ways, including in highly influential criticism of psychoanalytic theory, for being non-falsifiable non-science.11

Subsequent work in the philosophy and history of science, in particular Lakatos’ classic paper (1970), dismantled these remaining empiricist assumptions. It became clear that there was no definite mapping between observations and theoretical propositions. If a theory as a whole made empirical predictions which turned out to be false, diagnosis of error in the theory was so far ambiguous: it could be inferred that there was error somewhere in the system, but not yet where. Further, some propositions within the theory were likely to be protected from refutation, to be in this sense treated as unfalsifiable. These would be propositions fundamental to the theory as a whole, typically referring to ‘unobservables’ and the principles governing their causal interactions. Such propositions constitute the ‘core’ of the scientific theory. Further, however, the theory as a whole has to contain a more or less explicit theory of observation, which in effect links the theoretical, unobservable processes to the instruments and procedures of measurement. Observation and experiment, at least insofar as it is taken to be relevant to (confirming or disconfirming) theory, has to be interpreted by the theory of observation. The notion of hard, theory-free, incorrigible data is undermined in this way.
The history of science is replete with cases in which the theory ostensibly under test has been saved from anomalies by adjustment within the theory of observation. An example cited by Lakatos (1970, p. 130n) is the Newtonian theory of gravitation applied to lunar motion, which was at first incompatible with the observations made by the first Astronomer Royal at Greenwich: Newton corrected Flamsteed’s data for the effects of atmospheric refraction, and the amended observations were, after all, as predicted by the gravitational theory. This is of course a remarkable and famous example of success. It illustrates that adjustments which save a theory from anomalies can be desirable, in fact can constitute advance in knowledge. The amended theory turns anomalies into confirmations, but it achieves this by increasing the scope and predictive power of the theory. This type of move is called by Lakatos a progressive theory-change, and it stands in contrast to degenerating changes, which preserve theory by restricting its predictive power (Lakatos 1970, pp. 118ff.).

There are diverse ways in which the predictive power of theories can degenerate: for example, by multiplication of *ad hoc* hypotheses, or by stretching the definition and application of key explanatory terms.

Lakatos makes clear the ways in which scientific theory can degenerate. These problems and issues are familiar in psychological theorizing. Consider the charge referred to above, that psychoanalytic theory is unfalsifiable. Even if the charge of intrinsic unfalsifiability is misconceived, the criticism can stand in the form: in some respects psychoanalytic theory may have *come to be used* unfalsifiably, hedged about by so many possibilities and qualifications that it becomes a match for any phenomena we can imagine, so that it predicts everything and excludes nothing. Over-elaboration is certainly a particular hazard for an elaborate theory, particularly one that deals in unconscious mental states and mechanisms. The opposite kind of risk exists for theory that errs on the side of parsimony. For example, as discussed in Section 1.1.1 above, Chomsky showed that operant theory applied to language learning stretches the meaning of its few key terms to the point of vacuity.

It should be emphasized that the tendency to protect core theory from refutation, even at high cost, is not adequately explained by appeal to such as whim, pride, or perversity. There is a methodological principle at work here, which has logical and psychological justification. The core theory, defining the underlying phenomena and causal principles, is essential for making predictions. For this reason it cannot (psychologically) and should not (logically) be given up easily. Without it we would not be able to make any predictions, and therefore neither would we know how to act: action would so far cease. In scientific investigation this means: we would have no reason to set up an experiment, since there would be nothing to put to the test. The implication is that
fundamental theories generally are not given up even if experience apparently contradicts them. Indeed, as Lakatos observes, theories in science are typically launched amidst an array of anomalies, and they stay afloat notwithstanding the apparent contradictions: the anomalies are either ignored, or it is assumed that they can be handled by the theory, somehow or other.

In general, theories are not abandoned under the weight of counter-evidence, insofar as the counter-evidence can be deflected away from what is essential to the theory. This raises the issue of what more is required for a radical theory change. The general answer is that a new theory has to be on offer, one which can replace the old one and which can in particular make sense of, explain and predict, what were anomalies for the old theory (Lakatos 1970). Large-scale changes of this kind may be described as ‘paradigm-shifts’ (Kuhn 1962). They can be seen throughout the history of the sciences, for example, the change from the Ptolemeic to the Copernican view of the Earth’s place in the Solar system; the change from Newtonian to Relativistic Mechanics; and in psychology recently, the change from behaviourist to cognitive psychology.

The above considerations concern scientific theory and practice (experimentation), but they apply equally to the epistemology of daily life. The implication is that the knowledge or belief used in daily life has the form of theories. In the remainder of this section we consider how this applies to activities generally, to the knowledge-base of interaction with other social beings and indeed to knowledge of one’s own actions (Section 1.4.2). The section ends with discussion of ‘core’ beliefs fundamental to the possibility of action as such, a matter which brings us to the interplay between psychological order and disorder, a principal theme of the essay as a whole (Section 1.4.3).

Before proceeding to apply the insight of post-empiricism, that knowledge and belief in daily life has the form of theories, two caveats or complications should be noted. To the extent that the term ‘theory’ connotes only propositional knowledge (knowledge expressed in sentence-like structures), the claim that all knowledge is theoretical neglects various forms of analogical representation. Qualifications along these lines are discussed for example by Feyerabend (1988). In the particular case of the theory of mind, to be discussed below in Section 1.4.2, analogical knowledge would involve something like mental simulation, or empathy, and this epistemology will be discussed in the third chapter (Section 3.2). A further complication is the fact that a person’s behaviour, or indeed an animal’s behaviour, may be best predicted by attribution of a theory, an interconnected set of beliefs and desires, not withstanding the fact that the person (still less the animal) does not or could not come up with any such theory. This consideration has led to distinctions between ‘explicit’ and ‘tacit’ theory, and between explicit and tacit knowledge generally.12 Broadly speaking,
the assumption we make in this chapter and throughout the essay is that attribution of a theory to a person or animal is warranted insofar as it facilitates prediction of their behaviour. It is certainly a further issue whether the agent can or does articulate such a theory. The capacity to give an account of oneself (discussed below in Section 1.3.2) plausibly depends on language, and hence is uniquely human.

1.3.2 Theory of mind and self-knowledge

The idea that intentional concepts are useful in explanation and prediction of action, and post-empiricist epistemology, fundamental to which is the notion of theory, may be brought together. Combining these two themes we are led to the idea that we explain and predict action using a theory of intentional states and processes. In brief, we are led to the idea of a ‘theory of mind’, and to a particular way of looking at our familiar folk psychology.

Folk psychology, our familiar language of mental states and processes, admits of several interpretations. Within the framework of Cartesian metaphysics, the language refers to a private, immaterial realm, independent of the body. Part of this picture is that first-person knowledge of mind is direct and certain, while third-person knowledge is indirect and (probably irredeemably) uncertain. This whole problematic, inherited from seventeenth-century philosophy, was played out in the first decades of psychological science, with introspectionism followed by behaviourism. The philosophical work of dismantling the Cartesian interpretation of mind was accomplished for example by Wittgenstein (1953) and by Ryle (1949). These philosophers were able to show that mental concepts do not refer to some private process running parallel to behaviour, but are intimately (logically) linked to behaviour itself. It would be fair to say that in these writers the negative part of the argument, the deconstruction, was clearer than the positive part. It became clear what mentalistic language was not doing. But then, what was it doing? What is it for?

The answer to this post-Cartesian question emerged clearly first in experimental psychology, naturally so given its nature, briefly as follows: mental states are invoked in psychological theory as regulators of action, for the purpose of explaining and predicting complex forms of behaviour. In other words, the post-Cartesian response in psychological science has been the cognitive paradigm.

There are striking similarities, as well as differences, between cognitive psychological science and our familiar folk psychology (Section 1.1.1). Given the similarities it is natural enough to suppose that folk psychology is also in the business of, among other things, explaining and predicting behaviour, and is in this sense a (quasi-scientific) theory. Hence we arrive at the idea of the ‘theory
of mind’. Another theme in the same movement of thought is this. As behavioural scientists became accustomed to the explicit and deliberate use of mentalistic concepts in explanation and prediction of the behaviour of their experimental subjects, it becomes possible to think that those participants might be using a similar theory to make sense of and anticipate social behaviour, including, indeed, interactions with the experimenters. It was in fact in this kind of context, interplay between the subject, a chimpanzee, and the scientist, that the expression ‘theory of mind’ was created (Premack and Woodruff 1978). The implication for our familiar folk psychological language is then that it is an explicit formulation of a ‘theory of mind’ (e.g. Stich 1983; Fodor 1987; Whiten 1991; Stich and Ravenscroft 1996; Griffin and Baron-Cohen, 2002).

The idea that folk psychology is a scientific-like theory for the explanation and prediction of behaviour is thus new. Its appearance required not only the dismantling of Cartesian assumptions, but also firm familiarity with the cognitive paradigm in behavioural science. Previous to this the idea is conspicuous by its absence. For example, Piaget studied development of the child’s theories of many things, from the physical world to morality, but not yet development of the child’s theory of mind. This has become, however, a flourishing topic in developmental psychology (e.g. Astington et al. 1988; Harris 1989; Wellman 1990; Butterworth et al. 1991; Bennett 1993). The idea that propositions about mental states serve in the explanation and prediction of action is fundamental to the post-Cartesian cognitive paradigm. It is taken as the starting-place for the present essay, and runs through most of its themes and arguments. That propositions about mind have a form of a theory, in the sense of post-empiricist epistemology, is an (inevitable) corollary of the basic idea, and will be explicitly explored and used in various places as we proceed. In the present section knowledge of one’s own mind, as well as knowledge of the other’s mind, is construed as having the form of a theory. In the next section we introduce a topic to be explored further in Chapter 8, that there are aspects of the theory of the self in relation to the world that are essential to action, such that action and thought itself are threatened if they are threatened. In the fourth chapter (Section 4.6) we discuss the status of theoretical generalizations over mental states and meaningful contents.

The notion of a theory of mind draws attention to certain features of explanation of behaviour in terms of mental states: the explanations ‘go beyond’ immediately known phenomena, they can be used to make sense of and predict what is observable, they function within a hierarchically organized system of propositions, etc. In brief, knowledge of mind is being understood in a typically post-empiricist way. The contrast is basically with direct acquaintance
with the objects of knowledge. In the case of mental objects which would be introspection of the subject’s own mental states, and a big problem in the case of others. The point is not, however, that we can imagine giving up the theory that other people have minds, as if it were a disposable option. Such a claim is dubious psychology (Hobson 1991), and dubious philosophy. It has already been argued (in Section 1.3.6), that the Intentional Stance is mandatory, while the purpose is prediction of intentional activity. It should also be noted that while we generally endorse here the idea that knowledge of mind, like knowledge generally, involves theory, we do not mean to exclude the possibility noted above that it may also involve analogic representation, something like ‘empathy’. This is discussed in Chapter 4 in the context of the relativity of knowledge.

Theory of mind involves what may be called the capacity for second-order intentionality. Intentionality consists in the possession of such as beliefs and desires. Second-order intentionality consists in the possession of beliefs about beliefs and desires, or desires about desires, etc. It may be applied in the first-, second-, or third-person cases, expressed in forms such as: ‘I know that I (you or he) believe (or desire) that p’. It seems that language is crucially involved in meta-cognition and in theory of mind development specifically, but the details and even the direction of causality remains unclear (see e.g. Astington and Jenkins 1999). The capacity to give an account of the beliefs, desires, plans, and so on, according to which we act is a very high-level cognitive capacity, perhaps the highest of all, and in the first-person case particularly is linked to self-knowledge, and is intimately involved in concepts of autonomy, freedom, and responsibility.

While it may be plausible enough to suppose that second-order intentionality has the form of a theory in case of knowledge of the other, it is less intuitive that this is so in one’s own case. The theory of knowledge of one’s own mental states that has dominated philosophy and psychology since about the seventeenth century through to relatively recently, the traditional theory of introspection, has as its main idea that mental states are immediately manifest to the self. This metaphor has three specific implications: completeness, infallibility, and ‘privileged access’. The self knows all of its own mental states, it cannot make a mistake about them, and its knowledge of them is direct, qualitatively superior to the indirect, inferential knowledge (or belief) possible for another subject. However, this seventeenth-century conception of self-knowledge has collapsed with the appearance of the cognitive psychological paradigm, from Freud onwards, in which the defining characteristic of mental states is their regulation of behaviour, not their appearance in consciousness (or self-report)(see Section 1.1.1). It is evident within this paradigm that people
sometimes make mistakes about, or have no idea about, the intentional processes regulating their behaviour. What replaces the theory of introspection, broadly speaking, is then the idea that self-knowledge has the form of a theory. A version of this new epistemology was proposed by Nisbett and Wilson in their well-known (1977) paper, and will be discussed further below. The proposal that self-knowledge has the form of a theory has the immediate advantages of accommodating the phenomena which are anomalous for the traditional theory of introspection, namely, ignorance and error. Theories in general are partial, as opposed to complete, and they are subject to error, as opposed to infallible. These features of self-knowledge become comprehensible, if self-knowledge is construed as a theory.

The construal of self-knowledge as a theory extends the notion of ‘theory of mind’, discussed in the previous subsection, to one’s own case: knowledge of one’s own mind is seen as having the same form as knowledge of other minds, namely, the form of a theory. In the context of post-empiricist epistemology generally, the point is that knowledge of the self has the same or similar form to knowledge of reality in general. This suggestion was indeed already in classical empiricism. Locke grouped together introspection (‘reflection’) with the ‘external’ senses, assimilating knowledge of the internal world to knowledge of the external (1690, Bk.II, Ch.1, §4).

The construal of self-knowledge as a theory is plausible in the contexts of current theories of the mind and knowledge, but it is also somewhat counterintuitive. Is it true that knowledge of one’s own mind is just like one’s knowledge of someone else’s? Is it true that in reporting one’s mental states one is invoking a theory ranging over unobservables? Certainly we would be very far from the notion of introspection; in fact too far. There are empirical and philosophical reasons for making certain qualifications to the idea that self-knowledge is theoretical. These qualifications concern two features of self-knowledge which are highlighted by, though over-stated by, the traditional theory of introspection: infallibility and privileged access. (Nothing remains, by the way, of the third claim of the theory, completeness, once we adopt the model of cognitive psychology.) Let us consider the issues of privileged access and infallibility in connection with Nisbett and Wilson’s (1977) proposal that self-knowledge has the form of a theory.

Nisbett and Wilson emphasise that a feature of their account is first-person/third-person symmetry in knowledge of (beliefs about) mental states: an observer has the same source of belief about my mental states as I do, namely theory. On the other hand, Nisbett and Wilson allow that the subject has ‘indeed direct access to a great storehouse of private knowledge’, or at least knowledge ‘quantitatively superior’ to that of any observer, such as concerning: personal
historical facts, the focus of current attention, current sensations, also emotions, evaluations and plans (Nisbett and Wilson 1977, p. 255; see also Ericsson and Simon 1980). An implication is that we have to qualify the proposal of first-person/third-person epistemological symmetry. While it may be true that both subject and observer alike draw on theory, the observer has as information only behaviour (including speech), while the subject has maybe that, but in any case also privileged information of the sort described above, roughly, what is conscious and available to self-report in perception and short-term memory.

The issue of privileged access is connected to the issue of infallibility in the reporting of subjective states. There are circumstances in which the statement ‘I believe that p’, even when sincerely made, can be wrong. For example, a social psychologist may demonstrate to me, following controlled observation of my behaviour in a selection-procedure, that I discriminate on the basis of sex or ethnic group, even though I was not only unaware of this, but sincerely believed the opposite. The general point, illustrated in various contexts in Nisbett and Wilson’s review (1977), is that first-person reporting of mental states is fallible insofar as it may conflict with the person’s actions. On the other hand, there is a way in which sincerely made statements of belief can be infallible. Insofar as I resolve to act in accord with a belief—insofar as, as we colloquially say, I ‘make a point of it’—then in general my behaviour will indeed accord with that belief. In the circumstances envisaged above, the psychologist’s demonstration would have the effect, we may suppose, of ensuring that I do not continue making the same mistake. Nisbett and Wilson make the point that if subjects in experimental situations were to be (made) aware of being influenced by (what they would regard as) factors irrelevant to the task, then they would probably correct for them (Nisbett and Wilson 1977, pp. 239, 247). This is connected to another point made by Nisbett and Wilson, that when we consciously, deliberately apply rules for decision-making, then the verbal report of these rules will indeed accurately predict behaviour (Nisbett and Wilson 1977, p. 244). The position in such a case could be described by saying that we have a correct theory about what is regulating behaviour, but it would be better to say instead, or as well, that the theory serves in the regulating procedure. In these circumstances the verbal expression is not so much a (true or false) report of a mental process, but is rather an affirmation of the intent to follow such-and-such a procedure. Hence there is (in normal circumstances) no possibility of error. Analogous points apply in the case of desire. The assertion ‘I desire that p’ may be false, as judged by concurrent behaviour incompatible with that desire, or as judged by the speaker’s disillusionment on achieving its object. Nevertheless, the assertion (assuming it is
sincere) is likely to be true in the sense that (at least some of) the speaker’s behaviour is, or would be in appropriate circumstances, appropriate to the expressed desire. The expression of desire, as of belief, can be the expression of intent. The critical point in the present context is that infallibility of self-reports is being explained by supposing that they function not only as (true-or-false) descriptions but also as expressions of inclinations to action.

Neglect of the expression of intention has the effect of neglecting also an important consequence of being in error. According to the simplest version of the proposal that self-knowledge has the form of a theory, the issue of correctness or incorrectness in reports of one’s own mental states is just the same as in other theoretical explanations, a matter of criteria familiar in the philosophy of science: predictive efficacy, coherence, parsimony, etc. If we make a mistake then so be it; we adjust the theory. While this may be an adequate model of correctness/incorrectness so far as concerns precisely the theoretical aspects of statements of beliefs and desires, we need another kind of model in relation to their use as expressions of commitment to a course of action. Insofar as sincere statements of belief express the intention to act in accord with that belief, even when there is behavioural evidence of a contrary belief at work, so that the expressed belief is in that sense mistaken, then the consequence of being mistaken is not simply that the subject happens to be wrong; it is rather that there are two conflicting systems of belief, in fact two conflicting systems of belief–desire–behaviour complexes. Verbally expressed beliefs and desires regulate certain actions. This set of beliefs, desires and actions is either congruent with (consistent with) other relevant actions, and the beliefs and desires which (we suppose) regulate them; or they are not. If the two sets are consistent, then second-order intentional statements, of the form ‘I believe that I believe that, or desire that, p’ are indistinguishable from the first-order statements ‘I believe that, desire that, p’. But if the two sets are inconsistent, then first-order and second-order intentionality have fallen apart. In the first case, the person ‘knows herself’: what she is doing and why. In the second case the person is in a (more or less serious) muddle, engaged in two incompatible courses of action. There is failure of self-knowledge, long recognized as the source of much of our trouble.

Knowledge of one’s own mind, like knowledge of other minds, has the form of a theory. This post-empiricist formulation has a surprising, radically non-Cartesian result, namely, that self-knowledge is closely interwoven with the social. This follows from the fact that the theory of mind, like theories generally, has essentially social origins. For example, children’s ability to recognize emotions, say, depends on family discourse about emotional states, their causes and their effects (Dunn et al. 1991a, b; Brown and Dunn 1991).
1.3.3 Core beliefs: logic and psychologic

The post-empiricist perspective shows that theories have a ‘core’ of fundamental beliefs, or rules, which cannot be given up without the threat that thought and action itself fall into disarray (Section 1.3.1). For example if the chemical theory embodied in the periodic table of elements, or particular hypotheses essential to it, were to be given up, in the absence of a viable alternative, the cost would be confusion in, and cessation of, chemical experimentation and thinking. We would not know what to think, or what to do. This kind of point is well recognized and (relatively) well understood in application to scientific theory. What is of interest here are the applications of this epistemology to psychology and clinical psychology. The critical point is that some theory is essential for us, either because it belongs with activities we cannot do without, or because it belongs with action as such. We apparently do not have to continue with chemistry, for example, so we could carry on despite the demise of current theory, and do something else instead. Though of course even this point is relative and needs qualification: it might not apply to someone whose identity as a chemist was fundamental to the person’s view of him or herself. There are cultural and individual differences in what are taken to be essential practices and beliefs. It can be said, on the other hand, that some very general beliefs are essential to action as such, though again, what this amounts to may vary from individual to individual, and between cultures and subcultures. But insofar as there are such convictions, they maintain psychological order: what lies beyond them is breakdown.

Issues of this kind were explored philosophically by Wittgenstein in On Certainty (1969). Wittgenstein saw that knowledge, or certainty, was intimately linked to what we need in order to act. For example, at $414 Wittgenstein writes:

How do I know that it is my hand? Do I even here know what it means to say it is my hand? - When I say 'how do I know' I do not mean that I have the least doubt of it. What we have here is a foundation for all my action.

Again, at $411:

If I say ‘we assume that the earth has existed for many years past’ (or something similar), then of course it sounds strange that we should assume such a thing. But in the entire system of our language-games it belongs to the foundations. The assumption, one might say, forms the basis of action, and therefore, naturally, of thought.

An implication of these and many other passages in On Certainty is that the foundations of knowledge coincide with the foundations of thought and meaning. We have to know, or at least be certain of, judgement itself. In this general respect Wittgenstein’s proposal follows the original Cartesian epistemology: the method de omnibus dubitandum came to an end precisely at the Cogito.
But while in Descartes thought consisted of (subjective) mental events, such as images of perception, thought in Wittgenstein’s philosophy pertains essentially to action. Hence the conclusion that the foundations of certainty are what is required for action.

The connection between these points and the empiricist theory of knowledge may be brought out in the following way. Empiricism acknowledged that the truths of logic were (alone) not based in experience. ‘Logic’ here refers to what is essential to thought. In the philosophical tradition logic variously comprised the law of identity and the laws of the syllogism, later elaborated into the propositional and predicate calculi. In post-empiricism, however, logic acquires a significance broader than these formalities. It comes to include core assumptions within systems of belief that serve as rules for the interpretation of experience, as opposed to beliefs that might be overthrown by experience. If core propositions, or rules, within the system of belief were to be questioned, then the entire system would be under threat. Wittgenstein refers to the law of identity in this connection at §494:

‘I cannot doubt this proposition without giving up all judgement’.

But what sort of proposition is that? (It is reminiscent of what Frege said about the law of identity.) It is certainly no empirical proposition. It does not belong to psychology. It has rather the character of a rule.

A problem with such a rule might mean the end of the person’s participation in the language-game. At §613–14, for example:

But what could make me doubt whether this person here is N.N., whom I have known for years? Here a doubt would see to drag everything with it and plunge it into chaos.

That is to say: If I were contradicted on all sides and told that this person’s name was not what I had always known it was (and I use ‘know’ here intentionally), then in that case the foundation of all judging would be taken away from me.

Given these high stakes, the point is precisely that we are hardly inclined to give up core beliefs. Under pressure their rule-like function takes over: counter-evidence is deflected away. Thus, at §516 for example:

If something happened (such as someone telling me something) calculated to make me doubtful of my own name, there would certainly also be something that made the grounds of these doubts themselves seem doubtful, and I could therefore decide to retain my old belief.

A similar point is made at §360–362 (with allusion perhaps to the Cartesian appeal to divine good faith):

I KNOW that this is my foot. I could not accept any experience as proof to the contrary. —That may be an exclamation; but what follows from it? At least that I shall act with a certainty that knows no doubt, in accordance with my belief.
But I might also say: it has been revealed to me by God that it is so. God has taught me that this is my foot. And therefore if anything happened that seemed to conflict with this knowledge I should have to regard that as deception.

But doesn’t it come out here that knowledge is related to a decision?

The notion of revealed truth, antithetical to empiricism, ironically re-appears, in mundane not divine form, in the post-empiricist epistemology. Theories are passed on to the individual in education, as remarked already in the preceding subsection in the case of ‘theory of mind’. Particularly for the child, belief in adults is essential to learning. On this, Wittgenstein writes, e.g. (Wittgenstein 1969):

160. The child learns by believing the adult. Doubt comes after belief.

Belief in the teacher has to be one of the child’s fundamental rules. Allow us to give an anecdote that illustrates this point specifically in relation to the current theme concerning logic. A child of one of the authors came home from school, age 5, saying that he had been learning about shapes, and had learned among other things that a rectangle was not a rectangle. Gentle scepticism and suggestions of alternatives were met with the firm and repeated declaration that Miss had said so. For this five year old, when it came to a choice between what Miss said and the law of identity, the law of identity came a clear second.

It has been implicit in the discussion so far that there is an intimate connection between propositions that define our picture of the world, and mental order. Doubt or error concerning fundamental rules raises the issue of breakdown of psychological function. The connection here is of central concern to the themes of the present essay.

While our certainty has foundations in logic, these foundations are not absolute. There is no suggestion that our knowledge is infallible. It is possible for a person to be in doubt about, or in error about, even fundamental things. But in such cases, doubt arises as to the person’s soundness of mind. Wittgenstein makes this point throughout On Certainty. For example at $71:

If my friend were to imagine one day that he had been living for a long time past in such and such a place, etc. etc., I should not call this a mistake, but rather a mental disturbance (Geistesstorung), perhaps a transient one.

And at $155, concerning Moore’s ‘common sense’ propositions:

In certain circumstances a man cannot make a mistake. (‘Can’ is here used logically, and the proposition does not mean that a man cannot say anything false in those circumstances.) If Moore were to pronounce the opposite of those propositions which he declares certain, we should not just not share his opinion: we should regard him as demented (geistesgestort).
Certain false judgements cast doubt on the speaker’s state of mind. The inference would be that there is something wrong with the person’s capacity to make judgements. The nature of the impairment would be so far unclear; it may involve perception, memory, language-comprehension, or reason itself. That there are judgements which define the capacity for judgement is presupposed in neurological and psychiatric examination. When a clinician asks a patient questions such as: how many fingers am I holding up? or, where are we now?, the aim is not to elicit information, but is rather to test the measure.

These considerations bring out the nature of certainty. A person can say: ‘I must be right about this (for example that this is my hand), providing I am able to make judgements at all’. Of course from the person’s point of view this qualification can hardly be doubted: what lies on the other side is chaos (madness).

In On Certainty Wittgenstein examined the certainty that we attach to some beliefs of a factual nature, general or personal. In focussing on factual beliefs Wittgenstein followed traditional theory of knowledge, the originality being the characteristically post-empiricist insight that certainty in such beliefs was a matter of their being essential to action, and hence to judgement itself (Section 1.4.4). But the acknowledgement of the fundamental connection between certainty and action opens up a different area, concerning beliefs which are actually about the self’s activity, and in particular about what is essential to it. Such beliefs constitute what can be called the core of the theory of action.

Action presupposes at least the following core beliefs, or expectations: that the self is competent (enough) to act, that the world is predictable (enough), and that the world provides (enough) satisfaction of needs. Such expectations have to be preserved if activity is to continue. If they were to be abandoned, action would appear to be either impossible or pointless: there would be, so far, no reason to act. Beliefs of this kind have a special epistemological and logical role. They will be expressed, if they are expressed at all, with certainty. Or again, the agent will be extremely reluctant to abandon them, on pain, so far, of abandoning action itself. This means for example that any experience which seems to contradict them will, if at all possible, be re-interpreted in such a way as to preserve the beliefs, and hence action itself.

Another way of bringing out the special epistemological and logical role of such propositions is to describe them as a priori. This has various connotations. The involvement of such beliefs in the regulation of action follows from the definition of (belongs to the concept of) action itself. Further, such beliefs are not based in experience, but rather serve in the interpretation of experience: counter-evidence will tend to be re-construed so as to remove threat to the core beliefs. It is possible also that such beliefs or expectations are a priori in the sense of being innate, designed in at birth. It is at least plausible to
suppose that living beings are designed by evolutionary selection so as to expect such as predictability and satisfaction of needs, these expectations being preconditions of attempts to act. Another sign of the special status of these beliefs and expectations, one which directly links the philosophical and psychological sense of being *a priori* (or innate) is the fact that their attribution is valid providing the subject is acting at all, regardless of the particular nature of the action.

It is true that we rarely have occasion to articulate or attribute core assumptions of action explicitly. Typically fundamental principles may remain implicit, until the theory is faced with repeated recalcitrant experiences. The presuppositions of action show up when they apparently fail to apply. Thus for example, in the learned helplessness experimental paradigm animals apparently give up the expectation that what they do makes a difference, and consequently they do nothing (Seligman 1975). It is evident in this example that fundamental rules underlying action can be (are) attributed to animals, such as rats, which have no language. The only presuppositions are those that underlie the attribution of mental (cognitive) states generally. Core beliefs or expectations can be attributed to a living being insofar as they best explain and predict intentional activity. And so also, as in the case of learned helplessness just cited, the negation of such beliefs or expectations can be attributed insofar as they best explain and predict the giving up of intentional activity.

1.4 *The inference to causality*

Through this chapter we have explored various aspects of the fact that explanations of behaviour in terms of meaningful states have predictive power. In this section we draw the conclusion that such explanations are *causal*.

The point to be made at this stage is just that there is a close relation between predictive efficacy and causal explanation. It is relatively uncontroversial to say that predictive power is a necessary condition for an explanation to be causal. It is not by itself, however, a sufficient condition. Accidental connections (for example between being a swan and being white) can be used for prediction, without being causal. It is characteristic of accidental generalizations that their truth is accidentally restricted in space and/or time (in the example just cited restricted to Europe, before zoos), and also that they do not belong to or follow from a systematic theory. Neither of these points applies in the case of explanation of behaviour in terms of mind and meaning. There are various plausible responses to the apparent fact that attribution of mental states predicts behaviour, but supposition that the connection is mere coincidence is not among them. The next possibility is more interesting.
Generalization may be reliable, and may indeed signify causal connection, but the associated phenomena may be linked by a common cause, rather than one kind being a cause of the other. An example would be the association between migrating behaviour of birds in different parts of the world. Typically we construe an association as signifying a common cause in case we have or can at least envisage a theory which would specify the causal mechanisms and hence the connection between the several sets of phenomena. It is possible to look at the connection between mental states and behaviour in this way. The idea would be: there are reliable connections between mental states of certain kinds and behaviour of certain kinds, such that the former predict the latter, but mental states are not causes of behaviour, rather they are both products of a common cause, the most likely candidate for which role is activity of the brain. This is a reasonable answer but it is out of date: it is reasonable only in the context of assumptions that have been replaced in current theory. The assumptions are Cartesian, or neo-Cartesian, namely, that mental events are immaterial processes, running in parallel to material events, neural or bodily, and that there is no essential connection between the mental and the material. The Cartesian dual-process theory has no role in cognitive psychology or cognitive science generally, including AI in particular. To put the point in another way, we are beyond the stage at which the predictive power of the theory of mind can be understood in these terms. The situation is rather that the pressure mounts to adopt some form of mind/brain identity theory, the main idea being that mental events are in some sense brain events and (therefore can be) in some sense causes of behaviour—this direction is considered further below and in subsequent chapters.

Before closing this chapter we return to a point made right at the start, that the problem of mind and meaning and their relation to causality, is impossible to understand in isolation from the history of ideas, and in particular is hardly apparent to common sense and ordinary language. It was noted that Cartesian dualism already made seemed to imply the impossibility of causal interaction between mind and body, and that this was the philosophical framework in which psychological science was conceived and made its first steps. It was only by the replacement of the behavioural (stimulus–response) paradigm by the cognitive that mental—specifically cognitive, information-carrying—states could appear as involved in the causation of behaviour, the main line of thought leading to this conclusion being just that explanation and prediction of (complex) behaviour was best achieved by invoking such states. This shift in conception of mentality, from the Cartesian or neo-Cartesian to the current post-modern, cognitive science view, of course is tied together closely with a changing conception of what has come to be called, indeed during this shift,
'folk psychology'. The implication is that our ordinary descriptions of people in terms of mental states are involved in the prediction of behaviour and hence its causal explanation. That folk psychology has predictive power is from our present point of view not surprising: predictive power is closely linked to practical utility, and given that the folk have practical concerns, it makes sense that they should have developed a theory which has predictive power. Predictive efficacy, of course, is one of the fundamental aims of scientific theory, and from this point of view folk psychology appears as a folk science, alongside folk physics. This shift of perspective is major, being not only away from the Cartesian, but also away from another profound philosophical problematic in the recent history of ideas, and still highly influential, concerning specifically demarcations between the meaningful and the causal-scientific.

The problem here, already referred to in the Introduction, may be sketched as follows. The last decades of the nineteenth century saw the emergence of new sciences, particularly history and social science, which had as their subject-matter the expression of mind in society. To the extent that these new Geisteswissenschaften had their roots in German idealism, rather than in the seventeenth-century dichotomy between mind and matter, knowledge of mind was not a problem for them: the activity of mind in culture and society was a given. But there arose then a fundamentally new problem, which remains ours, namely, that knowledge of mind and its expression in activity does not conform readily to the methodological assumptions and rules of the natural sciences. The tension found expression in the celebrated distinctions between meaning and causality, and between understanding and explaining (see Von Wright 1971 for an historical, critical review). Human activity is permeated by meaning, understanding of which is a fundamental aim of the cultural sciences. Meaningful phenomena, however, and the way they are known, seem to be different in fundamental ways from the subject-matter and methods of the natural sciences. One contrast is that meaningful phenomena (such as an historical event, or a cultural practice) are singular or even unique, whereas natural science deals (mostly) with repeated and/or repeatable phenomena. Another, connected contrast is that physics seeks and uses general causal laws in its explanations, while the cultural sciences produce diverse meaningful accounts of diverse events. A third contrast is more explicitly epistemological: understanding plausibly draws on empathy, is subjective, and varies between subjects, while the methods of observation in the natural sciences are objective, and the results should be the same for all.

The problems of mind and meaning have to do with a tension between meaningful phenomena and scientific method, the method used by the hugely
successful paradigm of knowledge, modern natural science. They are distinct from the problems of mind and body, concerning the apparent impossibility of causal interaction, and the epistemological privacy of mind. As already remarked, the roots of the two sets of difficulties are distinguishable: the new cultural sciences grew within the context of the nineteenth-century idealism, which had already left the seventeenth-century dualism behind. On the other hand, of course, it was inevitable that the two problematics became muddled up. This was especially true for psychology and psychiatry, where both the mind/body issues and the problems of meaning and scientific method are of fundamental relevance. The Cartesian framework remained enormously influential, in philosophy and in the sciences, including the new psychology. The older Cartesian problems of mind and body then overlapped and combined with the new problems of mind, meaning and scientific method, both contributing to the idea that meaningful mental (immaterial) states, and the meaningful activity which they allegedly produce, were thoroughly problematic within the scientific world-picture. —Conflict-resolution was achieved by splitting: causality as opposed to meaning, explanation as opposed to understanding, behavioural science as opposed to hermeneutic non-science. This solution and the dichotomy on which it is based is deconstructed insofar as cognitive psychology, the legitimate heir to experimental behavioural psychology, is committed to anything like meaningful states. This is the line of thought we have been pursuing through this chapter.

The main argument is, then, as indicated, from the (theory-driven) predictive power of explanation of action in terms of mind and meaning to the causal status of such explanation. There are various other positions and pathways in this area well-known in the contemporary philosophical literature. One very influential position quite distinct from what is proposed here is due to Davidson. While Davidson assumes that reason-giving explanations are causal, he does not derive this from the premise that they belong to a theory with predictive power, and he sees them as discontinuous with the endeavour of empirical science (Davidson, e.g. 1963, 1970; Evnine 1991; Malpas 1992). In this respect Davidson’s work is in the tradition of the dichotomy between ‘verstehen’ and ‘erklären’, and between meaning and causality, which this essay aims to deconstruct.16 Dennett and Fodor, on the other hand, both of whom will be discussed frequently in this essay, have each emphasized the predictive power of meaningful (intentional) explanation. Fodor infers causality, but links it to a particularly strong version of mind/meaning-brain identity theory that will be discussed and rejected in the second chapter. Dennett steers away from the question of causality, perhaps linked to his wanting to avoid a problematic realism about mind and meaning (such as Fodor’s). The problem of
realism here, the question of what mental states are, particularly if they are to be credited with causal power, will be discussed in Chapters 2 and 3.

As noted above the conclusion that ‘meanings are causes’, in a post-dualist thought space, creates pressure to adopt some form of mind/brain identity theory, the main idea being that mental events are in some sense brain events, assuming they are in some sense real, and (therefore can be) in some sense causes of behaviour. Subsequent chapters are dedicated to making sense of the italicized phrases in this solution.

1.5 Summary

The main idea of this chapter has been that explanations of behaviour in terms of meaningful, mental states have theory-driven predictive power. The first three sections, 1.1 to 1.3, worked out various aspects of this idea, and the conclusion was then drawn in Section 1.4 that such explanations are causal.

Section 1.1 concerned psychological science. The Section 1.1.1 began with a sketch of dualism and the problematic role of mind in the seventeenth-century science. The ill-fit between mind and science became starkly apparent at the turn of the nineteenth century with attempts to construct a science of the mind, leading first to a methodologically weak introspectionism and then to the other alternative within the framework of Cartesian dualism, behaviourism. We went on to consider the logic of cognitive explanations of behaviour and influences on the cognitive revolution in psychology. Cognitive animal learning theory drew attention to the fact that the behaviour of humans and of higher animals is ‘intelligent’ (goal-directed and plastic), apparently not only a matter of mechanical conditioning, and proposed that cognitive processes are implicated in the organization and regulation of such behaviour. It was suggested that folk psychological meaningful states constitute a proper subset of the information-carrying states invoked in cognitive psychology, being those which refer specifically to the highly processed informational states that regulate behaviour; by contrast folk psychology has little or nothing to say about earlier stages of information-processing. In Subsection 1.1.2 we considered briefly the role within the cognitive paradigm of affect and consciousness. The cognitive paradigm can look, especially from the point of view of some of its formative influences, affectless. But this appearance is misleading: affect, or emotion, is essential to cognition, insofar as it regulates the activity of living beings. On the other hand, it is true that the concept of consciousness is not essential to the general paradigm. It assumes importance for the explanation of certain high-level features of action, most though not all of which are characteristically human.
In Section 1.2 we began a task that will occupy us throughout the essay, clarification of that family of concepts which includes intentionality, representation, meaning, and information. After some preliminary definitions we considered the attractive idea, which has a very long history, that such concepts are grounded in resemblance between sign and signified (Section 1.2.1). There are reasons to reject the resemblance theory, however, in favour of the view that signs have meaning (represent, have intentionality, carry information) insofar as they are used in activity (Section 1.2.2). Such use is subject to normative descriptions (right/wrong etc.), and can in this sense be described as rule-following. The intimate connection between concepts of meaning and rule-following begins to clarify a central theme in this chapter, that explanations which invoke meaningful states are effective in prediction: they attribute propensity to follow rules, and hence serve to predict what the agent will do. Dennett’s notion of the Intentional Stance, which emphasizes the predictive power of intentional explanations, was also considered in Section 1.2.2. The Intentional Stance predicts intentional behaviour as such, a feat that cannot be accomplished from the lower-level Physical Stance. In this sense at least intentional explanations of (intentional) behaviour cannot be eliminated in principle.

In Section 1.3 we noted that various themes so far and to follow throughout the essay interact strongly with the shift from empiricist to post-empiricist epistemology. Critical to post-empiricism is the idea that knowledge is not derived directly from unconditionally given experience, but is mediated by theory, hierarchically organized systems of belief. The shift away from unconditionally given experience was linked also to the shift from the subject’s being seen as passive, to being seen as active (Section 1.3.1).

We went on to consider the currently influential idea that we use a ‘theory of mind’ to predict behaviour (Section 1.3.2), an idea that clearly belongs to the paradigm being explicated and elaborated in this chapter and the essay as a whole. In terms used so far, the theory of mind involves second-order intentional states, i.e. states that represent intentional states. However the idea that knowledge of mind serves for prediction and involves theory is most clear in the third- (or second-) person case, while the position in the first-person case is less clear. It was argued that theory of mind is used in the first-person case also, and that self-report is generally not a matter of direct, infallible access to private, mental states. But these second-order representations in the first-person case are not used for prediction so much as for the production of action. Second-order states in the first-person case, like intentional states generally, regulate action in accord with them. The implication is that first- and second-order representations in one’s own case may be in conflict, a specific kind of rule-conflict that may be involved in disorder, as will be considered later (Chapter 8).
In post-empiricist epistemology theory functions to guide action and to interpret its results. ‘Theory’ in this sense, and meaning, are closely related concepts (as were sense-impressions and ideas in empiricism). It is well understood in post-empiricism that theory has a structure in which beliefs may play different kinds of role. Of particular interest here are ‘core beliefs’, which function as methodological rules on which the continuation of judgement and action depend. These are particularly crucial ‘meanings’: all available means will be used to preserve them, since threat to them threatens breakdown of judgement and action (Section 1.3.3).

The effectiveness of explanations in terms of meaningful, mental states in delivering predictions of behaviour points to the conclusion that such explanations are causal. This inference was drawn in Section 1.5. The argument is indeed relatively straightforward. The problem is not so much the argument but making sense of its conclusion. It was noted at the beginning of the chapter that the problem of meaning and causality arose not within ordinary language or common sense, but against background philosophical assumptions, these being dualism between mind and body, considered in Section 1.1.1, but also the later dichotomy between meaning and causality, and between understanding and explaining. In effect the new cognitive paradigm in psychological science collapses these old dichotomies.

Endnotes

1. For accounts of animal learning theory see e.g. Hilgard and Bower (1966) and Mackintosh (1983). The following brief discussion of early cognitive theory refers mainly to the work of Tolman (1932, 1948). Brewer (1974) and Dulany (1974) provide helpful, brief critiques of the transition from conditioning to cognitive learning models.

2. The following review is very partial as well as brief. It omits theories within psychology that, as well as cognitive learning theory, anticipated the cognitive paradigm, Piaget’s developmental psychology, and Heider’s attribution theory. For comprehensive treatments of the cognitive revolution in psychology see Gardner (1985) and Baars (1986).

3. For a discussion of the relation between the concept of information in MCT and in cognitive psychology, see Dretske (1981, 1983).

4. On treatments of emotion in cognitive models see e.g. Miller et al. 1960, Pfeifer 1988, Barnard and Teasdale 1991; Oatley and Johnson-Laird 1987; Power and Dalgleish 1997; Rolls 2000. Emotion may be linked specifically to the managing of multiple goals (e.g. Oatley and Johnson-Laird 1987), an issue which will occupy us in Chapter 6 (Section 6.4).
5. The early statement of the problem of ecological validity for cognitive psychology was Neisser’s (1976), with discussion also in e.g. Conway (1991), Ceci and Bronfenbrenner (1991), Sbordone and Long (1996), and Gigerenzer (1998). The question of independence of emotion from cognition was hotly debated in the 1980s (Zajonc 1980, 1984; Zajonc et al. 1982; Lazarus 1982, 1984; Mandler 1982), with eventually a degree of consensus that emotion can be independent of conscious cognitive processing, though normally involves unconscious processing (Mandler 1982; Brewin 1988; Williams et al. 1988). This conclusion is compatible with what is proposed in the text. Theorizing about the links between cognition and emotion include the psychological model proposed by Barnard and Teasdale (Barnard and Teasdale 1991; Teasdale and Barnard 1993) and neurological approaches by Damasio (1994) and Rolls (2000); see also the references in the previous endnote.


7. The distinction here is often drawn in terms of first- and third-person perspectives on the objects of knowledge and on mental states in particular (see e.g. Nagel 1986, and Dennett 1987). Various approaches to consciousness work to breakdown the Cartesian distinction between reality and consciousness, from the point of view of cognitive psychology, e.g. Velmans (1990), in relation to quantum mechanics, Lockwood (1989), see also Goertzel (1992), and by e.g. Davidson (1989) and Dennett (1991) in the philosophy of mind.

8. The definition of intentionality given here, and the definition of intensionality to be given below in the text, while sufficient for our purposes, are rough and ready, and readers seeking detailed accuracy are advised to consult the account of Brentano’s thesis and some of its more recent formulations and versions in Dennett (1969). See also Searle (1983). Full discussions of intentionality in relation to modern philosophical psychology are given by Lyons in his series of articles 1990, 1991, 1992. These articles consider various approaches to intentionality, exemplified by Carnap and Dennett (in the first article), by Chomsky and Fodor (in the second), and by the teleological semantics (in the third article). Lyons range is reflected in the present essay. Dennett’s approach is discussed in the section, Fodor’s Language of Thought hypothesis is discussed in Chapter 2, Section 2.2, and causal and teleological (or functional) semantics through Chapter 4.
9. Dennett’s analysis raises the question whether it is possible or necessary to distinguish between systems such as computers that have merely ‘derived’ intentionality from those like ourselves which have ‘intrinsic’ or ‘original’ intentionality (Dennett 1987, and e.g. Newton 1992.) The issues under this heading are diverse and complicated. They include the problem of defining when such systems are ‘in error’, which is considered at length through Chapter 4. Another issue discussed under this heading concerns the ways in which intentional systems are ‘designed’: computers by human beings, human beings by evolution. We touch on aspects of this issue in Chapter 5, arguing that the intentionality of biological systems specifically is characterized by a range of connected structural and functional features. Generally speaking, however, nothing in the present essay relies heavily on any distinction between ‘derived’ and ‘intrinsic’ (or ‘original’) intentionality.

10. Source material for empiricism includes Locke (1690) and Hume (1777). On logical empiricism see e.g. Ayer (1936) and Ayer (ed.) (1959). Major statements of post-empiricism include Quine (1953), Feyerabend (1965), Wittgenstein (1969), and Lakatos (1970). Aspects of these last two works are discussed below, in Section 1.3.3 and in this subsection respectively.


12. These distinctions are many-sided, complex, and controversial. They arose early in cognitive science (e.g. Chomsky 1965; Fodor 1968; Turvey 1974), and remain influential (e.g. Chomsky 1980; Evans 1985; Stich and Nichols 1992). The simple position adopted in this essay is stated below in the text.

13. ‘Self-knowledge’ has various meanings of which the capacity to give an account of one’s own intentional states is one. For critical discussion of the varieties of self-knowledge see e.g. Neisser (1988) and Cassam (1994).

14. This way of qualifying first-person infallibility and authority, in terms of possible conflict with the person’s actions, is quite distinct from another method found in the philosophical literature, in which the qualification appeals to the so-called ‘broad’ content of mental states (Davidson 1984, 1987; Boghossian 1998; McLaughlin and Tye 1998). The notion of broad content will be discussed at length in the next chapter (Section 2.5). Both ways of qualifying first person authority have in common the critical
point that self-reports of mental states are committed to the existence of something ‘non-subjective’, and hence can be wrong. In the account proposed here this something non-subjective is the person’s (objective) behaviour, while in the other account it is typically some independently defined feature of the external world. Criticisms of the generally accepted notion of broad content are made in 2.5.4 from the standpoint of a behavioural criterion of content, and those criticisms are of a piece with the behavioural criterion of failure of self-knowledge proposed here. An advantage of this behavioural criterion is that it can deliver an account not only of possible error in first-person reports, but also of ‘infallible’ uses of such reports. The approach to infallibility, based on the fact that self-reports normally regulate action, is considered below in the text.

15. Nisbett and Wilson emphasize the fallible use of self-report, in which e.g. ‘I believe that p’ is offered, perhaps mistakenly, as the best explanatory account of the speaker’s behaviour. But Nisbett and Wilson tend to neglect the infallible usage of first-person statements of belief and desires, in which they are more akin to expressions of intent. Related arguments were proposed in early commentaries on Nisbett and Wilson’s paper, particularly by Morris (1981) and by Shotter (1981).

16. Criticism of the view of meaning and causality proposed here (in the first edition) from a Davidsonian point of view is made in a paper by Thornton, with commentary by the present authors (Thornton 1997).

References


REFERENCES


Chapter 2

Mind, meaning, and neural causation

2.1 ‘Encoding’ as a solution to the problem of mental causation

The conclusion of the first chapter—that meaningful, mental states are causes of (intentional) behaviour—raises the question of how mental states relate to brain states, which we suppose (also) cause behaviour. The considerations that lead to the conclusion emphasize the functional role of mental states as mediating causes between stimuli and behaviour, without reference to their ontological status, and therefore a tempting response at this stage is to suppose that mental events just are material events in the brain, and that this is how and why they have causal influence on behaviour. In brief, the materialist theory of mind can be derived from two premises: first, that mental processes mediate causally between stimuli and behaviour, second, that the causal processes which mediate between stimuli and behaviour are material processes in the brain. This move, identifying the mind with the brain, would apparently solve the problem of mental causation at one stroke, in terms highly satisfactory to materialism and natural science.

Predictably enough, however, the philosophical problem of mental causation cannot be disposed of so fast. Philosophical problems typically have the form of forced choice dichotomies, which have their origins in genuine tensions and contradictions in deep theory. Dogmatic statements of one side or another of the split express rather than solve the underlying conflicts. In the present case, identifying the mind with the material brain encounters difficulties that are all variations of the fact that the material brain lacks properties of the mind. The problematic here derives largely from seventeenth-century philosophy, which, as outlined in the previous chapter (Section 1.1.1), stripped ‘matter’ of all but the primary (mathematical, absolute) qualities, consigning the rest to ‘the mind’, which hence became the container for all sensibility. Identifying the mind with the brain will not work if the brain is understood in the spirit of seventeenth-century dualism, as being matter with only physically defined properties. Cartesian mind was defined in various ways: as a thinking substance,
conscious, subjective, known with certainty, and as immaterial. These characteristics all are bound to present as problems to be deconstructed or resolved before mind–brain identity theory or any post-Cartesian concept of mind can be made to work. But for sure no theory is going to be adequate that just affirms one or other half of Cartesian dualism. If there is going to be an adequate materialism, it will have to envisage the brain as being something like the Cartesian mind, not as non-mental Cartesian matter. This is an historical expression of the very general idea that we will be working around in this chapter.

The materialist theory of mind has been subject to various kinds of objection. One kind of objection rests on the fact that mental states have properties which material states do not (such as manifestation in consciousness, epistemic privacy), and vice versa (such as spatial location). Since, according to Leibniz ‘Law of Identity’ two identical things have all properties in common, it would follow that that mental states cannot be material states. However, it has been argued, controversially, that the thesis of contingent identity, as opposed to conceptual or analytic identity, can avoid or otherwise cope with problems of this sort (Boyd 1980, and other papers in Block 1980a, Part Two). Generally the obvious objections to the materialist theory have to do with the ‘subjective’ aspects of mind: mind as viewed by the subject. From this point of view, mental states are manifest in consciousness, and have phenomenal qualities, but neither of these characteristics obviously belong to brain states. However, we shall focus here on problems for the materialist theory that arise from the objective, or scientific perspective. This is, after all, the context in which mind/brain identity is inferred: the claim never was grounded in introspection. From the objective perspective, mental states make their appearance as posits in the theory of behaviour, as mediators between stimulus and response. The question is whether from this external, scientific point of view mental states can be identified with material states of the brain. In effect we are questioning here the fast derivation of the materialist theory of mind as sketched above.

In considering inadequacies of mind–brain identity from the objective, scientific perspective, we are in one sense already far removed from Cartesianism, which viewed mind from a subjective point of view only. On the other hand, a (or the) defining attribute of Cartesian mind was thinking, which is closely linked to representation, meaning and intentionality, and these are none other than the characteristics of mental states that are essential for the purposes of cognitive explanations of behaviour. The explanation of action in terms of mental states depends on the fact that mental states are about the scene of action, and about agent–environment interactions (Section 1.2.2). So it turns out that what was essential to the Cartesian mind is essential also to mind as posited by cognitive-behavioural explanations. This means that the latter will
not be satisfied with any definition of mental states that makes them ‘material’ as opposed to ‘thoughtful’. Put the other way round, from the point of view of the explanation of behaviour in terms of mental states, if mind is going to be identified with the material brain, then the material brain will have to be—like Cartesian mind—a ‘thinking substance’.

The language of mind and meaning used in the description and explanation of action is, however, vastly different from the language used to describe the material processes in the brain. As discussed in the first chapter, the mental states that have to do with action have meaningful content, or intentionality; they are subject to normative descriptions, pertaining to rules, to distinctions such as right/wrong, reasonable/unreasonable, etc.; they are attributed to the agent ‘holistically’, in the form of a theory about many (meaningfully) connected states. These are the characteristics of mental states as invoked in the explanation and prediction of behaviour, and they apparently have no counterpart in brain states, at least when physically defined. The implication is that the mind cannot be identified with the material brain, or, at least, that mental state descriptions cannot be reduced to descriptions of the brain. The various, related meaningful aspects of mental states prohibits any (simple) reduction of the mental to the physical, since, to put it briefly, meaning would be lost in the reduction.1

However, while there is something correct about this preceding line of thought, it is not difficult to see a way of softening the implied contrast between mind and brain. At its starkest, the problem may be expressed by saying that mental states have meaning—carry information—while neural states do not. But of course the reply is then simply that this is not true: neural states do carry information. It is axiomatic in the area of overlap between cognitive science and neuroscience that information-processing is implemented by the brain. In brief: neural states encode, and process, information. This will sometimes be called for short in what follows the ‘encoding thesis’.

The question under consideration is whether from the external point of view, in the context of explaining behaviour in terms of mental states, these states can be identified with material states of the brain. The answer is that it is possible, provided that the latter are described in terms of informational content and processing. If, on the other hand, neural states and processes are described in a lower-level, non-intentional language, without reference to information, then it is a mistake to make the identification, for an essential feature of mental states is not captured in these lower-level descriptions. In historical terms the point can be expressed in the following way: from the point of view of the cognitive-behavioural sciences, the theory of mind–brain identification can be made to work, but on condition that the brain is doing
the kind of thing that was done by the Cartesian mind, in particular *thinking* (or representing). In contemporary terms this proposal is the familiar one, that the brain is an information-processing system. It should be emphasized that the concept of information required in the present context has to be a *semantic* one, linked to meaning, intentionality, representation, etc. The context in question is the modelling of, and hence the explanation and prediction of, organism–environment interactions. In this context, for this purpose, the information processed by the brain has to be *about* something (it has to *represent* something), namely, actual or possible states of the environment, results of action, etc. When brain function is described in these terms, in terms of intentionality, it is in effect being regarded as functioning like the mind.

It should be noted that this proposal is not most happily expressed by saying that mental (or meaningful) states and processes ‘are identical with’ brain states and processes. It is better expressed using terms such as ‘are realized by’. This shift in terminology signifies a relationship that is not static, but which is more like that between process and function. It is recommended already by the functionalist theory of mental states, which defines them in terms of their causes and effects. The functionalist theory can be used to derive the theory of mind–brain identity, along the lines of the argument given at the beginning of the section, but it can also be turned against a strong version of the identity theory. The objection emphasizes precisely function rather than composition: functional states in general can be ‘realized’ in a variety of ways, so they cannot be identified with a particular material structure or process. The functional states of computing systems, for example, can be realized in diverse kinds of hardware. In biology it is familiar that the same function can be served by a variety of structures and processes in different species. Similarly, the argument proceeds, mental states as functional states cannot be identified with the material states that realize them. According to this argument, the valid sense of ‘identity’ here would have to be that in which functional states are ‘realized by’, ‘served by’, or ‘implemented by’ material processes. It may be that as a matter of fact the same kind of mental state is realized in different cases by different neural structures and processes. The same belief as a functionally defined state may be realized in one way in human beings, in another in cats, or in different ways in different members of the same species, or even differently in the same person at different times. Considerations of this sort have led to a distinction between *type* and *token* mind–brain identity theories. (These terms are taken from philosophical logic: ‘type’ means kind, ‘token’ means instance. Thus, the following quotation marks, ‘A A’, contain one letter type and two letter tokens.) Type identity theory proposes that each type of mental event is identical with a type of brain event. This strong version of the identity theory has come to be
regarded as mistaken, for the kind of reasons adduced above, and has been
replaced by token identity theory. According to this weaker version, each token
mental event is identical with (in the sense of realized by) some token brain
event. Token identity theory acknowledges that it cannot be assumed that
kinds of mental event correspond to kinds of brain events. Thus, functional
characterization of mental states, whether in terms of causal role, or in terms
of carrying information, or both, requires that the mind–brain identity theory
be amended to read as follows: each mental event (token) is realized by (and
in this sense only ‘is identical with’) some (token) brain event.2

It should be emphasized that the proposed solution to the problem of men-
tal causation in terms of ‘encoding’ makes no commitment to causation by
meaningful states in addition to causation by neural states. The first kind of
causal explanation essentially makes use of intentional concepts (it runs in
terms of information-processing). But causal explanation of action that
invokes neural states and processing also uses intentional concepts, is run in
these same terms. In other words, the distinction between causation by inten-
tional states and causation by non-intentional states does not signify a distinc-
tion between causation by non-material states (whatever that might be) and
causation by material states. Rather, there are two forms of causal explanation,
one of which does and one of which does not invoke intentional states, but
both invoke material as opposed to immaterial states (whatever they might
be). Hence this proposal undermines the Cartesian mind/matter distinction
rather than endorsing one side of it (matter) at the expense of the other
(mind). Both kinds of causal explanation invoke material states, but in one of
them material states are credited with properties of the Cartesian mind,
namely, representation (‘thought’). The proposal is in effect that the irre-
ducibility of meaning does not signify a dichotomy between mind and matter,
but rather a distinction between meaningful (intentional) descriptions and
non-meaningful (non-intentional) descriptions. Material processes in the
brain can be described in either way, and are described in both ways at the
interface between cognitive psychology and neuroscience. In particular, when
the purpose is to explain interactions between the organism and the environ-
ment, neural processes are described as being concerned precisely with the
pick-up, processing, and utilization of information (or meaning). Thus the
solution proposed here to the problem of having mental, meaningful causa-
tion as well as material causation adopts what Kim (1991) has called the ‘dual
explanandum strategy’: we can have two explanans, provided there are two
explananda.3

The problem for mental causation that it would seem to imply, given the
operation of physical causation, a redundant causal over-determination, has
received increasing attention (see e.g. Kim 1998; Noordhof 1999; Witmer 2000; Robinson 2001; Shoemaker 2001). Among the issues raised in this literature is whether higher-order properties of physical states may have distinctive causal roles, compatible with physical causation at the level of the first-order physical properties. The encoding thesis as proposed here in effect also follows this line of thought, construing ‘encodes information’ as a higher-order property of physical states that has a causal role in the regulation of behaviour, which in turn is understood as a higher-order invariant (across non-intentionally defined motor movements). Details of these points are pursued through the book and particularly in this chapter and Chapters 4 and 5.

The idea that neural states encode meaning (or information) and that this is crucial to their (causal) role in the regulation of behaviour is very familiar in the contemporary behavioural and brain sciences, but it runs up against at least five powerful and influential theoretical objections, to be considered in the rest of the chapter. They are variously based: on computer models of mental function, on an axiom of philosophical logic, on plausible assumptions about causality having to be local, on the materialist definition of content, and the fifth objection has strong Wittgensteinian credentials. In any circumstances all these would make a curious alliance of disparate arguments, and it is remarkable that in the present context they converge in objecting in one way or another to the proposal that meaning is encoded in the brain and thereby has a causal role. The proposal, on the other hand, has much to be said for it, and is in any case as remarked above fundamental to contemporary behavioural and brain science. The situation is therefore somewhat problematic and needs thinking through.

2.2 Objections to the encoding thesis (1): ‘Are there ‘sentences in the head’?’

It is an axiom of folk psychology, and arguably of cognitive psychology, that behaviour is caused by (regulated by) meaningful states, which are typically identified by propositional clauses of natural languages. Take this as a first (composite) premise. Take as second premise: behaviour is caused by neural states. Plausible conclusion: brain states are (encode) meaningful states, with the implication that brain states must be something like propositional clauses of natural languages. In brief: there must be ‘sentences in the head’. Following this line of thought we come to the area of Fodor’s so-called Language of Thought (LOT) hypothesis. For example, Fodor 1987, p.135:

LOT wants to construe propositional-attitude tokens as relations to symbol tokens. According to standard formulations, to believe that P is to bear a certain relation to a
token of a symbol which means that \( P \). (It is generally assumed that tokens of the symbol in question are neural objects, \( \ldots \)). Now, symbols have intentional contents and their tokens are physical in all the known cases. And—qua physical—symbol tokens are the right sort of things to exhibit causal roles.

The Language of Thought hypothesis (in its full form not recorded here\(^4\)) is the most rigorous working out of the view that mental, meaningful causality is equivalent to, or reducible to, the material causality of the brain, and is much admired for this reason. The hypothesis can also be understood as giving a particularly literal interpretation to the claim, endorsed in general terms in this chapter, that meaningful mental states are encoded in brain states. The implied interpretation is that if a person, for example believes that \( p \), then this meaningful mental state is encoded in the person’s brain in the sense that there is in the brain a neural state, with a syntactic structure, which has the same meaning as the sentence ‘\( p \)’. There are, literally, meaningful sentence-like structures in the brain.

In making the claim that the neural states that realize cognitive functions have the syntactic structure of sentences of natural language, the Language of Thought hypothesis apparently interacts with the theory of Artificial Intelligence (AI). AI theory constructs models of how intelligent performance can be achieved, and hence perhaps of how it is in fact achieved by the brain. So what do these models have to say about the claim that there are sentence-like structures in the head? In brief, although the position becomes much more complicated, the claim is endorsed by ‘good old fashioned’, symbolic, AI models, but is apparently incompatible with the later connectionist models of neural structure and function. The Language of Thought hypothesis is closely connected, via the so-called Computational Theory of Mind (on which more is discussed in Section 2.3) to the classical (von Neumann–Turing) theory of computation. In this classical theory, computation is performed on symbol systems, symbols and strings of symbols, and these, and the rules that govern their manipulation, are defined in terms of syntactic form only. Syntactic form is taken to be some physical characteristic of a symbol, such as the shape. In the case of computation in the brain, syntax would be a matter of some physical property of the brain, such as electromagnetic characteristics of neuronal activity. When applied in AI models of cognition, the classical theory of computation gives rise to two sorts of issues. Firstly, there is the problem (to be discussed in Section 2.2) whether and how syntactically defined states and operations have anything to do with meaning, and secondly, it may be that the brain is not a classically defined computer, and this is the point of the connectionist alternatives.

Connectionist models of ‘computation’ (now in scare quotes) typically do not involve operations on discrete structures that can be identified as symbols.
The representational or symbolic features of connectionist systems are embodied as parallel patterns of activity among sub-symbolic units, distributed over the system as a whole. There is no physical (hardware) counterpart to a symbol, or sentence. There is thus apparent conflict between traditional, symbolic AI models and connectionist models, and hence also conflict between theories of cognitive function that appeal to the one or to the other. Assuming this incompatibility, it is possible to construct the following argument: if connectionist models of neural structure and function are correct, then there are no sentence-like structures in the brain of the sort presupposed by folk psychology, and explicitly posited by the Language of Thought hypothesis, and the brain does not encode the meaningful states envisaged in folk psychology. Whence (1) folk psychology and the Language of Thought hypothesis can be eliminated, (2) neural causation has nothing to do with ‘meaningful causation’, which notion goes the same way as its folk psychological origin.

However, the incompatibility between connectionist and traditional AI models is probably less sharp than the argument supposes. Further, there is in any case nothing in connectionist models incompatible with the general idea, endorsed and defended in this chapter, that information (meaning) is encoded in the brain; on the contrary, the models aim to show how this could be achieved. Connectionist models can be (and are) implemented by traditional computers using symbol-based programmes. This fact, however, is of doubtful relevance to understanding the implementation of cognitive function in the brain, since it is likely that if the brain is a computing system at all, it is a massive parallel distributed, connectionist system, not a digital, serial computer. Connectionist theories have explicitly aimed at compatibility with what is known of the micro-structure and -function of the brain. Of more relevance to cognitive psychology and neuroscience is the possibility that symbolic programmes could be implemented in connectionist hardware. If this were possible, the conflict between symbolic AI models of cognitive function and connectionist models of brain function would be lessened. The position would be that while the latter are valid models of implementation in the brain, the former are valid models of ‘emergent’ properties of the system, namely, of manipulation of (meaningful) symbols according to rules. This idea receives support from the fact that there are statistical cluster analyses of connectionist networks the results of which do admit of semantic labelling. On the other hand, certain cognitive tasks, particularly those involving reasoning and inference with symbols, are most readily modelled in the traditional symbolic programmes, while others, including sensori- and motor-functions, are most readily modelled in connectionist programmes. This fact points to a different
way of reconciling the two kinds of model. It may be that the brain is engaged in both types of processing, serial-symbolic, and parallel-connectionist, with interactions between them.\textsuperscript{6}

Be that (the relation between traditional and connectionist AI models), as it may, the claim that meaning (information) is encoded in the brain is unaffected. This, to recall, is the main idea endorsed and defended in the present chapter, proposed as a solution to the problem of reconciling meaningful/mental causation with the causation of behaviour by the brain. But of course connectionism has no objections to the idea, fundamental to the cognitive neuroscience enterprise, that the brain processes, and hence has to encode, information about the environment. There is no question about whether the brain encodes and processes information, but only about how it does so. In connectionist systems information is stored as parallel patterns of activity among sub-symbolic units, not in symbols. The issue between connectionist and traditional AI models of brain function is not whether the brain encodes information (meaning), but how. It is usual and valid to say that the traditional models invoke symbols, while the connectionist models do not. The notion of symbol at work here is basically a syntactic one, to be understood superficially by way of examples such as letters and numerals, and defined formally within the so-called classical theory of computation, (referred to briefly above and in some more detail below in Section 2.3). An equally valid conception of symbolism, however, is the semantic one. According to this, a symbol may be defined as whatever carries meaning (information). In this sense, which to repeat is valid though distinct from that in classical computation theory, connectionist models do indeed envisage ‘symbols’, namely, as patterns of activity within the system. It can be seen that this conception of neural symbolism is broadly consistent with there being a fundamental link between the meaning of a sign and its use in activity, an idea adopted in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2) and applied throughout the essay.

Issues in the definition of symbolism and syntax, and their relation to semantics are of course critical to the concept of ‘encoded meaning’ and will be addressed further in subsequent sections. For now the main point to emphasize is that the concept of encoding meaning does not necessarily imply that there are in-the-head items similar to sentences of natural languages. This interpretation of encoding is probably over-strong, and may well fall foul of connectionist models of brain function. What is required is rather that the explanations in terms of encoded meaning correspond to at least emergent characteristics of neural processing. We have indicated above two ways in which this requirement is met. Firstly, to the extent that connectionist systems admit of higher-level descriptions in terms of symbolic processing.
Secondly, that statistical analysis of micro-function in connectionist systems reveals clusters that admit of semantic labelling. A third point is the one emphasized in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2), that attributions of mental states with content whether in folk or cognitive psychology are based in and predict behavioural interactions with the environment, and in this sense they correspond to emergent characteristics of the agent, to characteristics that appear in the course of action. The first two senses in which psychological propositions are valid concern particularly AI modelling of neural function. But the third runs free of a scientific discovery concerning the way in which behaviour is generated by the brain. It locates the subject-matter of psychological propositions in action (in interaction), not inside the brain. While psychological descriptions are not committed to the existence of corresponding in-the-head items, it would be fair to say that they presuppose at least that there is some ‘mechanism’ or other in the person which can produce intelligent, intentional behaviour. On the basis of the above understanding of psychological descriptions, it remains possible to say that they provide causal explanations, and possible to say also that the states they invoke are encoded in the brain.

2.3 Objections to the proposed solution (2): ‘(Neural) syntax isn’t enough for semantics’

As noted in the previous section Fodor’s Language of Thought hypothesis is closely connected to the so-called Computational Theory of Mind, which in turn is based in the classical (von Neumann–Turing) theory of computation. According to the classical theory, computation is performed on symbol systems, physical tokens (of some kind) and strings of tokens; the rules that govern their manipulation are defined in terms of shape, in terms of syntactic form only. In particular, computation is defined without reference to meaning; symbols may be ‘interpreted’ as having meaning, as representing objects and states of affairs, but this is not essential to the definition or to the practice of computation. If this classical, ‘symbolic’ theory of computation is applied to cognitive psychology, the result is the so-called Computational Theory of Mind, according to which, in brief, cognitive states and processes are defined in terms of syntax, not (essentially) in terms of meaning (Fodor 1975; Newell 1980; Pylyshyn 1980, 1984).

The claim that cognition can be adequately characterized as computational in the sense of classical theory, which seemed to be the assumption behind AI, and which was spelt out in the Computational Theory of Mind, has been the subject of much debate in the cognitive science literature. The debate was sparked by Searle in the early 1980s by his ‘Chinese Room Argument’ in
support of the conclusion that symbol manipulation cannot be sufficient for understanding (or meaning, or intentionality). The argument is well-known and for our purposes a very brief formulation will suffice.

Imagine you are handed Chinese symbols and asked to manipulate (transform) them according to a rule book, then no matter how efficiently you receive symbols at inputs, follow the rules, and dispose of the symbols produced as outputs, still this process of symbol-manipulation in compatible with you having no understanding whatsoever of the meaning of the symbols. Human beings with brains, however, do understand the meaning of symbols. So if AI theory says that cognitive activity of the brain is symbol-manipulation only, then it’s wrong.

In a restatement of the argument, Searle drew out his main point about the Chinese room as follows (1987, p. 214):

The point of the story is to remind us of a conceptual truth that we knew all along; namely, that there is a distinction between manipulating the syntactical elements of languages and actually understanding the language at a semantic level. What is lost in the AI simulation of cognitive behaviour is the distinction between syntax and semantics.

… In the case of actually understanding a language, we have something more than a formal or syntactical level. We have a semantics. We do not just shuffle uninterpreted formal symbols, we actually know what they mean.

Searle’s Chinese room argument, together with its strengths and weaknesses, and proposed solutions to the problems it raises, have been much discussed in the literature (Searle 1980, 1982, 1984, 1987; and among others Russow 1984; Rey 1986; Gray 1987; Newton 1988; and Harnad 1989, 1990). In what follows we draw out some points directly related to biology and psychology. A recurring theme in criticisms of the attempt to analyse cognitive processes in terms of syntax alone, and of the Computational Theory of Mind in particular, is that it is insufficiently biological. In his discussions of the Chinese room argument Searle (1987) makes such a point by saying that emphasis on computation alone without regard to its implementation, neglects the special properties of the brain as biological material, which in some way uniquely could achieve intentionality. The problem can be formulated in this way: what do you have to add to, or have instead of, symbol manipulation in order to achieve intentionality? The answer probably has something to do with biology. But to respond: ‘the brain (as opposed to an inanimate system)’, is to give a disappointingly empirical answer, even if true, to what seems more like a conceptual question.

To bring out the inadequacy of the Computational Theory of Mind from the point of view of biology or psychology we have to consider what is fundamental to those sciences, specifically in what they have to say about intentionality.
There are reasons to expect a deep and large-scale paradigm clash between the Computational Theory of Mind and the bio-psychological sciences, one that we should hardly expect to be resolved just by appeal to the special material composition of the brain. The concept and theory of computation on which the Computational Theory of Mind was based was developed in formal logic, a context quite distinct from the concerns of biology and (most) psychology. Specifically, biology is concerned with animal functions necessary for successful action (survival) and the structures which realize them, including sensory, mediating and motor systems, systems for digestion, energy production, internal temperature regulation, etc., all these being designed to work in (being selected in) particular environmental conditions. All this, with the implications concerning functions, designs and implementation of biological information-processing has nothing to do with formal logic. Or put the other way round, formal logic, the classical theory of computation, and the Computational Theory of Mind, have nothing to say about the functions of and design constraints on information-processing in biological systems (Clark 1989).

The very general feature of information-processing (intentionality) as conceived in biology and psychology is that it essentially serves action. If we bring this conception of intentionality to bear on the problem identified by Searle, we arrive at something like the following: what you have add to, or have instead of, symbol manipulation, in order to achieve intentionality is the regulation of action, that is, meaningful (goal-directed, plastic) interactions with the environment. In his discussions of the Chinese room Searle (1987) rejects this frequently made response, on the grounds, roughly, that robots don’t understand anything either. Probably not, but still there are abundant reasons for keeping in mind the connection, fundamental to biology and psychology, between meaning and action. Explanation in terms of intentional states gets a grip on artificial systems insofar as they ‘behave intelligently’ (e.g. solve problems), even though for many reasons we would not be inclined to say that they ‘really’ understand or mean anything. These many reasons mostly or perhaps all have to do with the fact that we human beings are paradigms of intentionality, and AI systems are not like us: they are simpler, more circumscribed, they are inanimate (they do not show the behavioural signs of being alive), including that they don’t mind what happens to them, that they are not made of biological material, that they don’t look like us; and so on. All these sorts of background considerations support the intuition that AI systems do not have ‘real’ intentionality as we do, but they concern what is open to view, including appearance and particularly behaviour, and they are therefore consistent with the main idea that attributions of meaning are based in behavioural considerations. No other criterion of meaning is involved here. It is in
particular misleading to suppose that the critical question is whether machines do or can have the ‘subjective feeling of understanding (or meaning)’, insofar as this is an updated AI version of the outdated problem of other minds. As already discussed in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2) this problem turns on the remnants of Cartesian dualism, and has no proper place in the cognitive-behavioural paradigm, which posits intentional states essentially as regulators of activity, not as subjective experiences.

In biology and cognitive-behavioural science, cognition (or information-processing) is regarded as being primarily in the service of action, and hence also the content of cognitive states (the information picked up, processed and utilized) is likewise to be understood in terms relevant to action. This assumption is found in one form or another in the various domains of psychology. Cognitive learning theory defines cognitive states as mediating between stimulus and response. Developmental psychology has long taken cognition to be grounded in sensori-motor capacities (e.g. Piaget 1950). This same connection is apparently supported by general considerations about neural structure. Sensory and motor pathways permeate into and pervade the cortex (e.g. Brodal 1991), and were these to be stripped away, there would be practically no cognitive processing system left which could be engaged in the manipulation of uninterpreted symbols. Within the framework of cognitive-behavioural science, with its primary aim of explaining sensori-motor capacities such as discrimination, recognition, manipulation, and categorization, cognitive states and processes will be in general defined as precisely serving such capacities, and hence cannot be adequately characterized as manipulation of meaning-less symbols. At the very least, the symbols must have (for the agent) semantic interpretation, namely, as being about action. But the point is better made in this way: the ‘symbols’ already have meaning, because they are intrinsically linked to sensori-cognitive-motor capacities. A detailed response to Searle’s problem along these lines, using traditional symbolic and connectionist modelling, has been made out by Harnad (1989, 1990).

It should be emphasized that the point here is not that connectionist models of mental function automatically avoid or solve the general problem identified by Searle, the problem of how to model intentionality and not just syntax (symbolism). According to connectionist models of neural function, the brain encodes information, though not in symbolic form, but as patterns of activity. However as noted above (Section 2.1), these patterns are indeed ‘symbols’, precisely insofar as they encode information. But the point is that we can ask of any proposed model of encoding information: in what sense is there anything semantic here? It is always possible to raise the question identified by Searle: why is there intentionality here, over and above ‘symbol manipulation’ (in a
broad sense)? The point is then, as Harnad argues (1989, 1990), that connectionist modelling can provide an answer to this question insofar as the ‘symbols’ (the patterns of activity within the system) already have meaning. The ‘symbols’ are essentially involved in the regulation of intentional (rule-guided) system–environment interaction, intrinsically linked to sensori-cognitive-motor capacities.

It is significant that the AI models of sensori-cognitive-motor capacities are typically connectionist, not those of symbolic AI, of the kind presupposed by the computational theory of mind. On the other hand, just as connectionists models do not automatically solve Searle’s problem, but only when they accommodate a theory of meaning, so too symbolic AI models do not necessarily fail to solve the problem. However, they do indeed get off to a poor start, particularly in their usual context of the Computational Theory of Mind. For this theory fails to make axiomatic the link between symbolism and meaning, particularly meaning as grounded in (rule-guided) system/environment interactions. It defines mental states in terms of syntactic properties, not semantic ones. It can add (on) semantics, but typically this involves no essential link between the semantics of mental states and action. The Computational Theory of Mind can approach the idea of mental states having semantic properties in two main ways. Firstly, following the classical theory of computation, it can construe semantic properties as dependent on (mirrored in) syntactic properties, and secondly, it defines the semantic properties in terms of the causal role of mental states. Both approaches, in the context of mind–brain identity theory, help to make up Fodor’s Language of Thought hypothesis as already discussed (Section 2.2). However, and as Fodor is well aware, this otherwise ingenious combination of several plausible doctrines leaves open the possibility that so far as concerns the causal explanation of behaviour, semantic properties of mental/neural states are irrelevant, that what does the explanatory work are their syntactic properties. We turn now to consider this problem.

2.4 Objections to the proposed solution (3): ‘neural syntax is enough for causality’

There is a plausible line of thought in this area to the effect that semantic properties cannot play a causal role, not unless they correspond to syntactic ones, or indeed at all. It has several steps, in brief as follows: (1) states can have causal power in the explanation of behaviour only if they are local to the behaviour caused, (2) semantic states however are non-locally defined, with reference to the environment, so (3) they cannot be causal of behaviour, except insofar as its semantic properties are mirrored in the syntactic properties of
the state that are local to it (‘mirrored’ as most clearly in Fodor’s Language of Thought hypothesis considered in Section 2.2), but (4) even then it is the neural syntax that is causing behaviour and semantic features, including encoded meaning, drop out as irrelevant.8

We have already in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2) considered reasons for rejecting the hypothetical conclusion of the above argument, that explanation of action can be run in terms of non-semantic concepts. The point is in brief that if the goal is explanation and prediction of intentional behaviour (complex organism–environment interactions), then the methodological assumption has to be that the agent is regulated by information about the environment, that is, by intentional states. It is on the other hand perfectly possible to do away with intentional concepts, but what can then be predicted is only non-intentional behaviour, e.g. physical movements of the body, not intentional interactions with the environment. This main point holds regardless of the interpretations given to the idea that semantic properties are encoded in the brain, whether strong or weak, regardless whether semantic properties are or are not mirrored in the syntactic structure of symbols.

But still, the argument would be pressed, whatever the precise characterization of the behaviour that semantic states are supposed to be causes of, the point remains that it is the syntactic properties of the states that are local to the behaviour, and therefore they alone can be the real causes, and then the semantic properties still drop out as irrelevant. To answer fully this kind of objection we have to take a closer look at the notions of syntax and semantics, and in particular at the underlying assumption that syntax can be defined independently of semantics, in terms of non-semantic, physical properties.

Syntax may be defined as being a physical property of a symbol, such as the shape of a letter or numeral. In the context of mind–brain identity theory, the physical property would be such as the electromagnetic characteristics of neuronal networks. But this kind of definition alone, though suited to formal logic (particularly of course with the usual example of shape), does little work in ‘philosophical logic’ understood as the a priori theory of representation. For logic in this broader sense, the notion of syntax is generally invoked in the service of semantics, of the theory of meaning. The problem of meaning can be put simply like this: how can one thing—a sign—signify another, its object? And the notion of syntax can play a role in answering this question. One kind of solution to the problem of meaning, discussed already in the first chapter (Section 1.2.1) appeals to something like resemblance between sign and signified. In some applications of this very general theory, particularly in the philosophy of language, the notion of the syntax of a sign readily plays a crucial role. The syntax of a sign, its intrinsic structure or shape, represents possible structures
in reality. This kind of theory, of which Wittgenstein’s *Tractatus* (1921) is probably the best worked out example, illustrates the general point that what matters about the sign is fundamentally that and only that which contributes to its having meaning (i.e. is only what makes it a *sign*). In this sense syntactic definitions of signs presuppose or imply a semantic theory. In particular, then, if we define syntax in terms of shape, we are presupposing that what matters to meaning (what achieves meaning) is shape, and this is a *massive* assumption in the theory of meaning, linked indeed to the resemblance theory just mentioned. But, important for our purposes, the assumption stands opposed to the definition of representation endorsed here, in terms of the regulation of action (Section 1.2.2).

Insofar as semantic properties are seen as arising from activity within the environment, we do not *also* have to assume that there has to be some structured sign (sign with a shape) that achieves the representation of reality. The essential feature of a sign is now its use in rule-following activity, not its shape. If the notion of syntax were to be retained in this context, it would refer primarily to the *order in intentional activity*, not to the physically defined order in a sign, such as a sentence, on paper, or in the brain. Indeed, and this is the main point, sentences (on paper or in a neural code) are not yet, according to this theory, *signs* at all. They become signs only when, and only insofar as they are, involved in rule-guided activity.

The syntax of a sign may be defined as that by virtue of which it has meaning (and the particular meaning it has). The resemblance theory in its various forms, consistent with classical computation theory, implies that the syntax of a sign is a matter of physically defined properties, specifically shape. This is obviously compatible with physicalism, insofar as it envisages only such properties as being fundamental. In the case of encoding of information in the brain, it is obviously necessary to extend the range of physical properties constituting syntax to neural properties. This line of thought can be made to mesh with the idea that information-carrying neural states cause behaviour, and with the assumption that all causation is a matter of physical events following physical laws. In brief, information-carrying neural states will have causal power by virtue of their physically defined syntactic properties of neural states. Thus, Fodor 1987, p. 5, including an Endnote:

Here … is how the new story is supposed to go: You connect the causal properties of a symbol with its semantic properties *via its syntax*. The syntax of a symbol is one of its higher-order physical properties. To a metaphorical first approximation, we can think of the syntactic structure of a symbol as an abstract feature of its shape.

*Endnote: Any* nomic property of symbol tokens, however—any property in virtue of the possession of which they satisfy causal laws—*would*, in principle, do just as well.
(So, for example, syntactic structure could be realized by relations among electromagnetic states rather than relations among shapes; as, indeed, it is in real computers.) …

Because, to all intents and purposes, syntax reduces to shape and because the shape of a symbol is a potential determinant of its causal role, it is fairly easy to see how there could be environments in which the causal role of a symbol correlates with its syntax. It’s easy, that is to say, to imagine symbol tokens interacting causally in virtue of their syntactic structures. The syntax of a symbol might determine the causes and effects of its tokenings in much the way that the geometry of a key determines which locks it will open.

This story backs up Fodor’s position as outlined in Section 2.2, but the powerful assumptions it makes about semantics, syntax, and causality are questionable.

It is possible to tell a different story. It begins with the kind of semantic theory being endorsed here, to the effect that neurally encoded semantic states essentially regulate intentional action, and we then have to construct a syntactic theory compatible with this. As already noted, ‘syntax’ always, in any theory, has to be defined in a way which makes sense of semantics. Definition in terms of shape will do if representation is essentially a matter of spatial resemblance. Definition in terms of relations between electromagnetic states will do if semantics can be defined in terms of such relations. But according to the story we are now running, semantic properties cannot be defined in those or any other physical terms. Semantic properties and therefore also syntactic properties have to be understood in terms of the regulation of intentional action. Hence the view of neural syntax arrived at in Section 2.3: neural ‘symbols’ are essentially involved in the regulation of intentional system–environment interaction, and are intrinsically linked to sensori-cognitive-motor capacities. In this case the argument against the encoding thesis being considered in this section fails to go through, because it presupposes an illegitimate distinction between syntax and semantics, and one which, particularly, supposes that syntax is physically definable. To put the point another way: the claim that causal explanation of intentional as opposed to non-intentional behaviour has to posit semantic states in the acting system belongs with the proposal that syntactic properties are not physically definable.

The implication of diverging in this way from Fodor’s account of semantic causation is that we have to envisage causal laws that are not couched in terms of physical properties, but rather in terms of semantic ones. This idea is worked out in Chapters 4 and 5. Another aspect of this implication is that information-carrying neural states have causal generating power by virtue of being semantic states, or again, that there is something like ‘semantically defined energy’. This sort of conclusion was anticipated in earlier discussion of the intimate link between cognition and affect (Section 1.2.2). The connection between information and the generation of order in functional, intentional
systems appears also as a consequence of the shift from causal to functional semantics considered in Chapter 4.

2.5 Objections to the proposed solution (4): ‘meanings ain’t in the head’

In this section we discuss Putnam’s highly influential claim that ‘meanings ain’t in the head’ (Putnam 1975). Putnam’s proposal, based on so-called ‘twin-earth’ thought-experiments, along with variations, interpretations, and elaborations of its implications, are the subjects of a very large literature in philosophy and some theoretical cognitive science. Our interest here is partial and selective, concerning specifically implications for meaningful, mental causation. Putnam’s proposal can be used to construct an argument against the idea that meaningful, mental states are causal, and so we need to consider it here.9

Among the various ways of approaching Putnam’s claim and its implications, let us start with the issues discussed in the preceding section, to do with whether semantic characteristics can be causal. In Section 2.4 we considered a line of thought that may be briefly summarized as follows:

The meaning of any ‘sign’ in the brain (of any information-carrying neural state) must involve a relation between the brain and something external, the reality represented. But causality has to be local. Therefore meaning can’t be causal.

To which the reply was, in brief:

If you want to explain non-local behaviour, i.e. behaviour which is environment directed, then you need to cite non-locally defined causes, which can be done while preserving local causation by positing that brain states encode meaning.

This solution was meant to follow the lead of the information-processing paradigm within the behavioural sciences. The aim is to explain action in terms of information-carrying (cognitive) states, and these are regarded as encoded in the brain. Essential to this explanatory paradigm, however, is a particular way of defining the informational content of cognitive states, namely, in terms of the interactivity between agent and the environment. The conceptual linkage between meaning and action is already implied by the fact that cognitive states are posited for the purpose of explaining action. This has been implicit or explicit through the first chapter and the present one.

However, quite different assumptions about meaning can be made, so that there is in particular no conceptual linkage between meaning and action, in which case the proposal that meaning is encoded in the brain is lost, and with it the compatibility between material (neural) causation, and mental, meaningful causation, the latter of which then has to be jettisoned. This move
belongs with the idea that meaningful characterizations of behaviour are in some business other than causal explanation, and runs counter to what is being argued for throughout this essay. In brief, what we will be considering in this section is the way that a definition of meaning that precludes interaction between the agent and what is represented undermines the idea that meaning is encoded in the brain and thereby has a causal role. We will in effect be arguing that in the context of cognitive explanation of behaviour such a definition of meaning, omitting agent–environment interactions, is a mischief-maker.

The position is, however, somewhat complicated by the fact that the view of meaning that will be argued against is frequently combined with a plausible proposal that we endorse, namely, that meaningful mental states are ‘broad’ or ‘world-involving’. This is to say that their definition makes reference to the world other than the subject. This proposal is correct, and adopted and indeed emphasized here, but the ‘world-involving’ nature of meaningful states is compatible with the causal role of meaning, assuming these states are encoded in the brain. But, to repeat, this reconciliation only works if meaningful content is defined in terms of agent–environment interactions. Without this definition, the world-involving nature of meaningful states precludes their being encoded in the brain, and precludes their having any causal role.

One more issue, a matter of terminology prominent in the literature, should be mentioned. The dictum ‘meanings ain’t in the head’ may be taken to sum up the claim that the meaningful content of mental states is not dependent solely on the state of the brain. The notion of dependence at work here is defined using the technical term supervenience. The claim is that the meaningful content of mental states does not supervene on states of the brain. The notion of supervenience may be defined, roughly, as follows: states of type X supervene on states of type Y if and only if there is no difference among X states without a corresponding difference among Y states. In what follows it may be assumed that there is a link between the technical notion of supervenience and the notion of encoding familiar in cognitive science at least in the sense that supervenience of states of type X on states of type Y is a necessary condition states of type Y encoding states of type X. While nothing in the arguments to follow depends on this linkage between supervenience and encoding, it helps to make explicit connections between Putnam’s thesis and the philosophical literature to which it has given rise, and the cognitive science paradigm that is our main concern here. The claim to be considered is that meaningful states do not supervene on brain states, with its implication that they cannot be causes of behaviour. In terms of encoding, the claim would be that such states are not encoded in brain states: meanings are not ‘(encoded) in the head’. The implication, again, being that meaningful states cannot be
causes of behaviour. This in effect is the contraposition of the argument being proposed here, namely: since meaningful mental states are causes of behaviour they are encoded in brain states.

We have to consider, then, the basis of the claim that meaningful states do not supervene on brain states. Putnam came to this conclusion by means of what has come to be called his twin-Earth thought-experiment (Putnam 1975). We are to imagine there to be in another world a person P* who is an exact replica of person P on Earth; in particular their brain states are identical. Further, the world P* inhabits is exactly similar to Earth in all respects except one: it has a substance with physico-chemical composition XYZ where we have the substance with composition H2O. XYZ is the same as H2O according to any casual test, though they can be distinguished in a chemical laboratory. Given this imaginary situation, we are invited to share the intuition that P and P* differ in semantic characteristics, that the meaning of their words differ, and the meaningful contents of their thoughts. Specifically, the suggestion is that the words ‘water is wet’ means something different when uttered by P than when uttered by P*, and that the content of P’s thought that water is wet is different from the corresponding thought entertained by P*. Indeed the intuition is meant to be that P* can neither say nor think that water is wet. The source of the alleged difference in meaningful content is due to the difference in the environments, defined in physico-chemical terms. Since the meaningful content of the doppelgangers’ thoughts differs even though their brain states are identical, the conclusion is that meaningful content does not supervene on the brain. In brief, meaning ain’t in the head.11

We shall argue that the standard interpretation of this kind of thought-experiment, that meaningful content can differ notwithstanding identity of brain states, is mistaken; or, to put the point more cautiously, that it is incompatible with the criterion of mental content required for a cognitive-behavioural science. First however let us consider the drastic consequences of accepting the standard reading of the doppelganger thought-experiments, and proposals that have been made for handling them. These consequences, as anticipated at the beginning of the section, concern primarily meaning and causality. According to the standard interpretation of the twin-Earth thought-experiments, mental states identified in terms of meaningful content do not supervene on states of the brain. Now we introduce a premise to the effect that all causes of behaviour supervene on local material events, namely, in the brain. This plausible premise serves only to exclude both non-material causation (whatever that might be), and distal causation (unmediated by local). Thus from a combination of the standard interpretation of the thought-experiment plus a plausible premise about causality, it follows that mental states identified
in terms of meaningful content are not causes of behaviour. The meaningful content at issue is that as specified in folk psychological ordinary language. The problem with meaningful content as envisaged by folk psychology and ordinary language is that it is ‘broad’, or ‘world-involving’: it supervenes on (varies with) the states of the world, not only on states of the brain (see e.g. Stich 1983; McGinn 1982, 1989). The argument is, then, that the broad, world-involving mental states posited by folk psychology cannot play a role in the causal explanation of behaviour, and therefore in particular have no role to play in the causal explanations of cognitive-behavioural science.

The conclusion that broad content does not supervene on brain states and therefore cannot be causal threatens the cognitive-behavioural explanatory paradigm. If the paradigm is to be preserved, desperate remedies are required and have been proposed. Roughly, the saving principle has to be that cognitive states can have a causal role, but broad content has to be irrelevant to it. In which case, either cognitive states have a causal role but content drops out altogether, or, some notion of content is retained as relevant to causal role, namely ‘narrow’ content as opposed to ‘broad’. Narrow content is not world-involving, does supervene on the brain, and therefore can be causal. Hence we find proposed both theories of content-less (meaning-less) cognitive causation (Stich 1983), and narrow content theories (e.g. Fodor 1980; McGinn 1982). The problem with the second proposal, which would distinguish ‘narrow’ from ‘broad’ content, is that content, one supposes by definition, has intentionality, aboutness, and hence is world-involving, and so apparently broad. The idea of narrow content seems at best extraordinary and at worst self-contradictory. On the other hand, narrow content can be defined in terms of causal role, without reference to semantics, in which case narrow content theories become similar to the first option, which would ascribe cognitive states a causal role but no content. This shifts the problem, however, rather than solving it. The cognitive-behavioural explanatory paradigm, like the folk psychological, describes not only the content of mental states in broad, world-involving terms, but also in those terms of the behaviour which such states cause. We say, for example ‘having learnt that the goal box contained food, and being hungry, the rat ran towards it’. The causal role of cognitive states is to be defined in terms of interactions among them and the behaviour they generate, but in the kind of explanation in question, the behaviours generated are typically world-involving, or broad. Hence the causal roles of the cognitive states are defined in broad terms, so also then is any notion of content tied to causal role. According to this line of thought there seems to be no way of managing without our familiar broad, world-involving characterizations of intentional activity and the cognitive states that regulate it.
We have to re-assess the argument that leads to the difficulties associated with the distinction between ‘broad’ and ‘narrow’ content. The distinction arises as a (failed) solution to resist the conclusion that mental states identified in terms of meaningful content are not causes of behaviour. This conclusion, we noted, follows from two premises. First, the standard interpretation of the twin-Earth thought-experiments, according to which mental states identified in terms of meaningful content do not supervene on (depend on) states of the brain. Secondly, that all causes of behaviour supervene on local material events, namely, in the brain. Since we are rejecting the conclusion, we have to reject one of the premises. While attempts have been made to manage without the second premise, our suggestion is to retain it. The principle that causes of behaviour supervene on local material events in the brain is plausible and, particularly relevant here, is compatible with the idea that semantic characteristics are encoded in brain states, central to the information-processing based behavioural sciences. This means that what has to be rejected is the standard interpretation of the twin-Earth thought-experiments, according to which mental states identified in terms of meaningful content do not supervene on (depend on) states of the brain. From the point of view of the general account being proposed here the real culprit is the view that meaningful content does not supervene on the brain. The encoding thesis in effect implies the opposite, that meaningful content (insofar as it regulates behaviour) satisfies the supervenience condition, and makes it possible to hold both that meaningful states are world-involving and that they act as local causes. The implication is also that content is involved in the interaction between the subject of the mental states and what is represented. Such a definition of meaning is suited to the cognitive-behavioural sciences, but it is not captured by the standard interpretation of the twin-Earth experiments. Let us consider these issues in more detail.

The standard interpretation of the thought-experiments is that doppelgangers, while identical in brain states, nevertheless have mental states with different meaningful content. As against this we can say that in the circumstances envisaged, mental contents are indeed identical, at least according to behavioural criteria of content, since the behaviours of the doppelgangers are the same. Use of behavioural criteria is appropriate to cognitive-behavioural science, which posits mental states with semantic contents in order to explain behaviour.

The obvious reply to this suggestion, on the other hand, is that doppelgangers do indeed differ in behaviour: one drinks, tries to find, etc. H₂O, while the other drinks, tries to find, etc. XYZ. Just as mental content varies with the environment, so does the appropriate description of behaviour. This reply serves as a quick defence of the standard reading of the thought-experiments, but it fails to recognize the point behind the suggestion that we have in these
cases identity of behaviour. The suggestion is not simply the superficial one that the relevant behaviours can be described in the same way; this can indeed be met with a flat denial, consistent with the standard reading of the thought-experiment. The important point is rather that there is identity of behaviour because a critical behavioural difference is missing, namely, behaviour that discriminates between H2O and XYZ.

Fundamental to the standard interpretation of the thought-experiments is that it discriminates between mental contents in the absence of corresponding discriminative behaviour. Since doppelgangers _ex hypothesi_ do not (and could not) discriminate between H2O and XYZ in their behaviour, there is no justification for ascribing to them mental states with content H2O as opposed to XYZ, or vice versa. At least, there is no justification from the point of view of a cognitive science of behaviour, which on the grounds of parsimony posits only those mental states and contents required for an adequate explanation of behaviour, including of discriminative behaviour. In this sense, the standard reading of the thought-experiments invokes a criterion of mental content different from and incompatible with the criterion appropriate to psychology.13 According to this criterion, content is to be defined _only_ in terms of what makes a difference to behaviour, to organism–environment interactions, in which case neither the term H2O nor the term XYZ nor therefore their disjunction has a role to play in the characterization of mental states in the twin-Earth experiments as described. This proposal delivers broad meaning and causal power, jettisons only the idea of broad content defined by reference to what makes no difference to behaviour, and in this context the distinction between narrow as opposed to broad content falls out as redundant. These implications are discussed below.

The proposal, then, is to use a behavioural criterion of content with the emphasis, as indicated, on discriminative behaviour. Such a criterion stands in clear contrast to the one at work in the setting up of and the standard interpretation of the type of thought-experiment we are considering, which has to do with the physico-chemical nature of the environment. On the other hand, it can be argued that the physicalist (or materialist) criterion of mental content is supported by considerations of causal history, the supposition being that the causal history of the psychological states in question involves causation by H2O in the one case and XYZ in the other (e.g. Davidson 1989). However, since the thought-experiments are set up in such a way that the brain states of doppelgangers are identical, H2O has effects on the brain indistinguishable from those of XYZ. So whatever it is about these substances that has to be invoked in order to explain their causal effects on the brain, it is not their chemical composition. Presumably, then, within the terms of the causal theory of mental content, there are no grounds for distinguishing between

---

13 According to this criterion, content is to be defined _only_ in terms of what makes a difference to behaviour, to organism–environment interactions, in which case neither the term H2O nor the term XYZ nor therefore their disjunction has a role to play in the characterization of mental states in the twin-Earth experiments as described. This proposal delivers broad meaning and causal power, jettisons only the idea of broad content defined by reference to what makes no difference to behaviour, and in this context the distinction between narrow as opposed to broad content falls out as redundant. These implications are discussed below.

The proposal, then, is to use a behavioural criterion of content with the emphasis, as indicated, on discriminative behaviour. Such a criterion stands in clear contrast to the one at work in the setting up of and the standard interpretation of the type of thought-experiment we are considering, which has to do with the physico-chemical nature of the environment. On the other hand, it can be argued that the physicalist (or materialist) criterion of mental content is supported by considerations of causal history, the supposition being that the causal history of the psychological states in question involves causation by H2O in the one case and XYZ in the other (e.g. Davidson 1989). However, since the thought-experiments are set up in such a way that the brain states of doppelgangers are identical, H2O has effects on the brain indistinguishable from those of XYZ. So whatever it is about these substances that has to be invoked in order to explain their causal effects on the brain, it is not their chemical composition. Presumably, then, within the terms of the causal theory of mental content, there are no grounds for distinguishing between
the causal histories of the doppelgangers’ mental states. In this way the causal
criterion of mental content seems to point to the same conclusion as the
behavioural criterion, and for similar reasons.

If mental content in the doppelganger cases is not to be identified in
physico-chemical terms, how else should it be specified? The line of thought
in the preceding paragraph provides one approach to this question. We take it
as obvious that living beings are sensitive to only some of the properties of
water; obvious because we are speaking of beings with particular needs and
aims, with limited sensory and cognitive capacities, not of God. Expressed in
the information-processing language of biology and psychology, the point is
that living beings are sensitive to and encode only part of the hypothetical
totality of information pertaining to water. In the case of human beings, and
the doppelgangers in the thought-experiments in particular, let us call this
subset of information IE: information encoded. IE includes, say: fluid, colour-
less, drinkable, fire-extinguishing. But in particular it excludes, ex hypothesi
in the doppelganger cases, being composed of H₂O rather than XYZ, or vice
versa. Then we may say that the doppelgangers have the same information-
bearing states, the content of which is characterized in terms of IE. The
general proposal is that the mental content that regulates behaviour is to
be defined in terms of encoded information, which is essentially a product of
organism–environment interactions.

As indicated, such a definition of mental content in terms of encoded infor-
mation is distinct from what is presupposed in the standard reading of the
thought-experiments. It is the kind of definition appropriate to biology and
psychology, and it hangs together with behavioural criteria of mental content.
Living beings are sensitive to some features of the environment but not others:
they encode particular information, salient to their activity. The criterion of
whether a certain type of information is or is not encoded and used in the reg-
ulation of activity is precisely behavioural, including specifically evidence of
discriminative behaviour. Thus, for example, a creature’s behaviour may show
that it possesses information that a pool of water is drinkable, or is polluted, but
may show that it does not possess the information that water is composed of
the chemical elements hydrogen and oxygen as opposed to others; and so on.

The content of cognitive states as identified by this method supervenes on
brain states. According to behavioural criteria of content, which attend speci-
fically to discriminative behaviour, there is no reason to distinguish between
the mental contents of doppelgangers. In the thought-experiment we
have been considering, distinction between mental contents is based on differ-
ences in the physico-chemical nature of the environments. But the reply
is that the physico-chemical nature of their environments is irrelevant to
the doppelgangers: they simply do not detect it. This is how the thought-
experiment is set up. By contrast, consider the environmental features that, as
shown in their behaviour, the doppelgangers do detect, that water is fluid,
drinkable, etc. In respect of these features, the environments of the doppel-
gangers are indeed identical, and this identity hangs together with the identity
of their behaviour, brain states, and mental contents.14

Let us consider the dictum that meaning ain’t in the head in relation to the
argument in the above paragraph. The meaning in question is tied to the
physico-chemical composition of the environment. However, the thought-
experiments are set up precisely in such a way that the doppelgangers fail to
detect this feature of the environment. No wonder, then, that meaning ain’t in
the head! When the basis of this dictum is spelt out as above, it is (more or
less) tautological. As is the following proposition: meaning is encoded in, and
hence is supervenient on, states of the brain (is ‘in the head’) insofar as it per-
tains to features of the environment to which the living being is sensitive.
Thus, according to the way the thought-experiment is set up, meaning per-
taining to such as fluidity is in the doppelgangers’ heads, but there is nothing
in their heads about chemical composition.

Nothing in the above argument, of course, precludes there being mental
states with meaningful content individuated in terms of concepts of physics
and chemistry. Anyone who has learnt these sciences has them; the doppel-
gangers apparently haven’t. Further, mental states with such content, accord-
ing to the present argument, supervene on brain states; they are ‘in the head’.
The point is not that concepts of physics and chemistry cannot be used to
individuate mental states, but is rather that the use of any concepts for this
purpose stands in need of justification by behavioural criteria.

Mental content, defined by behavioural criteria, not only supervenes on the
brain, but is essentially ‘world-involving’. Contrary to the standard reading of the
thought-experiments, this latter characteristic of mental content does not pre-
clude supervenience. According to the proposed analysis, mental content is
‘broad’, or ‘world-involving’, in the sense that it is defined and individuated by
reference to features of the world. These may include, in the thought-experiment
we have taken as example, features such as fluidity or transparency. It is essential
to our notion of mental content that environmental properties enter into its de-
finite. This correct insight, however, has been misconstrued in the standard
interpretation of the doppelganger thought-experiments as being incompatible
with content-brain supervenience. It has been wrongly supposed that if content
is world-involving then it cannot supervene on states of the brain, and vice versa.

The conclusion that mental content is both world-involving and superve-
nient on the brain belongs straightforwardly with the assumption characteristic
of biology and psychology that information about the environment is encoded in the brain. This assumption is fundamental to the causal explanation of behaviour in terms of information-processing. The main point is that the contents of information-bearing states, mental or material, have to be characterized by reference to environmental features precisely insofar as they are invoked to explain behaviour as interaction between the organism and its environment. In other words, content is world-involving because of its role in the explanation of behaviour. —By all means the world that we become involved with in our behaviour is a matter of perceptible properties, that is, properties which can be perceived, and which when perceived make a difference to the brain and to behaviour. Of course ‘perceptible’ here does not mean ‘consciously perceptible’: what is required is that the agent be sensitive to the properties in question, consciously or otherwise. Some of these properties may coincide with the categories of physics and chemistry, such as shape and mass (within certain ranges), or oxygen in solution. Others are plainly relative to the living being, such as being non-poisonous, or dangerous. In biology and psychology, the environment that is represented in information-carrying states cannot be defined without reference to the sensitivity, aims and interests of the living being.

An implication of the view being proposed is that the meaning of ordinary language, used among other purposes for specifying the meaningful content of mental states, is grounded in behaviour. The meaning of a sign derives from its use in action, not from, for example and in particular, the fact that it is used within an environment with such-and-such physico-chemical constitution (save insofar as such constitution makes a difference to the activity of the users of the sign, hence to the use of the sign within that activity). The contrast in the philosophy of language and meaning here is between the view proposed by the later Wittgenstein, and subsequent theories which seek to anchor linguistic meaning in a materialist reality. There is much to be said on either side of this debate, but the philosophy of language is not our primary concern here. What does follow, however, from the above arguments in the philosophy of mind is that it is Wittgenstein’s view of meaning as use in activity that belongs with cognitive-behavioural science; in this context the other definition of meaning leads to paradoxes.

2.6 Objections to the proposed solution (5): ‘Meaning is in human activity, not the brain’

We turn now to the fifth and final objection to the idea that meaning is encoded in the brain, and thereby plays a role in the regulation of action.
It is based in what may be called a Wittgensteinian view of language and meaning, as being essentially involved in human activity, although it should be said that this is a post-modern view generally, found in many other writers (e.g. Merleau-Ponty 1945; Gadamer 1960; Habermas 1971).

As discussed earlier (Sections 2.4 and 1.2.1) Wittgenstein in his early work, the *Tractatus* (1921), proposed that the pictorial structure of the sign alone (its syntax) has meaning, is a true-or-false representation of reality. This view is given up in the later period: signs have meaning not because they are distributed in a spatial or quasi-spatial structure, but because they are ‘distributed in’ a rule-guided activity. Our activities are typically social, and are surrounded by cultural theories, in the way described by post-empiricist epistemology (Section 1.3.2). In short, meaning is embedded within human social practices and culture. Whereas the view articulated in the *Tractatus* fits well with the idea that there are signs in the brain, ‘picturing’ the world, Wittgenstein’s later view makes this idea look odd. How can the sign with meaning be in the brain? Is it not rather in practices and culture? It seems that the idea of encoding, and indeed the entire information-processing paradigm that goes along with it, might be something like a muddled category mistake. Criticisms of the information-processing, cognitive science paradigm along these lines have been made by several philosophers (Hacker 1987; Harré 1994; Gillett 1999).

The basis of the criticisms, the Wittgensteinian or broadly post-modern view that meaning is grounded in social practices, embedded in culture, is endorsed in this essay, but we propose that this view of meaning in fact can be combined with the information-processing paradigm and in particular with the claim that meaning is encoded in the brain. Indeed it should be emphasized here that the encoding thesis *has been explicated and defended* through this chapter by appeal to the Wittgensteinian view that meaning is based in activity. In considering the objections to the encoding thesis through this chapter we have steered away from the strong formulation of the thesis, the idea that there are signs (signs with syntactic structure) in the brain doing the representing, as it were, all on their own. This strong formulation of the notion of encoding is in fact what provokes the various objections to the encoding thesis, which has therefore to be rescued from it. The strong formulation of the encoding thesis runs into trouble because it is incompatible with connectionist models (Section 2.2), because it tries to reduce (neural) semantics to (neural) syntax (Section 2.3), and because it fails to explain why (neural) semantic properties rather than syntactic properties do any work in the causal explanation of behaviour (Section 2.4). At each stage of the defence of the encoding thesis we have had to restrain the presumption that meaning, specifically meaning encoded in the brain, is essentially a matter of syntactic, language-like, structures,
and to substitute the view that meaning essentially pertains to rule-guided activity, or again, of intentional agent–environment interactions.

The route we have taken to the notion of neural encoding has several steps. The first step, argued for through Chapter 1, that explanation of action in terms of meaningful states has predictive power, the second is the conclusion of that chapter, that such explanation is causal, the third is the assumption taken for granted in this chapter that the brain causally regulates action, all of which can be made compatible on the methodological assumption that the meaning (information) which regulates action is encoded in the brain. This route to the encoding thesis does not end at ‘sentences in the head’, but with the proposal that the brain encodes meaning somehow or other. This proposal is of course much weaker empirically, but this is appropriate enough given its philosophical, conceptual origins. But in return for (appropriate) empirical vagueness, it makes the strong a priori claim that an adequacy condition of any theory of encoding is that the critical connection between meaning and the regulation of action is not lost. The strong interpretation of encoding, which posits signs with syntactic structure in the brain doing the representing, inevitably neglects this connection between meaning and action, and indeed runs the risk of neglecting meaning (in favour of syntax) altogether.

Thus we have through Sections 2.2 to 2.4 of this chapter proposed a notion of meaning and of encoded meaning as being essentially involved with activity. This same idea was used again to protect the encoding thesis in Section 2.5, in considering whether meaning supervenes on brain states. In brief, then, the claim that the brain encodes meaning, as defended and explicated here, far from being incompatible with the kind of view of meaning proposed by Wittgenstein, actually presupposes it.

Rule-following activity, activity that can be performed ‘rightly’ or ‘wrongly’, is what warrants the attribution of meaning to the agent, or to the brain that as a matter of fact is the material system most of all involved in the regulation of action. To take a relatively simple case, we attribute to a rat, and in particular to the rat’s brain, information about the maze, on the grounds that the animal relates to the maze in an ordered, methodical, goal-directed way. In the indefinitely more complicated case of human beings, actions have many and various meanings, and these include (perceived) relationships to realities defined by theories embedded deep in the culture. In order to understand the actions of such as a physicist, or a tribal magician, we have to understand their theories about reality and their relation to it, for these theories guide what the people do. In brief, action is regulated in cultural practices by meaning as much as in the much simpler cases studied in the laboratory, and there is as much reason to invoke meanings encoded in the brain.
But of course in this context it is clear, and has been implicit throughout the chapter, that it is not the brain ‘in isolation’ that carries meaning, but the embodied brain in its role as regulating action. If the brain is described in intrinsic, non-relational, non-intentional terms, in terms of physical or physico-chemical processes, without reference to information-processing, then all that can be explained and predicted is intrinsic, non-relational, non-intentional behaviour: the motion of the body, not the meaning of the act, which depends on nature and culture. If one is to explain and predict behaviour in relation to these realities, then the regulating neural processes have to be credited with information relating to them.

### 2.7 Summary

The main claim of the first chapter was that explanations of action in terms of meaningful mental states are effective in prediction, and the inference was drawn that such explanations are causal. The main burden of the present chapter has been to reconcile this conclusion with the material causation of behaviour by the brain. We began in Section 2.1 by noting that mind–brain identity theory promises a quick reconciliation, but it runs against several obstacles, chief of which in the present context is that mental states have intentionality while brain states arguably do not. It was suggested on the other hand that brain processes can be legitimately regarded as carrying (encoding) information, and indeed are so regarded at the interface between cognitive psychology and neuroscience, particularly for the purpose of explaining the role of the brain in regulating action. Subsequent sections were devoted to explication of this idea that brain states encode information, or meaning, and in particular to defending it from various lines of thought much discussed in the current literature.

In Section 2.2 we considered Fodor’s Language of Thought Hypothesis, according to which there are sentence-like structures in the brain, which serve both to encode meaning and to regulate (cause) behaviour. However, this particularly literal reading of the encoding thesis is apparently incompatible with connectionist models of cognitive function and its implementation in the brain. In these models there are, at least at a micro-level of analysis, no physical (hardware) counterparts to meaningful symbols, or sentences. The relation between connectionist models of cognitive function and those of traditional, symbolic AI, the ones conducive to the Language of Thought Hypothesis, is complex however. The philosophical assumption relevant here is that, if attribution of meaningful mental states is valid, in particular if it affords causal explanations of action, then such attributions must pick out corresponding
states in the brain. This assumption can be combined with affirmation of its antecedent in order to derive its consequent, in the (sophisticated) form of the Language of Thought Hypothesis. Alternatively, the assumption can be combined with denial of its consequent (on connectionist grounds), leading to denial of its antecedent, to the ‘elimination’ of folk psychology. Either way the assumption is problematic, and reasons for rejecting it were presented. Psychological descriptions attribute meaningful states to the brain, or better, to the person as agent. However, they are based on (high-level) regularities in organism–environment interactions, and it is on this basis that they predict such interactions well (enough). There is no reason to suppose that in accomplishing this task, psychological descriptions also have to pick out neural structures that correspond to them. The assumption that folk psychology seeks to define the neural structures which serve information-processing and action, still more that this is its primary aspiration, is based on a misconception of the logic of psychological description, and hence of its ontological commitments. The upshot of these considerations is that the brain can be said to encode meaning, or information, though not because there is a one-one correspondence between meaningful states and neural states. The language of meaning and of encoded meaning is based in organism–environment interactions, and can be applied to the brain only insofar as the brain serves in the regulation of those interactions. The main claim of the chapter—that meaningful mental causation can be reconciled with neural causation by appeal to the idea that the brain encodes meaning—can thus be preserved, though with these qualifications.

We turned next to related issues in AI theory, concerning the relation between syntax and semantics. In Section 2.3 we considered Searle’s well-known ‘Chinese room argument’ against the conflation of semantics with syntax: symbol-manipulation is not enough for intentionality. As to what is, we invoked again the claim, as throughout the essay, that intentionality is grounded in activity. Made in terms of semantics and syntax, the point is that the ‘symbols’ which carry meaning must be essentially involved in the mediation of sensory-motor pathways.

The considerations in the next two sections, 2.4. and 2.5, had to do particularly with the idea that meaning encoded in the brain plays a causal role. This claim about causality is, as indicated in the first section, the main rationale of the encoding thesis. In Section 2.4 we consider a line of argument pervasive in the literature, the main thrust of which is that it would have to be neural syntax which causes behaviour, not the alleged neural semantics, because only the former is local to the effects. Semantic properties, so the argument runs, are about distal features and therefore cannot be causes. Our reply was that locally
defined neural causes will have locally defined effects, namely motor behaviour which is not about the environment. By contrast causal explanation of intentional behaviour has to cite intentional causes, causes that are about what the behaviour is about. Such causes are identified in non-local terms, though they are local to the behaviour that they regulate. This combination of intentional features with local instantiation is of course precisely the point of the thesis that meaning (information) is encoded in the brain.

In Section 2.5 we turned to a distinct though related argument that would refute the main proposal, an extremely influential argument based on Putnam’s so-called twin-Earth thought-experiments. It leads to the conclusion that ‘meanings ain’t in the head’, and hence (among other things) are not causes of behaviour. The argument seeks to establish the claim that mental states as individuated by meaningful content can (be imagined to) vary while brain states remain the same, this variation being due to variation in the represented states of affairs. This claim has been accepted by most commentators, leading either to the more or less reluctant dismissal of folk psychological meaning as being irrelevant to causal explanation, or else to the problematic attempt to define a ‘narrow’ as opposed to a ‘broad’ content. Putnam’s argument was criticized in the remainder of the section. The standard reading of the twin-Earth thought-experiments, the one which supports the conclusion that meanings ‘ain’t in the head’, posits differences in mental contents which are not reflected in behavioural differences, in particular, not in discriminative behaviours. This dissociation between mental content and behavioural criteria, whatever can be said for it on other grounds, is at odds with what is required in the context of a cognitive-behavioural science. In this context, the postulate of meaningful states serves the purpose of explaining and predicting action, in particular discriminative behaviour, and is otherwise unjustified. The implication is that meaningful content is to be defined essentially in terms of organism–environment interactions. Given this kind of definition of content, several features of folk psychological meaning that are problematic or incompatible according to the standard reading of the doppelganger thought-experiments appear as valid. Folk psychological meaning, intentionality in general, is and should be all of the following: ‘world-involving’, supervenient on the neural states that regulate action, and invoked in the causal explanation of action.

A very different sort of objection to the encoding thesis was considered in Section 2.6. It starts from a view found in Wittgenstein’s philosophy and other post-modern semantics, that meaning is based in human practice and culture, and resists therefore the idea that meaning is ‘in the brain’. The underlying view of meaning was accepted, however, and indeed has been emphasized throughout the chapter to rescue the encoding thesis from the various
objections to it so far. However the language of encoding, when appropriately understood, remains valid in this context of post-modern semantics. Meaningful psychological ‘states’ are manifested in action. It is possible to describe these states as being encoded in the brain, but this description presupposes that the brain is functioning within the person, and that the person is acting in the environment. In this sense, the subject of psychological states is primarily the person (as agent). Nevertheless it is possible and legitimate to say that the brain encodes these meaningful states: this is the way in which brain function has to be described when the task is to explain how it regulates action.

**Endnotes**


2. On points in this paragraph see e.g. Block (1980a) and other papers in Block (1980b), Part Three. Recent discussions of multiple realization can be found in Kim (1998) and Shoemaker (2001).


4. The Language of Thought hypothesis is sophisticated and complicated, comprising many interrelated components, among which are the following: mental states with meaningful content have an articulated syntactic structure (analogous to the syntactic structure of sentences of natural languages); the causal role of a mental state in relation to other mental states and to behaviour is determined by its syntactic structure; mental states are realized in neural states, which also have ‘syntactic’ structure; the causal role of such neural states is determined by their ‘syntactic’ structure (Fodor 1975, and for critical commentary see e.g. Loewer and Rey 1991; Oberlander and Dayan 1996, as well as below).

5. Discussion of connectionism and its psychological and philosophical implications may be found in, e.g. Ramsey et al. 1991, Churchland and
Sejnowski (1992), Clark and Millican (1996), and Page (2000). The main point at issue in the present context is the very general one that in connectionist models there are no or no clear counterparts to (meaningful) symbols. This fact can be developed into an argument against Fodor’s Language of Thought hypothesis particularly, and generally against the idea that folk psychological meaning has anything corresponding to it in the brain, and hence, … anything corresponding to it at all. This line of thought and replies to it are the subject of the remainder of this section.

6. On the possible relations between the two kinds of model see e.g. Fodor and Pylyshyn (1988), Smolensky (1988), Clark (1990), and Clark and Millican (ed.) (1996). Power and Brewin (1991) discuss the issues particularly from the perspective of clinical psychology.

7. On relationships between folk psychology and AI models of cognitive architecture see e.g. Clark (1989), Clark and Millican (ed.) (1996), and Stich (1996).

8. Versions of this argument can be found in, e.g. McGinn (1989) and Jacob (1992). Generally this line of thought pervades the literature around Putnam’s claim that ‘meaning ain’t in the head’, to be considered in the next section.

9. Critical commentaries on the issues around Putnam’s claim include McGinn (1989), Bilgrami (1992), and Segal (2000).

10. This brief formulation of supervenience given above is Fodor’s (1987, p. 30), and suffices in the present context. There are alternative, related definitions; see e.g. Stich (1983, 1996), Lennon (1990), and Kim (1998).

11. Putnam’s original argument originally had a form that may be summarized as follows. Consider two plausible assumptions: firstly, that knowing the meaning of a term is just a matter of being in a certain psychological (dispositional) state, and secondly, that the meaning (intension) of a term determines its extension. From these it follows that the psychological state which constitutes knowing the meaning of a term determines the extension of the term. But this is the claim that the thought-experiments show to be false, demonstrating the possibility, in the case of using words, of the same psychological (subjective, mind/brain) state, but different extension. In brief, in the sense of meaning that determines extension, meaning ain’t in the head (Putnam 1975, specially pp. 215–227). This line of thought was turned into a problem of the cognitive science explanatory paradigm, which invokes cognitive states as having a causal role dependent on their meaning, by Fodor (1982). This problem is our main concern and will be considered below in the text.
12. For example by distinguishing between types of causal explanation and in particular by defining a type which depends on content in the absence of supervenience. Jackson and Pettit (1988) distinguish between causal explanations which cite a *causally efficacious feature* and those which cite a *feature which ‘causally programmes’ without causing*. Explanations of behaviour in terms of broad mental content are then held to be indeed legitimate causal explanations, but of the causal programming variety. This proposal ensures the relevance of broad mental states to causal and seems to avoid the problems inherent in the idea of narrow content. On this last point, however, the difficulty is that causal programming explanations generally seem to presuppose causal efficacious explanations, so that in particular, causal programming explanations of behaviour in terms of broad mental states apparently presuppose causal efficacious explanations in terms of narrow mental states (Rowlands 1989; see also Kim 1998).

13. This line of thought has some similarities with Fodor’s later argument for the notion of narrow content in cognitive science, the so-called modal argument (Fodor 1987, 1991, with commentary in, e.g. Block 1991; Russow 1993; Segal 2000). Fodor criticizes the standard reading of the doppelganger cases on the grounds that it invokes a difference in mental content that does no causal-explanatory work. Fodor goes on to suggest that specification of mental content should be relativized to context, in such a way that doppelgangers share mental states. Fodor and his twin-Earth doppelganger share the same mental state, the content of which is H_2O in case of being on Earth, or XYZ in case of being on twin-Earth. Content so defined would be ‘narrow’ in the sense of being supervenient, and causal. But it would at the same time be ‘broad’ in the sense of referring to a disjunctively specified environment. The position being proposed in this section is similar to Fodor’s in that it affirms the behavioural criterion of content suited to the cognitive-behavioural explanatory paradigm, and hence in particular the methodological principle: no difference in content to be invoked which does not explain a behavioural difference. On the other hand, our emphasis in the notion of ‘behavioural difference’ is not essentially concerned with differences in the environmental scene of behaviour, but is specifically to do with *discriminative behaviour*.

14. This statement and defence of the supervenience thesis ignores the issue of demonstrative terms, such as ‘this’ and ‘that’. It is likely that demonstratives play a critical role in specifying mental content for the purpose of explaining action (e.g. Peacocke 1981). But this specification by reference to something external is not incompatible with supervenience, as least so
far as the doppelganger thought-experiments are concerned. It is true that
my doppelganger cannot see, think of, or touch this (very same) keyboard.
But by the same token, he does not have this (very same) brain. In these
cases, in the sense in which doppelgangers have different mental contents
they have different brains as well, and there is nothing of interest here
about supervenience (encoding, causality, etc.).

References


This page intentionally left blank
3.1 *Intentionality is observer-relative*

To a large extent it is philosophical preconceptions that determine whether or not the theory of knowledge of mind is of scientific interest. In Cartesian theory knowledge of mind other than one’s own is problematic, at best an inference from mind-less, mechanical behaviour, with no possibility of checking its validity. Such an inference is also scientifically idle: it has no incremental explanatory/predictive value. This position shifts once non-Cartesian assumptions are brought to bear, specifically the assumption that mental states serve in the regulation of intentional activity. The behaviour that signifies mind is already mind-like, characterized by intentionality, and the regulation of action is more epistemically accessible than private, immaterial, parallel processes. Insofar as knowledge of mind facilitates prediction of the behaviour of living beings, then it becomes of scientific interest, appearing not only in the methodology of the behavioural sciences, but also among the objects of study. There are developmental issues in the epistemology of mind, along the phylogenetic scale, studied in biology and ethology (e.g. Byrne and Whiten 1988; Barresi and Moore 1996; Ristau 1998; Whiten 2001), and along the ontogenetic scale, studied in developmental psychology (e.g. Astington *et al.* 1988; Whiten 1991; Astington and Jenkins 1999; Griffin and Baron-Cohen 2002). Clinical psychology also has an interest in knowledge of mind, specifically radical gaps and errors of various kinds (e.g. Fonagy 1991; Baron-Cohen *et al.* 1993; Hobson 2000; see also Sections 1.3.2, and 8.2).

However, problematic aspects of knowledge of mind, particularly from the point of view of the sciences, do not disappear easily. It was remarked at the beginning of the previous chapter, in relation to dualism and mind–brain identity theory, that philosophical dichotomies generally are not resolved by dogmatic assertion of one side or the other. Rather, something like a compromise is required, the deeper aspect of which is deconstruction of the terms of the dichotomy. In the present case, the point is that resolution of the problem of knowledge of mind requires deep shifts in seventeenth-century assumptions concerning both knowledge and mind. The latter have already been indicated: mind has to be seen not as a Cartesian parallel process, but as involved...
in the regulation of intentional activity. Likewise shifts have to be made in traditional epistemological dichotomies, specifically between subjective knowledge (of mind), and objective knowledge (of matter). We shall be working towards a position in which this dichotomy (as a dichotomy) cannot be recognized.

Once dualism is abandoned, with the acknowledgement that mind is involved in meaningful behaviour, there is no longer space for a radical scepticism about mind. On the other hand, as noted already in the Preface and Chapter 1 (Section 1.4), there arises a different though related problem, concerning the objectivity of perceptions of intentionality. This lack of objectivity, compared with the objectivity in the natural sciences, was one ground of the turn of the century distinction between meaningful and causal connections. Attribution of intentionality tends to be subjective and unreliable, and hence so far inadequate for the purpose of scientific explanation, as noted for example by Jaspers in relation to clinical intuition (1923, p. 2). The problem is at least that inter-observer reliability in perceptions of meaningful phenomena can be poor. The corollary is that their (objective) validity is no better. In other words, the appearance of subjectivity in the purported knowledge of the phenomena casts doubt on their objective reality.

In clinical psychology and psychiatry, debate of the problem of objectivity has focussed largely on psychoanalytic theory, as has frequently been the case with other problems of meaning. Psychoanalytic theory has been accused of being able to find not only different but mutually incompatible meanings in the same set of phenomena, the implication being that attribution of meaning in the theory has no objective validity. The problem of objectivity of meaning is however a general one, not confined to psychoanalysis. A related point is that the problem is not especially about unconscious as opposed to conscious mental states. It is tempting to suppose that attribution of conscious mental states based on subjective self-report is relatively unproblematic, but this assumption is misconceived. It presupposes that subjective self-reports are infallible, and we have already noted in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2) that this assumption is not generally valid. The problem of determining objective criteria for ascription of mental states cannot be solved just by appeal to what the subject is inclined to say.

Knowledge of mind, and of the intentional behaviour regulated by mental states, is not ‘purely objective’, like knowledge of the physical movements of bodies. Rather there is element of subjectivity in our knowledge of mind, as recognized, though exaggerated by the Cartesian theory. This subjectivity shows up as a variation in attributions of intentionality between observers: different people viewing the same activity may see different patterns of intentionality at work, including the vacuous case of seeing no such patterns.
In brief, knowledge of intentionality involves *observer-relativity*. Inevitably this has been cited as among the main reasons why the notion of meaning should have no role in a mature cognitive science (e.g. Stich 1983). The nature and implications of this relativity need explication, and this is the main theme running through the chapter. We approach the problem in two main ways, both already marked out as critical in the first chapter, one concerning theory of mind, and the other rule-following.

Mental states can be ‘known’ in the sense that they are posits in a theory of behaviour. In other words the idea explored in various ways in the first chapter, that mental states are invoked in order to explain and predict behaviour, constitutes the core of an epistemology. We might expect clear objectivity here, as usually in scientific theories, especially when we think of cognitive learning theory (discussed in Section 1.1.1). In contrast, perhaps, it is the folk psychological theory of mind, our day to day way of knowing the mental states of others, which shows relativity and subjectivity. There may be, however, something left out by the proposal that knowledge of mind is an exercise in theory, and we consider in the next section an alternative, or complementary, epistemology based in empathy. This theory of knowledge of mind has a long history, but has recently been revived in terms of so-called ‘mental simulation’.

Our second approach to the epistemology of mind is via the question of what it means to follow a rule. We shall consider Wittgenstein’s arguments to the effect that rule-following involves agreement, specifically participation in a form of life.

Both routes lead to similar conclusions, including that attributions of intentionality depend on the intentional states of the one making the attributions. This observer-relativity of these judgements calls into question their objective validity, as already remarked. The question whether intentional states have objective reality, and if so, of what kind, interacts strongly with issues of brain–mind identity, discussed in the previous chapter. But the discussion in this chapter will focus more on the epistemological problem of the observer-relativity of intentional state ascriptions. This problem will be considered with reference to the relativity involved in the move from the lower-level to the higher-level sciences, from physics through to psychology.

### 3.2 Theory of mind and empathy (‘mental simulation’)

In the first chapter, Section 1.1.1, we noted that cognitive psychology posits cognitive states in order to explain and predict goal-directed, flexible behaviour. We went on to remark there and in Section 1.4 that folk psychology can be plausibly regarded in a similar light, as being a quasi- or proto-scientific
theory used to explain and anticipate behaviour. The behavioural phenomena constitute the empirical basis of cognitive psychological and folk psychological theory: they are evidence for ascription of mental states, and they are what is predicted from such ascriptions.

The behaviour to which mental state ascriptions are relevant already has intentionality or meaning. This has been argued for and considered in various contexts in the first two chapters (e.g. Sections 1.2.2 and 2.5). It may be anticipated that this point bears directly on the issue of reliability of ascriptions of meaningful, mental states. Generally observers agree as to the occurrence or non-occurrence of motor acts, such as the lifting of an arm, or movement from one place to another. On the other hand, in the case of behavioural patterns extended through time and across varying circumstances, manifesting more or less apparent goals, and more or less apparent plasticity of means to ends, etc., it is less obvious that all observers will see the same. Insofar as the behavioural evidence includes intentionality, agreement between observers becomes less certain; there is more scope for interpretation. It can be said that attributions of intentionality involve subjectivity, and are thus not entirely objective. It should be noted that this subjectivity arises primarily from individual differences between observers, of a sort which leads to variation in the results of observation. Individual differences are typically on a continuum rather than in dichotomous categories. The implication is that the contrast between ‘subjective’ and ‘objective’ ways of knowing is wrongly conceived as a dichotomy, but is rather a matter of degree.

Relativity in ascriptions of intentionality is apparent even in the case of predicting the behaviour of artificially intelligent systems. As generally in the discussion of mind and meaning, many critical points do not turn on the mind/matter distinction, nor on the animate/inanimate distinction, but rather on the distinction between behaviour which is and behaviour which is not functional, rule-guided, mediated by information, etc. Consider the example of the chess-playing computer, used already in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2). In order to describe its moves in intentional terms we use observation by the senses no less than if we wish to describe just the movements of pieces from squares to squares. However, it is clear that something more is required for the use of intentional descriptions, namely, knowledge of the game. In the absence of such knowledge, descriptions and explanations from the Intentional Stance are unavailable. Someone who is ignorant of the game will be able to record the moves made, but not the logic behind them. In this case, attempts at prediction would remain at the purely ‘behavioural’ level, proceeding by induction from past observations, and typically this method would have little success, particularly as the game develops. Recognition of intentionality
in sequences of moves, the attribution of strategy and the formulation of prediction on that basis, requires familiarity with the game, over and above the ability to see what (physical) movements are being made.

The question arises as to what is involved in knowledge of a game, or generally, any rule-guided, goal-directed activity. There are broadly speaking two kinds of answer, with a complicated and contentious relationship between them. One draws on the notion of *theory*. This epistemology has been the one used and applied through the essay so far. It is highly suited to cognitive science (Section 1.1.1), belongs clearly with post-empiricist epistemology (Section 1.3.1-2) and has generated much research in various areas of psychology (Section 3.1). The core of this epistemology is that attribution of intentionality involves a theory which posits intentional states of various kinds and contents, and interactions among such states and between them and stimuli and activity. There is, however, a different kind of epistemology of intentionality, which has less to do with using theory.

In the case of chess-playing, especially when the game develops beyond a certain stage, into positions so far unencountered, the ability to perceive strategies apparently depends increasingly on the ability to play the game oneself. The recognition of intentionality in the other’s moves draws on one’s own inclinations to adopt this or that strategy at a given stage in the game. It can be seen here, in this simple case, that something like ‘empathy’ is involved in the attribution of intentional states. Consider now the more complicated, psychological case. A particular kind of cognitive-affective state has characteristic causes and characteristic expressions in behaviour. An observer who knows the emotion in his or her own case may recognize it in another, and thereby form expectations concerning the other’s behaviour. In contrast, the observer who is unfamiliar with the emotion in herself will at best be able to record the other’s behaviour, and not the emotion as cause (or reason): the various expressions of the emotion will pass unnoticed, or will appear as unconnected phenomena, without underlying psychological unity. Expressions of grief, for example, would be ignored, or attributed, say, some to influenza, others to other stresses. In general, perception of intentional states and connections in the other person is facilitated by the perceiver’s familiarity with such states and connections in his and her own case.

Theories of knowledge of mind in which a notion something like empathy plays a critical role have been proposed in the philosophical literature (Gordon 1986; Heal 1986; Ripstein 1987; Goldman 1989). This kind of epistemology was soon taken into developmental psychological theory (Harris 1989, and for recent discussion, e.g. Preston and de Waal 2002; see also below). It is however yet to appear in scientific clinical psychology. The idea that the therapist
uses him or herself to understand (and anticipate) the patient is of course fundamental to psychoanalysis and its derivatives, but it can hardly be envisaged in the scientific paradigm of knowledge.

The recent formulations of the theory of empathy vary among themselves, and some explicitly use the term ‘empathy’ while others, particularly Gordon’s (1986) relies more on the technical term ‘mental simulation’. This epistemology has often been understood as being an alternative to the proposal that knowledge of mind is an exercise in theory. There are however various ways in which they can be regarded as complementary. One way of doing this is to regard empathy as involving a kind of thought-experiment, generating information that requires interpretation, by analogy with experiment and theory in science: mental simulations construed as thought-experiments would provide a fast, easy to perform means of experimenting with the causal relations among mental states and between mental states and tendencies to behaviour, and hence, along with observation of actual cases, can be part of the empirical basis of the theory of mind (Bolton 1995).

Empathy may involve using information about oneself as a way of trying to know another person. We ask, for example, ‘What would I feel if I had just experienced such-and-such?’, intending the answer to help in knowing what the other might be feeling given the experience in question. This is a natural description, but superficial. Behind it lies the epistemological point that empathic knowledge is originally subject-less, that is to say, is not about a (particular) subject at all. In an exercise of empathy or mental simulation we imagine it would be like in such-and-such a position. But a thought-experiment of this kind is not primarily a source of self-knowledge, though it can be used for this purpose. The theory of mind required to run the simulation has to include methodological assumptions covering the move from current results to predictions about other cases. The simplest such assumption uses the straight rule: it will be in other cases just as it is in the present one. More sophisticated rules take into account differences between cases, such as differences in spatio-visual perspective, in ways of expressing emotion, or in beliefs, etc. It is by all means tempting to describe the methodological assumption of the straight rule as being that the other is like the self, while the more complex rules allow for differences between oneself and others. This way of describing the assumption behind the straight rule, however, presupposes that the distinction between self and other is being made, and the point is that this distinction comes into operation only with the more complex rules, which allow for differences in perspective. The thought-experiments are not about mental states of the self as opposed to mental states of the other. They provide information that is so far subject-less. The information is primarily about intentional states
and their (apparent) connectedness, but these are not yet states of the self as opposed to states of the other. Attribution of patterns of intentionality to the self as opposed to the other requires recognition of and allowances for features which distinguish the self from others, and vice versa. This is to say, self-knowledge is not the basis for knowledge of the other, but rather they share the same origins, and develop in parallel (see also Carpendale and Lewis 2003).

Rules are required to make predictions about other cases from any particular source of information. The rules become more sophisticated as they take into account relevant differences between the current case and others, but these differences are not correctly characterized in terms of differences between self and other. The first distinction to be drawn is between this present case and other cases. The ‘other cases’ by all means include other people, but they also, and equally, include myself in conditions other than those in the present case, for example, myself at different times, places, or with different relevant beliefs and goals, etc. The aim is to use the current observation or experiment to predict as accurately as possible what will or would happen in other cases. Accuracy will be achieved to the extent that the rules of inference become increasingly sensitive to differences in perspective, in the broadest sense. This increasing sensitivity plausibly involves increasing capacity or skill in imaginative manipulation of perspectives (visual, cognitive, emotional, etc.), in other words, increasing aptitude for mental simulations or thought-experiments. But it seems equally plausible to suppose that sensitivity to perspective depends on a theory, concerning at least the idea that perception and belief do indeed depend on perspective, as opposed to being determined just by reality as it appears (at present) to be. It would be reasonable to suppose, further, that these two capacities, for thought-experiments with perspectives, and for theory about perspectives, are inextricably linked.

These epistemological points can be applied to the question of what is involved in the child’s acquisition of knowledge of mind. Some developmentalists emphasize the child’s increasing theoretical sophistication (e.g. Gopnik and Wellman 1992; Perner and Howes 1992), while proponents of the Simulation Theory emphasize the child’s increasing understanding of the role of perspective (Harris 1992). An advantage of seeing the two epistemologies as complementary is that one does not have to choose between these two themes in psychological development, both of which are apparently major. Indeed, the implication of the line of argument proposed above is not just that these two kinds of maturation are compatible, but is more that they are inextricably interwoven. A particularly crucial development in the theory of mind, highlighted by proponents of the ‘theory–theory’, is towards the idea of mental states as true-or-false representations (e.g. Gopnik and Wellman 1992).
This important theoretical development is, however, intimately linked, as a matter of logic, to recognition of and facility with variation in perspective. The main point, to be discussed in more detail in the next section, is that the distinction between true and false cannot be made out on the basis of the present point of view alone, still less is it made out by comparing the present point of view with an absolute reality; rather it arises in comparison and contrast between perspectives. The distinction between true and false, as also between appearance and reality, depends on the power of discriminating between me-now/me-then and me(-now)/him(-now). In effect, what is required is discrimination between the current perspective and others, and this in turn requires that the current perspective is construed precisely as a perspective. Thus, what appear to be advances in theory, concerning true-or-false representation, or the difference between appearance and reality, intimately involve the idea of perspective, and hence plausibly both facilitate and are facilitated by experience and imaginative play with perspectives. The argument leads, once again, round and round: from theory to experience or experiment, back to theory, and so on.

The suggestion is that development in the theory of mind is interwoven with development of imaginative play with perspectives. It should be noted at this point that in children this imaginative play is most apparent indeed in play. The implication here is that children use play to improve their knowledge of mind, whether in theory or simulation (Leslie 1987; Harris 1989; Hobson 1990; Bekoff 1998).

3.3 Rule-following

There is a close connection, already remarked in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2), between mental states, regulation, and rule-following. We describe behaviour as caused by mental states insofar as it is goal-directed and adaptive, and this ‘causation’ involves regulation, the modification of behaviour according to circumstances towards a goal. These intentional behaviour sequences are hence also typically subject to normative descriptions: appropriate/inappropriate, successful/unsuccessful, right/wrong. This normative quality can be captured by saying that the behaviour in question is subject to a rule, or is rule-following. So the central questions for this chapter concerning the epistemology of mind can be framed using the notion of rule-following. How do I know that someone is following a rule? How do I know which rule? What is this knowledge knowledge of? In this section we consider aspects of Wittgenstein’s influential discussion of rule-following in the Philosophical Investigations (1953).²

At the beginning of his Investigations, Wittgenstein (1953) criticizes the general idea that signs have meaning because they stand for objects; rather their
meaning derives from use in activity (Wittgenstein 1953, Sections 1 to ca. 37).
He proceeds to criticize various doctrines familiar in the philosophical tradition
which express the idea that meaning is correlation with an object, in such a way
as to exclude the use of signs in activity as redundant, or even as incomprehensible. These include doctrines that invoke universals (ibid. ca. Sections 57–78),
and various logical theories including Wittgenstein’s own in the *Tractatus*
(ibid. ca. Sections 39–64, and 89–116).

Before considering briefly Wittgenstein’s treatment of such doctrines below,
we should note that the issues here are not of interest only to the history of
philosophy, but are relevant to contemporary theories of meaning and mental
content. Highly influential theories still draw on, or make a virtue of, the view
that meaning and reference do not essentially involve human activity. These
include the materialist theory of mental content, discussed in the context of
the problem of supervenience in the previous chapter (Section 2.5), and the
causal theory of semantics, to be discussed in the next chapter (Section 4.3).

Meaningful signs, whether written or spoken language, or mental represen-
tations, or information-carrying neural states, pick out, *in some sense*, the
order (or *form*) in reality. It is possible to conceive this order as already given,
both in the sense of already given in time, and in the sense of given without
contribution from the activity of an agent. At least until the Kantian revolu-
tion, such an absolute conception of order has been dominant in the tradition.
It has had various expressions, which fall broadly into two categories, con-
cerning classes and spatial relations. In both cases the notion of resemblance
between sign and signified, discussed already in Section 1.2.1, is fundamental.

The various theories of universals in ancient thought, and the theories of
general and abstract ideas in modern thought, all seek to explain the unity of
classes in terms of an object which is, or which resembles, what all and only
members of the class have in common. Such a special and problematic ‘uni-
versal (or general) object’ is the meaning of any sign that represents a class.
Relation between objects in space is a different kind of order, which assumed
paramount importance in the modern period. In seventeenth-century philos-
ophy of nature it too was conceived as given absolutely: independently of
time, of experience, of frames of reference, to be measured by rigid rods. The
order of objects in space, the natural order, could perhaps be represented in
perception, though the details were irredeemably problematic. In particular,
perceptual experience is relative, dependent on the nature and position of the
subject, and further, it was meant to be mental, and hence not spatial. In brief,
perceptions are not rigid rods, indeed they are not rods at all. Such paradoxes
point to the murky incoherence of this modern world-picture. In the *Tractatus*
(Wittgenstein 1921) the problems of relativity and mind were by-passed
by logic: spatial states of affairs are represented by (more) spatial states of affairs, configurations of signs, involving no relativity, nothing at all that could be called contribution by a subject. As discussed in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2.1), the picture theory of thought and language is derived in the *Tractatus* as a solution to the problem of how a sign can be meaningful (can stand for something in reality) while yet being false (while failing to correspond to reality). The pictures are the ‘real signs’, hidden beneath the surface of language, which does indeed conspicuously not look like what is represented.

The theory that the meaning of a general term is a feature common to all members of a class, and the theory that a true-or-false proposition is something like a picture of a state of affairs, though otherwise distinct, both affirm the idea that meanings are essentially static, object-like structures which resemble or reflect the pre-given order in reality. These structures—universals, ideas, pictures—do all the work of representation. Or rather, there is no need for work: the ‘real signs’ simply *are* what reality is like. In this general picture there is no use for such concepts as time, the creation of order, activity, relativity, and subjectivity (and still less, of inter-subjectivity). These excluded concepts are all intimately related to one another.

During the twentieth century theories of meaning which turn on the notion of resemblance doctrines became unattractive, particularly but not only because they fare badly when applied to language. The theories posit signs that ‘resemble reality’, but the signs of (everyday, natural) languages typically do not. If we persist with the question: how does a sign signify reality?, and if we do not allow ourselves to invoke resemblance, then we are led towards the idea that some *form of activity*, specifically human activity, is required to link the two. This reading inevitably introduces relativity into the theory of meaning and reference, a relativity to human activity and the community of language-users. These are familiar themes in Wittgenstein’s later philosophy, and in post-modern thought generally.

This line of thought will be resisted by those who want to preserve a non-relativistic, (purely) ‘objective’ philosophy. One such resistance is provided by causal semantics, probably in combination with the materialist theory of content: the dynamic relation between sign and reality is defined in causal terms, and the reality in terms of the basic natural sciences. No subjectivity or relativity here. These alternative approaches are considered and rejected elsewhere (Sections 2.5 and 4.3–4.4). In this section we shall pursue the Wittgensteinian approach, which as indicated leads us towards relativity. In the next section, however, we go on to argue that this relativity does not dispose of but rather re-defines the notion of objectivity, in a way, moreover, suited to the sciences.

Wittgenstein begins his *Philosophical Investigations* very simply, by citing the fact that people engage in cooperative activity, such as building, using
language for communication. This is to be the starting-place for the theory of meaning and language. Starting-place means: it is not derived from deeper assumptions. In particular, it is not to be explained away by other theories of meaning and language (such as the ones described above). Given that meaning is grounded in action, the notion of order makes its appearance in the following way: the activity which is the origin of meaning is not random, but is ordered, essentially ‘right’ or ‘wrong’. We may express the fact that practice is ordered by saying that it proceeds in accordance with a rule. This concept of ordered practice, practice which follows a rule, is what replaces the traditional concepts of static representation, expressed in the theories of universals, ideas of perception, picture-propositions, of truth-conditions as states of affairs; and so forth.

In their most pure expressions, these traditional theories of meaning are alien to the idea that signs are used through time, in practice, according to a rule. Nothing needs to be done to create meaning. But, if something has to be said about the use of (ordinary) signs in practice, it will be this: the order—the distinction between right and wrong—in practice and in our use of signs, will be secondary to and based in, an order that is already given; either in the nature of ‘real signs’, or in some mental act. Deconstruction of various expressions of this general idea is the main negative theme in Wittgenstein’s treatment of judgement and rule-following in the Investigations, beginning at about Section 134. The contrary and new conclusion for which Wittgenstein argues may be summarized briefly thus: meaning—the rule—is not determined in advance.

The simplest account of the rule for using a sign would be that the sign itself determines its application. This account does not refer to the ordinary signs of language, but rather to pictures or exemplars that resemble what they are supposed to represent. Even so, the attempt to explain meaning in terms of the intrinsic nature of a sign only works if it is supposed that the sign is not used at all. For the idea was that the picture simply represents how things stand; nothing is done with the picture, so there is no question of doing different things with it. But once we grant that signs are used, for example in our activities of collecting things together, it becomes apparent that signs themselves can dictate no method of application, and hence no meaning. Any sign, whether verbal or pictorial, can be used in a variety of ways. It is this use that is the source of meaning, not the object itself (Wittgenstein 1953, Sections 139–141; cf. Section 1.2.1).

Another possibility is that the rule for the use of a sign is simply what its use is intended to be. According to this kind of account, a child who is learning the use of the word ‘chair’ by being shown examples, must try to see what meaning the teacher has in mind. And if the child goes on to make a mistake, applying
the word to a sofa, say, the suggestion is that this counts as a mistake because it conflicts with the meaning that was intended, and which has been already given to the word. Wittgenstein considers this suggestion using an analogy with continuing an arithmetical series (Wittgenstein 1953, Sections 143f. and 185f.). Suppose we teach a child to expand the series ‘+2’, giving examples at the beginning. The child then proceeds alone, correctly up to 1000, but then continues: 1004, 1008, 1012. We could point out the mistake, and the child may make corrections. What requires definition, however, is the sense in which a ‘mistake’ has been made. Or: why is 1002 the *right* number to write after 1000? According to the suggestion under consideration, the answer is that this is what we meant the pupil to do when we gave the instruction to continue the series ‘+2’ from the examples given. Meaning is conceived here as a kind of intention that defines *in advance* the expansion of the formula, or, in general, the correct use of a sign. But the objection is that we cannot lay down all the steps in advance, because there are infinitely many of them.

On the other hand, a series of judgements about the world, say the classification of many things into one class (as opposed to a numerical series), may reflect an independent, objective regularity, and in this case understanding how to use the description, e.g. ‘This is red’ is a matter of perceiving and representing that regularity. It may follow then that there would be a truly informative expression of the rule for using the sentence, namely, a table with the word written opposite a sample of red. Understanding the word would then be acquaintance with such a table in the mind, a mental state that underlies and explains the practice of making judgements. Wittgenstein shows, however, that this kind of suggestion does not work (Wittgenstein 1953, Sections 156 to ca. 171). The problem is that expressions of rules, such as tables, can be ‘read’ in various ways, that they can determine no unique usage. Or again, expressions of rules, of whatever kind, admit of many ‘interpretations’. These interpretations can be expressed by more expressions of rules, for example by more tables, perhaps with more or less complicated systems of arrows linking signs and samples, but such further expressions of rules are again open to various interpretations, to diverse applications. So one difficulty is that a particular expression of a rule, together with any number of expressions for its interpretation, can be used in various ways. But the further and related difficulty is that they can also be used in entirely random ways, *in ways that do not follow a rule at all.*

The conclusion is, then, that we cannot capture the notion of following a rule in terms of the intrinsic nature of the sign, or its intended use, nor in terms of expressions of rules. This is the negative conclusion of Wittgenstein’s discussion of rule following.  

—This negative conclusion may be expressed also by saying
that nothing short of order *in practice* will count as rule-following; that is, nothing short of making judgements (in words or in action) which are right as opposed to wrong. And this points towards a more positive doctrine, to the effect that *following a rule is a practice*. In Section 201, Wittgenstein refers to the difficulties which arise when we try to define action according to a rule in terms of interpretations of expressions of rules, which in turn require further interpretations, and so on. But he continues (Wittgenstein 1953, Sections 201–202):

> What this shows is that there is a way of grasping a rule which is *not* an interpretation, but which is exhibited in what we call “obeying the rule” and “going against it” in actual cases.

> Hence there is an inclination to say: every action according to the rule is an interpretation. But we ought to restrict the term “interpretation” to the substitution of one expression of the rule for another.

> And hence also “obeying a rule” is a practice. …

Nothing short of ordered practice will count as obeying a rule. In particular, no amount of mental manipulation of expressions of rules is sufficient. There are of course mental processes, conscious and unconscious, involved in rule-guided practice: processes such as feelings of recognition of items in the environment, feelings of being guided by samples, inspection of samples, tables, formulae, etc. But the activity that results from such processes may or may not be ordered (rational, intelligent). Whether someone is or is not following a rule depends on what they do in practice; e.g. on what items they call or treat as the same. Only if a person’s judgements and actions are of a certain kind do we say that she is ‘going by regularities in the world’. Our concept of regularities in the world is of a piece with our concept of regularities in action. This is an aspect of the correspondence between reality and thought.

The concept of following a rule cannot be explained in terms of perception of regularities in the world, since following a rule and perceiving regularities come to the same thing. In a similar way, the practice of following a rule cannot be explained in terms of *reason*. Here the point is not that we have no reasons for proceeding as we do, but rather that our reasons run out. Wittgenstein writes (1953, Section 211):

> How can he *know* how he is to continue a pattern by himself—whatever instruction you give him?—Well, how do *I* know?—If that means “have I reasons?” the answer is: my reasons will soon give out. And then I shall act, without reasons.

Reasons comes to an end once we have described, in the various ways in which we can describe, the fact that we are following the rule. We can, for example, refer to our training, saying that we are carrying on as we were taught, or we may point to a sample, saying that it guides us, etc. But if someone were to press the question: but why call *this* the same way as before?
or why is this near enough to the sample?, then sooner or later we run out of answers, and carry on regardless, in the way we are inclined. The concept of following a rule—of ordered judgement and practice—is (of course) a very fundamental one, and does not rest on any more fundamental notion of reason. To say that someone is following a rule so far means, among other things, that they are acting rationally.

The rules followed in practice and in our use of signs are not laid down in advance, by pictures, or by acts of mind; rather they are formed in practice, as we take action which is right or wrong. Nor can following a rule be explained in terms of an independently defined ‘following of regularities’, nor in terms of independently defined ‘reasons’. Right or wrong practice is not derived from a more fundamental principle of order: the practice itself is what is fundamental. The conclusion is that the origin of the rule—of meaning, of the measure of reality—is neither more nor less than our natural inclination to proceed in one way rather than another.

But now the paradox is: in what sense is there a rule here at all?! We have considered attempts to define an order already made, but apparently there is none. But then, what kind of order is it that can be made up as we go along? Why is one way of proceeding any more ‘correct’ than any other?

Towards the end of his discussion of rule-following, Wittgenstein begins to speak of shared practice and judgement. Thus, obeying a rule is a custom (Wittgenstein 1953, Section 198); a rule cannot be obeyed privately (ibid. Section 202), the word ‘agreement’ and the word ‘rule’ are related to one another, they are cousins (ibid. Section 224).

The implication of Wittgenstein’s remarks here may be that a person’s practice accords with a rule insofar as it is shared with other people. However, the justification for such a move at this stage of Wittgenstein’s discussion of rule-following is far from clear. So far it has been established what following a rule is not; it is not to follow what is laid down in advance in some act of meaning, or in some expression of a rule. But what is the justification of a move from this negative conclusion to the positive conclusion that following a rule is a matter of being in accord with other people? Why is agreement in practice either a necessary or a sufficient condition of following a rule? It is difficult to see why mere numbers should make a difference to the issue. On the one hand, we can imagine a group of people all acting and speaking in similar ways, but apparently without rhyme or reason. On the other, we can presumably imagine a person on his own—perhaps on a desert island—acting and using signs in an orderly way, regardless of any relation to a present, past, or hypothetical community. It is by all means the case that people (usually) do live in communities, and that their rule-following practices are shared. It may also be true
to say, on biological and psychological grounds, that children have to be taught how to act and how to use signs, so that in fact no human being could ever come to follow a rule in isolation from others. But such empirical considerations and speculations so far fail to bring out the conceptual connection between rule-following and agreement. Nor is it clear that the empirical facts uniformly support such a connection. Frequently we do have to follow rules on our own; others are not so preoccupied with us that they attend to, offer guidance on, or pass opinion on our every move.

We suggest that the point is not that we ascribe rule-following to groups as opposed to individuals; rather, we make the ascription in both cases and on the same grounds, namely, to the extent that we find practices, whether group or individual, comprehensible.

This point about grounds for ascription of rule-following indicates a radically different way of introducing the notion of agreement into the arena. The notion of agreement is relevant to the judgement whether a person’s practice is rule-governed, not because a person cannot follow a rule without others there to share it, but because, if the judgement is made at all, it is made by other people, and then on the basis of whether they can follow and share in the person’s activity. This can be expressed by saying that agreement is relevant to judgement about rule-following because one person is the measure of another. When a person is inclined to make a judgement, he or she supposes that the judgement is correct. What seems right, is right, so far as the person is concerned. Under what conditions, then, do we say that the other is following the rule? The answer is clear: when the other does what we are ourselves inclined to do. In this way, so far as a person is concerned, the notion of agreement with his or her own judgement is intertwined with the notion of following a rule. Agreement is critical in the same way to related notions such as intentionality and rationality.

The clearest cases of agreement are those in which two people are inclined to proceed in the same way, but there are of course other, critical possibilities related to these straightforward cases. In order to judge that the other is following some rule or other, it is not necessary that their practice be the same as one’s own; it is enough to see some sense in what the person is doing. This involves acknowledgement that the other’s action is right (reasonable, understandable), given his or her purposes and experience. Understanding the other is like understanding oneself: both are a matter of acknowledging inclinations to action. We experience tendencies and responses in directions other than those in which we act on. These inclinations to action—these meanings—can be seen at work in the actions of others, which therefore make sense, even though these actions are unlike our own. Mutual understanding has to be achieved in the midst of individual differences.
Thus we come by this route to conclusions similar to those already reached in the previous section, namely, that understanding of intentionality in others is based in empathy (straightforward or otherwise). This coincidence is to be expected, in view of the intimate connection between intentionality and rule-following. Examination of the concept of rule-following leads to the conclusion that subjective inclinations form the basis of expectations about the behaviour of others.

However, unlike the considerations in the previous section concerning empathy in knowledge of intentionality, the considerations so far in this section concerning rule-following do not apply only to expectations about social behaviour, but rather to judgement in general, including about the natural (apart from the social) world. This great generality is of course typical of philosophical enquiry, and is to be expected of Wittgenstein’s analysis of what it means to follow a rule.

The argument that rules are formed in practice outlined above includes the point that the concept of following a rule cannot be explained in terms of perception of regularities in the world: following a rule and perceiving regularities come to the same thing. This means that subjective responses to reality, the inclination to act in one way rather than another (e.g. to treat this as the same as or different to that) form the basis of judgements about sameness and difference, classes and properties, in the natural world. This conclusion stands opposed to those various doctrines described at the start of this section, according to which meanings are static measures that reflect pre-given order in reality. If we are to speak in the present context of measures, it would be ourselves, our responses to reality.

The implication is that our concept of reality is thoroughly interwoven with interpersonal relations, with the comparison of views. The position is not, however, that the notion of reality collapses into the notion of agreement. This is too simple, and it neglects the role of reality as independent of judgement. In the course of action through time, a person proceeds in the way she judges to be right. If another person agrees, then what seems right to the one seems right also to the other; but this does not yet mean that they are right. Agreement does not turn ‘seems’ into ‘is’. But then what is the relation between appearance and reality? All we have concluded so far, in the absence of rigid, fixed measures, is that human responsiveness is the vehicle of representation. And so far as this measure is concerned (and in fact the same would apply to any measure), what seems right, is right. These points are pursued below.

By considering Wittgenstein’s treatment of rule-following we have arrived at the conclusion that the human being is the measure of things, with its puzzling and disturbing implication that the distinction between ‘seems’ and ‘is’, between appearance and reality, seems to collapse. Although it represents a
diversion from the mainly contemporary focus of the present essay, it can hardly be allowed to escape our attention that this problem had a lively though brief airing at the beginnings of western philosophical thought. Since, for reasons to be indicated below, the problem in this form has only recently been revived, it is worthwhile to consider briefly its fate in Plato. The claim that man is the measure was one of the three interconnected doctrines criticized and rejected by Socrates in the *Theaetetus*.

And it has turned out that these three doctrines coincide: the doctrine of Homer and Heracleitus and all their tribe that all things move like flowing streams; the doctrine of Protagoras, wisest of men, that Man is the measure of all things; and Theaetetus’ conclusion that, on these grounds, it results that perception is knowledge. (*Theaetetus*, 160D-E; translation from Cornford 1935.)

Socrates criticizes all of these doctrines, but the most sustained argument is directed at the doctrine of Protagoras, that the human being is the measure of things. This doctrine means, according to Socrates, that individual things are to me such as they appear to me, and to you such as they appear to you (152–152C). Socrates argues that this doctrine has no place for the concept of falsity, and is therefore wrong. The claim is that the doctrine can give no account of false judgement, since it implies that all judgements are true. Or again: if the human being is the measure of things, there would be no distinction between subjective appearance and reality, indeed there would be no concept of objective reality. Socrates’ claim, in brief, was that if the human being is the measure of things, then there is loss of objectivity.

This Socratic interpretation has been of enormous significance, setting the scene for struggles between scepticism, the claim that knowledge is impossible, and various forms of dogmatism, which claimed for knowledge an absolute, non-relative, and therefore non-human, basis. Common to both scepticism and dogmatism was the assumption that knowledge, if it exists at all, must have absolute foundations. Behind this was the assumption that beliefs acquired by relative measures involved subjectivity, that is to say, absence of objectivity. The relative measures delivered results dependent on the point of view: on sensory capacity, on relative position; on culture and ideology; and so on. But these shifting, apparently incompatible representations could hardly be representations of the one, independent reality. If this was to be known at all, there had to be absolute measures. Reason, as conceived in rationalist epistemology, and experience as conceived by empiricism, were the two absolute measures in modern thought. As these lost credibility through the nineteenth century, relativity has made its appearance in the twentieth century. This long-lost, newly re-discovered relativity has been both resisted and welcomed, both on the grounds that it involves loss of (absolute) objectivity.
But what is lost is neither more nor less than the idea of an absolute, non-relative object. The idea of a ‘relativistic object’ remains, involved in the relativistic epistemology, though by all means such a notion of object is not the traditional one. But in any case it is wrong to suppose that relativity implies subjectivity without objectivity; on the contrary, it is obvious enough in general terms that relativity involves both subject and object in interaction.

The notion of objectivity that belongs properly with relativity is in fact familiar to common sense and language, but it is obscured by deep theoretical preconceptions. Socrates in the *Theaetetus* criticises Protagoras’ doctrine because it offers no account of false judgement, but the everyday examples of being right rather than wrong or vice versa which are cited in fact and of course do not turn on absolute standards. Rather the distinctions turn on mundane features of judgement that turn out to be quite compatible with the claim that human beings are the measure. Thus Socrates notes that a skilled person is good at achieving an intended result (167B–C), and that people disagree (170D–E), and there are cases where we know that not every person’s opinion can be correct; as for example when a patient disagrees with his doctor about the future course of his illness, or when legislators dispute whether some law will be advantageous to the state (177C–179C). Thus Socrates illustrates the ways in which a person’s judgement can be or can be judged by others to be false, even though it seems right to the person at the time. The examples are of course taken from everyday life, in which activities achieve or fail to achieve their goals, and in which expectations are realized or not, and in which people agree with one another or not. But then it is not all obvious why Protagoras’ doctrine should be unable to account for the notion of false judgement defined in these ways. On the contrary, the doctrine arguably comprises such grounds for normative distinctions, in the following way. If the human being, specifically in activity, is the measure of things, then this measure will be ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ accordingly as it fulfils or does not fulfil its goals. Further, since the measuring activity is extended through time, results obtained at one time may accord or conflict with results obtained later: judgements as predictions turn out ‘right’ or ‘wrong’. Further, the human measures are multiple, and insofar as human beings differ from one another, they will disagree in the results of their measurement.

Judgement, whether in words or action, is made from a particular perspective, on the basis of particular sensory mechanisms and information, and on the basis of certain background expectations. Judgement, which consists in the inclination to say or do something, is to the effect that *this* is how things are. At the time, there is no distinction between ‘seems’ and ‘is’, between appearance and reality. The distinction can be entertained at the time however,
for example with the words: ‘It seems so to me now, but I may be wrong’. But what enables this thought, and what enables the distinction to be made, is the fact that judgement made from one perspective may conflict with judgement made from another, for example by another person, or by oneself at a later time. In brief, the appearance/reality distinction is based in comparison between appearances. This central point was anticipated above (Section 3.2) in discussing the relation between theory and empathy in the developing mind, and it recurs again in the next section (Section 3.4) in the definition of the objectivity in intentional attributions. The relativistic way of making out the distinction between appearance and reality, in terms of comparison between appearances, stands in contrast to the idea common to dogmatism and scepticism alike, that reality lies behind the appearances, independent of them. This idea by all means holds onto a fixed reality behind the flux, but the cost is typically that knowledge of this reality tends to be insolubly problematic, at least for human beings. The relative measures are apparently all we have, and it is not clear how they signify a non-relative reality. This problematic was manifest in Classical thought and is also one way of expressing the modern (seventeenth century) problem of knowledge (Section 1.1.1).

The relativistic account of appearance and reality gives a central place to agreement between appearances, between observers. On the other hand, agreement is not all that is at issue here. In general terms, the aim of judgement is not just to agree with others, but is also to find agreement with reality. So far, particularly in consideration of Wittgenstein’s discussion of rule following, the focus has been on agreement between people rather than on correspondence with reality. This emphasis may arise particularly when we have in mind the use of language. Insofar as language is a conventional means of representation, and particularly insofar as we do share language, it may seem as if agreement on the rule is primarily what matters. But according to Wittgenstein’s own account, language has meaning (is language) because it is used in activity, for example, in the course of building. When we turn attention to the practical consequences of using signs in one way rather than another, then we see what is obvious, that our use of language is not at all subject only to conventional constraints, a matter of agreement with others. On the contrary, language is used in our activity, and it is subject to the same constraints in reality, as is our practice.

For example, imagine a person building a shelter. She makes separate collections of different kinds of stone, each with its own name. On one occasion she makes a mistake, putting a round stone in the pile of square ones. When she comes to put this stone in place in the building, it does not fit; she has to start again; or perhaps, in a more complicated case, she is bewildered, and gives up.
So the person made an error, in her action and her use of words. But this is not simply in the sense that other people would call it an error, nor indeed only because the person concerned would call it an error. Rather, the error shows up because her course of action goes astray; it is disrupted.

The importance of practical constraints has usually been neglected in commentary on Wittgenstein’s discussion of rule-following. For example Kripke in his influential discussion imagines the strange case of a person who insists that the sum of 68 and 57 is 5, and he goes on to discuss in what sense this is an error, if not because of facts about past usage, then in terms of our inclination to disagree with him (Kripke 1980). But the application of arithmetic is not brought into the discussion. If someone used such a calculation in planning how much water he needs to cross a desert, then he would soon come to see that he had got it wrong—and if he remained adamant until the end, then he would be slow to learn as well as dead. In any case the error speaks for itself.

The consequences of incorrect judgement are evident, and they run their course regardless whether we agree among ourselves or not. Judgements guide activity; they lead us to anticipate certain events, certain patterns of action and consequence, and we plan our activity accordingly. If a judgement misleads us, so that our action is confounded, then that judgement has turned out to be wrong. Reality lets us know when we are in error; we take notice, and adapt, if we are to carry on. Another way of making this point is to say that action is interaction between the living being, the means of representation, and independent reality. Not everything in this interaction depends on the living being; and what is independent in the interaction is ‘reality’. Thus reality already appears in the appearances, which are therefore not ‘merely subjective’. I cannot, for example, make a closed door appear immaterial by walking through it.

Acknowledgement of relativity does not entail subjectivity or scepticism, an abandonment of the idea of objectivity. Objectivity can be defined in relativistic terms. Insofar as thought and language are used in practice, in the organization and planning of action, there are ‘objective’ constraints on them, and hence distinctions between getting it right and getting it wrong, or more or less right or wrong.

It is dialectically necessary to emphasize that there are real, practical constraints on judgement as well as, and as opposed to, accord or discord with other people. The relativistic point stands, however, that other perspectives, in the form of other people, help make up the individual’s view as to what is real and what is not. Our knowledge of reality is inextricably bound to interpersonal relations. In development, the point is the general one that social processes interact with individual cognitive development (Vygotsky 1934; Butterworth and
Light 1982; Hinde et al. 1985; Gellatly et al. 1989; Cummins 1998). At any age the point remains that much of our activity is social, dependent on mutual understanding and help: we cannot construct a tower, for example, if we cannot communicate about the building.

3.4 **Relativity and reality in the natural and bio-psychological sciences**

Relativity in the knowledge of intentionality raises problems concerning its objectivity. Insofar as relativity is taken to mean subjectivity as opposed to objectivity, then this purported knowledge will seem illusory, more apparent than real, particularly in comparison with what we expect from and find in the natural sciences.

It may on the other hand be possible to grant the predictive utility of intentional explanations without supposing that they posit anything objectively real. This would be a so-called *instrumentalist* (or perhaps ‘interpretationist’) as opposed to a *realist* construal of intentional language. This approach has advantages particularly if it is supposed that the only real states which intentional states could be are brain states, but it turns out, e.g. on connectionist grounds, that there are no brain states of the requisite kind (cf. Section 2.2).

Dennett’s views on these matters are appropriately complicated, and this is one way in which he sets off to explain his position (1988, p. 496):

> Sometimes attributions of belief appear entirely objective and unproblematic, and sometimes they appear beset with subjectivity and infected with cultural relativism. Catering to these two families of cases are two apparently antithetical theoretical options: realism, the view that beliefs are objective things in the head which could be discovered … by physiological psychology; and interpretationism, the view that attributing a belief is a highly relativistic undertaking …—“it all depends what you’re interested in”.

> It is a common mistake to see these alternatives as mutually exclusive and exhaustive. … My thesis is that while belief is a perfectly objective phenomenon (which apparently makes me a realist), it can be discerned only from the point of view of someone who adopts a certain predictive strategy, the intentional stance (which apparently makes me an interpretationist).

Dennett’s version of realism emphasizes the grounding of intentional attributions in patterns of activity more than correspondence with in-the-head items (Dennett 1988; cf. also Section 2.2). These patterns are typically not captured by physicalist descriptions: they are higher-order invariants which cut across physically (geometrically) defined movements, concerning such as variable routes to the same goal (Dennett 1988, and Section 1.2.2). Referring to hypothetical super-physicists who predict everything on the basis of a
completed physical theory, using therefore only the physical stance and not
the intentional stance, Dennett writes (1987, p. 37):

My view is, I insist, a sort of realism, since I maintain that the patterns the Martians
miss are really, objectively there to be noticed or overlooked. How could the Martians,
who “know everything” about the physical events in our world, miss these patterns?
What could it mean to say that some patterns, while objectively there, are visible only
from one point of view?

Now of course invariance relations as such are not problematic in science or
philosophy, but in the present case the particular problem seems to be their
relativity to the observer. On this point Dennett writes (1987, p. 39):

I claim that the intentional stance provides a vantage point for discerning … useful
patterns. These patterns are objective—they are there to be detected—but from our
point of view they are not out there entirely independent of us, since they are patterns
composed partly of our own “subjective” reactions to what is out there; they are the
patterns made to order for our narcissistic concerns …

The question is whether our patterns of intentionality are objectively real
(like the invariance relations recognized in physics and chemistry), or whether
they are more like beauty. Dennett steers a course here between objectivity
and subjectivity, though one indeed which he has had repeatedly to explain
and defend. Thus Dennett, (1987, p. 37):

Perhaps the major source of disquiet about my position over the years has been its
delicate balancing act on the matter of the observer-relativity of attributions of belief
and other mental states. On my view, is belief attribution (or meaning) in the eye of
the beholder? Do I think there are objective truths about what people believe, or do I
claim that all attributions are just useful fictions?

In what follows we propose a position like Dennett’s in that it tries to define
a notion of objectivity as well as of subjectivity in attributions of intentionality.
It rests on relativistic definitions of the kind invoked so far in this section. The
assumption that relativity involves subjectivity as opposed to objectivity was
criticized in the preceding subsection. It was argued there that with relativity
we lose the notion of absolute objectivity, but we gain instead a relativistic
notion. Fundamental to the relativistic definition are the following points: the
‘object’ is that which in an interaction is independent of the subject’s control,
and further, is that which appears from different points of view (in different
interactions). The ‘absolute’ object, by contrast, is defined independently of
any interactions with the subject of knowledge. In the context of a relativistic
epistemology, finding relativity in any particular domain of knowledge is so
far nothing to get excited about. Relativity looks problematic, of course, only
against the background of absolutist preconceptions, only if we think that
knowledge ought to be, or in the paradigm case is, relativity-free. And this is where a certain view of the sciences makes its appearance. The idea would be that the best or most fundamental science that we have, physics, just describes reality as it is, untainted by anything like relativity (subjectivity). Such a view assigns physics (and perhaps chemistry) a privileged position as compared with the rest of the sciences, and suggests that any theory which wants to envisage intentionality, with its manifest observer-relativity, is in danger of falling off the edge of the scientific world.

Therefore the question presses: what notion of objectivity is in fact presupposed by physics, the absolute or the relativistic? The latter answer is at least superficially suggested by the fact that we live in the age of Relativity Theory, as opposed to Newtonian mechanics. Is the notion of relativity in the new physics anything to do with the relativity evident in psychology, or is it just the case—as many suppose—that there is here verbal coincidence? Within the Special Theory of Relativity, observers in different positions in space-time measure spatio-temporal relations with different results. The results of measurement depend partly on the nature of the observer with respect to the quantities being measured. In this sense, measurement is an ‘interaction’ between observer and observed. Differences in results are apparent insofar as the observers differ (with respect to the quantities being measured). However, these differences do not imply that the various results obtained are incompatible with one another: the apparent incompatibility is resolved by taking into account the differences between observers. There are rules linking results obtained from one spatio-temporal framework to results obtained from another, these being the so-called Lorentz transformations. Contrary to what is presupposed in Newtonian mechanics, there is no privileged framework for measurement, and no ‘absolute’ length of an object, nor ‘absolute’ time of an event: spatio-temporal relations are always relative to one or another framework from which they are measured.

Let us take what is by all means a long jump, from physics to psychology, to the ‘measurement’ of mental states. Knowledge of such states depends partly on the nature of the observer with respect to the qualities being measured, i.e. on the mental states of the observer. In this sense knowledge of mental states is an interaction between observer and observed. Different results will be obtained to the extent that observers differ. But this apparent incompatibility can be resolved by taking into account differences between observers. There is no absolute truth concerning mental states on particular occasions: their measurement is always relative to the mental state of one or another observer. So far, then, the epistemology of mental states is formally similar to the epistemology of space-time. In this case there is no reason to say, indeed there is
reason to deny, that psychology is committed to a form of knowledge second-rate compared with that in physics; neither is there reason to doubt the reality of its objects, any more than there is to doubt the reality of spatio-temporal relations.

On the other hand, the argument has by all means made a long jump: knowledge of mental states seems and is very different from knowledge of physical magnitudes, in particular because subjectivity and relativity are much more apparent. Let us put down some stepping-stones. —Subjectivity and relativity become apparent to the extent that observers differ in respect of what is being measured. Since generally we share the same spatio-temporal framework, we agree in measurement of spatial and temporal relations. Likewise we have in common basic perceptual systems, so there is broad consensus concerning familiar perceptual properties of objects, including the so-called secondary qualities. The focus of the present discussion is, by contrast, the lack of agreement between observers in the attribution of intentionality, the manifest appearance of subjectivity and relativity. However, lack of agreement here is just what is expected from the point of view of a relativistic epistemology. To the extent that the measures differ (with respect to what is being measured), the results of measurement also vary, and in the particular case of mentality and intentionality there are high degrees of individual differences.

Along the phylogenetic scale there is increasing systemic organization and increasing differentiation of species. Along the ontogenetic scale in humans, there is also increasing systemic organization and increasing differences among individuals. There is in both cases a logical connection between increasing complexity of systemic function and increasing differentiation (individuality). The ‘higher’ behaviour of human beings, and the mentality which regulates it, represents the extreme of biological, or bio-psychological, differentiation. This differentiation characterizes both the ‘object’ of measurement and the measuring instrument. Here, then, we find most disagreement. But this does not mean that subjectivity and relativity arise in knowledge for the first time, still less that there can really be no knowledge here. On the contrary, subjectivity and relativity characterizes all (empirical) knowledge. It is just that what was before hidden among what we have in common becomes apparent in our differences. Disagreement in judgement concerning the intentionality at work in higher behaviour is a logical consequence of individual differences in cognitive organization.

Agreement in judgement is greatest in those respects in which people are alike in constitution and competence, e.g. in judgement whether a needle is at a certain position on a dial, or whether such-and-such is red. But as perception, cognition and emotion become more complex, individuality is
increasingly apparent. And since the perception of psychologic depends on psychological characteristics of the perceiver, this perception may vary from person to person. Indeed a person may fail entirely to register a desire, say, in another, if the person knows such motivation in his or her own case. The measurement of higher cognitive-affective phenomena will certainly be less reliable in a group picked at random than measurement of, say, the number of ticks on a questionnaire. This reflects the individuality of human beings in the relevant respects. But agreement will be apparent insofar as observers are alike in respect of the qualities being observed. The implication is that even the most complex psychological interpretation of behaviour can be reliable among observers, provided they are similar with respect to cognitive-affective characteristics.

The above remarks concern reliability. Let us consider now validity, which refers to accuracy of measurement, or truth, and is not secured by reliability alone. In an epistemology that takes interaction as fundamental, there is no place for a conception of truth as static correspondence between measure and what is measured (cf. Section 1.2). The appropriate conception of truth is dynamic, to do with interactions and relations between them, and indeed turns out to be closely connected to reliability. All attempts at measurement, as interactions, are valid in the restricted sense of providing information. The procedure of observation produces a certain result, which is real, and which in principle at least isrepeatable. The result depends on qualities in the measure and qualities in the object measured. The question then arises as to what is due to one or the other. This question, however, cannot be answered on the basis of a single case. The distinction between objective and subjective arises not in one appearance but in many. Roughly, features that are common in many interactions are defined as due to qualities in the object, and those which are particular to any one are defined as due to qualities in the subject. The concept of interaction is fundamental, and the concepts of ‘subject’ and ‘object’ are derivative. This idea is fundamental to theory in various areas of psychology (Hundert 1989) including development (e.g. Piaget 1955; Russell 1995) and personality (e.g. Bowers 1973; Mischel 1979).

A valid observation may be defined as one which correctly represents the object. Bearing in mind the above conception of object, we may say that a reliable observation, i.e. one constant between several observers (or conditions of observation), is already valid. On the other hand, we have the idea that reliable observation can still be wrong. However, according to relativistic epistemology, this possibility of error is not to be understood in terms of failure to correspond to an absolute object. It concerns rather failure to predict correctly the results of further measurement. The ‘object’ is revealed in, and is defined
in terms of, its interactions with measuring instruments. Thus the valid measurement—the one true to the object—is that which correctly predicts the results of other measurements. In brief, validity is a matter of generalizability, and the distinction between validity and reliability becomes blurred. The intimate connection between agreement and truth falls out as a natural consequence of relativistic philosophy, whereas according to a simple correspondence theory of truth it has to remain fundamentally obscure. This relativistic idea is clearly expressed in contemporary statistical theory of reliability and validity. Generalizability Theory blurs the distinction between the two, in contrast to the so-called classical definition of validity in terms of the ‘true score’ (Cronbach et al. 1963).

The above remarks concern judgement generally but of course apply to attributions of intentionality, the topic of this chapter. The implication is that any attribution of intentionality (or meaning) provides information concerning the observer and what is observed. To the extent that the judgement provides the former only, it tells us nothing about the object of judgement; it is subjective and invalid. Still we may infer something, concerning the one making the judgement, for example that he or she always sees the same meanings, and is inclined always to say roughly the same thing. Conversely, to the extent that a judgement provides information about the person being observed, we may infer correct predictions concerning what he or she will do in various circumstances. To the extent that a judgement supports such predictions, it is objective and valid. Thus we arrive at the unsurprising conclusion (implicit throughout the first chapter) that attribution of meaning is objectively valid insofar as it takes account of and successfully predicts the relevant observable phenomena.

The proposal is, then, that relativity in knowledge of intentional states does not in itself imply that the objects of such knowledge are less real than the objects known to physical theory. Perception of patterns of intentionality depends partly on our subjective reactions and concerns, that is to say, on intentional characteristics of the perceiver. But results of measurement of spatio-temporal magnitudes also depend partly on the observer’s relevant characteristics, namely, position in space and time. In both cases subjectivity is combined with objectivity: measurement made from one point of view can be right or wrong, this distinction being drawn by reference to measurements made from other points of view.

To say that physics is free of observer-relativity, while higher-level sciences such as psychology are not, marks the distinction in entirely the wrong way, in any case in an out of date way, and to say on these grounds that the one deals with reality (or real reality) while the other deals with convenient (or inconvenient)
fictions compounds the error. Another way of marking the differences is needed now, and it has nothing to do with the reality of physical objects as opposed to the unreality of everything else. Rather it falls out of what is fundamental to the new epistemology, namely, the nature of the measure and its sensitivity. The distinction between physics and the behavioural sciences lies not in the absence as opposed to the presence of observer-relativity, but rather in the nature of the measuring instruments and consequently in the nature of what is measured; and this distinction is not absolute, but is a gradation. Measurement of spatio-temporal relations presupposes observers within space-time using spatio-temporal measures, rods and clocks. But there are more and different kinds of measures in reality that are not the concern of physics. Biology and psychology study sensory and cognitive systems of increasing complexity that are sensitive to patterns of similarity and difference in the environment relevant to life, action and social intercourse (cf. Chapter 6). Along the phylogenetic and ontogenetic scales, these measures of reality become increasingly differentiated, diverse and individual, with consequent manifestation of subjectivity and relativity of measurement. However, what is perceived by the bio-psychic measures are no less real from the point of view of those measures than space and time are to the observer limited to the use of rods and clocks. The point is rather that the bio-psychic measures are sensitive to differences in reality to which the measuring instruments of physics are not.

Another aspect of the same point is that the content of bio-psychological representational states cannot be captured in physicalist, materialist terms (in Section 2.5). Biology and psychology are the sciences that (unlike physics and chemistry) use the concepts of functional behaviour regulated by information processing and informational content. They invoke such concepts in order to achieve adequate explanation of interactions between living systems and their environment, and the criterion of content appropriate to such explanation is fundamentally behavioural. In general, the content of informational states, what they are about, is defined in terms of interaction, with explicit or implicit reference to the capacities and aims of the living being (Section 2.5, also 4.4 below). In the context of the present discussion the point is that this definition of meaning broadens out the notions of representation and what is represented beyond what can be described in terms of the natural sciences, to include also the bio-psychological measures and the realities they represent. The bio-psychological measures—living beings—are sensitive to aspects of reality which are salient to action; these aspects include some of, though in other respects exceed, those aspects accessible to the measures of physics.

A working assumption of cognitive-behavioural science is that (‘higher’) behaviour is to be explained in terms of regulation by mental states which
carry processed information. Definition of the processed information carried by mental states involved in the regulation of action will include reference to its regulatory, or causal, role. Now it is also a conceptual truth that mental states represent reality. Integrating these two characterizations of mental states leads towards the idea that reality is—to put it briefly—that which is encountered in action. Another way of putting this point is to say that the reality represented in perception and thought is relative to cognitive processes within the living being, processes which serve in the regulation of activity.

This kind of approach to the definition of reality belongs with cognitive-behavioural science, but it runs counter to several preconceptions of the traditional scientific world-picture. It is incompatible with materialism, since the reality encountered as relevant to action cannot generally be defined in the terms of physics. Beneath materialism lies a still deeper metaphysical prejudice, that reality should be defined independently of any reference to the subject. But the reality of action obviously cannot be defined in this way: it is an interaction between subject and object, between the living being and its environment.

This approach also runs counter to traditional dogmatic circumscribing of the boundaries of thought. If there are a priori categories of thought, they will be determined by what it means to be a living being; they will be biological and psychological categories, not primarily categories of physics and chemistry. Here would be included, for example, information concerning orientation in space and time, consumption of food (energy), threat, reproduction, and so on, and also, where appropriate, information necessary to social interaction, for example concerning the meaning of conventional signs. Underlying such definitions of content are assumptions concerning the aims of action. It is a moot point, however, whether the aims of action and therefore the categories of thought can be circumscribed a priori. As noted above, the phylogenetic and ontogenetic scales are characterized by increasing complexity and differentiation of function: ends become served by increasingly diverse means, and new ends and means appear. For human beings in particular the purposes of action and the contents of thought are diverse and unlimited.

The impossibility of circumscribing the content of human thought is connected partly to our use of language: in language diverse and unlimited ‘meanings’ become available as guides for action. This claim follows on from rejection of attempts to define the meaning of language and thought a priori, in particular from rejection of empiricist and materialist (positivist) definitions of meaning. Further, the content of thought as expressed in language apparently exceeds what is relevant to the necessities of life as envisaged by (evolutionary) biology.
To illustrate this point, consider the case of a person perceiving a shadow in the darkness. This perception may cause the belief that something rectangular-shaped is present, or further, the belief that there is danger, but also, given the requisite pre-existing system of thought, for which presumably language is required, the perception may give rise to the belief that there is concealed in the shadows an angel carrying a message. The first content can be defined in terms of physics, and can be envisaged by empiricist and materialist accounts of meaning; the first and the second content can be envisaged by (evolutionary) biology; but the third is the thought of a reality far removed from what can be defined in the terms of those philosophical and scientific theories.

All three types of content, however, have to be envisaged by psychology as a cognitive-behavioural science. The third is no less relevant than the first two to the cognitive explanation and prediction of behaviour. Psychology has to acknowledge whatever mental content makes a difference. The logic of psychological explanation and prediction is of course all the same whether the cognitive states invoked are true or false, scientifically valid or otherwise. For the purposes of explanation, psychology is not committed to the reality of the object of thought, only to the reality of the thought and its effects in action.

The answer to the general question as to how we determine mental content is that we observe what people do and listen to what they say, and compare one with the other. The content of thought revealed by these methods exceeds what is countenanced by traditional dogmatic attempts to circumscribe the objects of thought. In general the behavioural criterion of mental content is an empirical one, dependent on observation. It stands opposed to preconceptions about what thought and the reality represented in thought must be like. The proposal is, then, that it is impossible to proscribe the meanings at work in the regulation of action. The point is not that no categories of thought are fixed for us, only that not all are. Our position in the nature described by physics, and our position as living beings within nature as described by biology, provides the basis for, and places constraints on, all action and therefore all meaning.

As already noted in the previous and in the present section, inter-subjectivity is fundamental to the relativistic definition of thought and reality. This aspect of relativity is still further removed from and alien to empiricist and materialist theories. They conceive thought solipsistically: the subject represents sense-experience or physical reality, in which realms other people appear as a special, though according to fundamental theory not so special, case.

The appearance of conflict here between relativistic and dogmatic philosophies over the role of inter-subjectivity is genuine, not superficial. It is specifically not a matter of a philosophical theory of cognitive content (e.g. a materialist one)
running parallel to, above or below, empirical theory that recognizes the role of the interpersonal in cognition. The empirical theory (such as was mentioned at the end of the preceding section) does not belong with empiricism and materialism, but with *a priori* principles which make fundamental the role of the interpersonal in cognition. The concept of ‘reality’ can be defined generally at that which determines the correctness or otherwise of thought. If reality is defined as an absolute object, the only constraint on thought is the independent nature of the absolute object represented. This idea is found in all dogmatic philosophies, including materialism in its current form, and there is no essential connection between the true-or-false representation of reality and inter-subjectivity. In relativistic conceptions of measurement, however, what determines the correctness or otherwise of measurement is not correspondence or lack of correspondence with an absolute object, but is rather comparison, agreement or otherwise, between points of view. This communication is fundamental to reality, taking the place of the dogmatically postulated object.

3.5 **Summary**

The observer-relativity in knowledge of mind and meaning and the various problems to which it gives rise, have long been recognized (Section 3.1). The issues were approached in Section 3.2 by considering the role of empathy (mental simulation), as well as theory, in our knowledge of mind. The behaviour that signifies mental states itself has intentionality, and perception of this plausibly involves the observer’s own intentional states. Mental simulations construed as thought-experiments provide a fast, easy to perform means of experimenting with the causal relations among mental states and between mental states and tendencies to behaviour, and hence, along with observation of actual cases, can be part of the empirical basis of the theory of mind. Knowledge of mind, like other forms of empirical-theoretical knowledge, is surrounded by the possibility of error. The theory of empathy seems to give priority to first-person knowledge, with knowledge of oneself being the basis for understanding the other, but this appearance is deceptive: the simulations (or thought-experiments) in question are about intentional states and their connectedness, and attribution of the states and connections to this or that subject is a further step. This attribution involves both facility with perspectives and theory, the implication being that in developmental models we do not have to choose between the child’s increasing theoretical sophistication and the child’s increasing facility with perspectives: both are fundamental and they are logically linked.
In Section 3.3 we approached knowledge of intentionality by way of Wittgenstein’s discussion of rule-following. The notion of rule-following serves to capture the concept of order in reality and thought, as being through time, in activity, as opposed to being static, in the form of objects. The negative conclusion of Wittgenstein’s analysis of rule-following is that the rule is not laid down in advance; the positive implication is that it is created in practice. The concept of agreement enters here as critical. This is not, however, because agreement is a necessary or a sufficient condition of someone’s following a rule. The point is rather that one person’s judgement about another that they are following a rule, is based on the observer’s inclination to agree with what the other is doing. Relativity has traditionally been thought (since Plato’s critique in the Theaetetus) to imply subjectivity and the collapse of objectivity. What is lost, however, is (only) the notion of an absolute object. The object makes its appearance in many appearances, and as that which is not under the control of the observer.

In Section 3.4 it was noted that the relativity of attributions of intentionality, particularly in contrast to the objectivity in the physical sciences, seems to suggest that they describe no objective reality. On the other hand, consistent with the conclusions reached in the preceding section, it is argued that relativity pervades all the sciences, including physics. However, with increasing differentiation in phylogensis and ontogenesis, subjectivity in the form of individual differences is increasingly evident, both in the measures and in what is measured. In the context of relativity, validity and objectivity are defined in terms of multiple measurements made from different points of view, with comparisons and contrasts between them being dependent on invariance relations. Bio-psychological measures are sensitive to more and different aspects of reality as compared to those in the physical sciences. Contrary to what is envisaged by dogmatic philosophies such as empiricism and materialism, the implication of relativistic epistemology is that the reality we represent cannot be determined in advance, and is in its foundations interpersonal.

Endnotes

1. This paper brings together themes running through this chapter and Chapters 1 and 8. It is one of a collection of papers in two volumes (Davies and Stone 1995a, b) on comparisons and contrasts between empathy and theory-based epistemologies of mind.

2. Commentaries are numerous, and include for example Folgelin (1976), Kripke (1980), Pears (1988), and Stroud (1996). The treatment in the text of rule-following is most similar to the one in Bolton (1979), and discussion
of the closely related problem of form (or order) summarizes some points in Bolton (1982).

3. In his influential commentary, Kripke (1980, Chapter 2) argues that Wittgenstein’s analysis of rule-following leads to a major sceptical paradox about meaning, to the effect that there really is no such thing as meaning anything by a word. Kripke focuses on Wittgenstein’s negative arguments, concerning what following a rule is not, and in particular, on the conclusion that the rule is not laid down in advance. Kripke then infers that, according to Wittgenstein’s arguments, there is no rule, and hence no meaning. But he neglects Wittgenstein’s positive proposal, that the rule is made in practice, to which we now turn in the text. Similar rejoinders to Kripke have been made by other commentators, e.g. Pears (1988), McGinn (1984).

We may remark briefly on interesting positive proposals which Kripke goes on to make, which interact with the topics of the present chapter, and of the essay as a whole. He suggests (Kripke 1980, Chapter 3) that Wittgenstein does not rest content with the alleged sceptical paradox about rule-following and meaning, but rather offers a ‘sceptical solution’ to it, involving reference to the community. Kripke uses the expression ‘sceptical solution’ to recall Hume’s famous treatment of causality. Kripke notes (1980, pp. 66f.) that Hume’s sceptical solution involved two features of causal inferences: first, that they are based in custom (habit, or natural inclination), and secondly, that they pertain essentially to a number of cases, not to one in isolation. Plausibly considerations of these kinds play a role in Wittgenstein’s account of rule-following, as we shall see. However, it is not these features which make Hume’s solution a sceptical one. Hume’s positive account remains ‘sceptical’ because, according to it, causal inference is based in custom as opposed to reason (Hume 1777: V, I, 35–38). By contrast, Wittgenstein draws on a notion of custom (and natural inclination) in his account of rule-following, but such a notion is not opposed to reason. On the contrary, the account of rule-following is at the same time an account (or part of an account) of rationality, as discussed below in the text. A preconceived absolute definition of reason, against which the human measure is adversely compared, is a (or the) sure route to scepticism. And conversely, one way of avoiding scepticism is to countenance non-absolute, relativistic methods of representation and knowledge, as through this chapter.

4. The question whether an isolated individual, a Robinson Crusoe, could or could not follow a rule has been much debated in commentaries, usually in connection with Wittgenstein’s ‘private language argument’, for example

5. The following sketch is of course highly simplified and selective, emphasizing points to be taken up subsequently. For the interested reader unfamiliar with Relativity Theory, Einstein’s own popular exposition (1920) is the best introduction. Berstein’s commentary (1973) is excellent on the philosophical background of Einstein’s revolution. A purely philosophical treatment, emphasizing relations between Relativity Theory in physics and the ‘relativistic’ conception of measurement and knowledge generally, can be found in Bolton (1979); this gives a more detailed version of the argument in the text. The main proposal to be made is that observer-relativity characterizes the theory of measurement in contemporary physics. This point is made in connection with the Special Theory of Relativity because it appears there simply and clearly. The same point in much the same form appears also in the extended General Theory. The issue of observer-relativity in the other great foundation of contemporary physics, Quantum Mechanics, requires a different kind of treatment, even superficial consideration of which is beyond the scope of the present essay. That said, it may be noted at least that the issue arises there in a radical form.

References


4.1 **Introduction**

In the first chapter it was remarked that explanations of action in terms of mental states with meaning are effective in prediction, and the conclusion was drawn that such explanations must be, in some sense, causal. In the second chapter it was argued that the causal status of such explanations is compatible with the fact that the material causes of behaviour are in the brain, provided we assume that mental states are realized in brain states and in particular that the brain encodes meaning. In the third chapter we turned to issues concerning mind, meaning and objectivity. To some extent this was a diversion from the problem of meaning, and causality, although emphasis in that discussion on the close connection between meaning and relativity belongs with the emphasis throughout the essay on action, on organism–environment interactions. In this chapter we return to meaning and causality.

Our task, pursuing the conclusion of the first chapter, is to explicate the sense in which explanations in terms of meaningful mental states are causal. In accord with the conclusion of the second chapter, the task here is not to explicate a notion of immaterial as opposed to material causality, but is rather to explore the relation between causal explanation which does, and causal explanation which does not, appeal to the notion of encoded meaning (or information).

Meaningful states appear to be causes of behaviour, but also, they appear as effects of environmental causes. In the language of cognitive-behavioural psychology, cognitive (information-carrying) states mediate between stimuli and responses, being effects of the one and causes of the other. At this stage of the argument, with the conclusion that meaningful or information-carrying states enter into causal relations, there is a powerful pressure to construe this ‘semantic causation’ as being simply ‘causation’ of the kind known in the physical sciences. Otherwise there is apparently threat to the ‘unity of science’ and perhaps also to the physicalist assumption that all causing ultimately goes on at the physical level.

The pressure here is linked to the fast and plausible route to mind–brain identity considered at the beginning of Chapter 2, running as follows: ‘so if, after all, mental states are causes of behaviour (if they figure in good scientific
explanations), then, since we already know from physical theory that the material brain causes behaviour, mental states must be material brain states’. The parallel line of thought concerning causality runs roughly as follows: ‘if, after all, semantic states are causes of behaviour (if they figure in good scientific explanations), then, since we already know that causes are physical causes, best identified in the physical sciences, then causal explanation which invokes semantic states must ultimately be, or be like, causal explanation in those sciences’.

On the other hand, there is an old problem here: the difference (dichotomy) between meaningful and causal connections. It was noted in the Introduction and first chapter (Section 1.4) that the dichotomy between meaning and causality drawn in the cultural sciences at the turn of the century was based on what appear to be genuine differences between explanations in terms of beliefs, desires, reasons, etc., and causal explanations of the sort familiar in the natural sciences and physics in particular. The differences include that meaningful connections are evident already in particulars, while causal connections as determined in the natural sciences essentially involve generality: repeated or repeatable events, covered by general laws. It is difficult, in other words, to construe meaningful explanations as being causal in the sense familiar in the natural sciences, and entrenched in the scientific world-picture. This was the underlying problematic which prompted the turn-of-the-century dichotomy between meaning and causality.

The contemporary position, however, looks like this: respectable empirical sciences including cognitive psychology now envisage semantic states and their involvement in causal interactions, and hence there is pressure to break down the dichotomy between meaning and causality. There are broadly two ways of going about this: either causal explanations in terms of semantic states have to be shown to be (ultimately) the same, after all, as causal explanations in the natural sciences; or, it has to be shown that they are a distinctive, new form of causal explanation.

The first option, taken up by the doctrine known as causal semantics does not succeed, however, and second option, associated with so-called functional semantics, is more promising.1 We prepare for the discussion of causal semantics by considering in some detail in the next section the analysis of causality and the standard view of causality that is suited to the natural sciences.

4.2 Hume’s analysis of causality and some standard elaborations

In his *Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*, Hume argued that our knowledge of cause and effect arises from experience of constant conjunction
(1777, Sections IV and VII). This is to say: the judgement that event A causes event B is based in the observation that events of type A are always followed by events of type B. This aspect of Hume’s analysis of causality is fundamental, and has to be kept in sight amidst the various complications that surround it, some of which we consider next.

In practice on any one occasion we observe an event of type B preceded by a complex of circumstances, C, in addition to an event of type A. To establish a causal link between A and B the relevance of those circumstances has to be determined. To establish whether A is a necessary condition of B we observe C without A, as naturally occurring or by contrivance, and observe whether or not B follows. To establish whether or not A is a sufficient condition of B we observe A without C, as naturally occurring or by contrivance, and observe whether or not B follows. These principles, elucidated by Mill (1843) in his ‘methods of agreement and difference’, underlie our modern idea of controlled experimentation.

In practice, particularly in the life-sciences, psychology and the social sciences we rarely find universal generalizations, but rather partial ones, of the form: A is followed by B in a certain proportion of observed cases. Presumably whether or not B occurs following A depends on other, so far unknown factors, and the assumption is that there are universal, causal generalizations, even if we cannot determine them. One function of a universal generalization is to license the simple inductive inference: the next observed A will be followed by B. In the absence of a universal generalization, the problem is to determine the probability of the next A being followed by B, given that a certain proportion of A’s so far observed have been followed by B. This is the problem for the theory of statistical inference. Its complexity compounds in interaction with the problem cited above, that of controlling for potentially relevant variables. (The problem comes to concern the validity of the assumption that the circumstances associated with the next A are typical of those in the sample so far observed.) The life-sciences, psychological and social sciences rely heavily, then, on statistical methodology rather than on simple induction from universal generalizations; the universal, causal generalizations are assumed rather than known.

Thus practical application of Hume’s analysis of causal propositions in terms of constant conjunction between events is complicated by the need for controlled observation and statistical inference. Nevertheless the analysis remains firm as the underlying basis of these scientific methods.

There is however a very different kind of problem that arises in connection with Hume’s analysis of causality, philosophical rather than methodological. This is the problem identified by Hume (1777, Section VII) as to whether
constant conjunction is \textit{all there is} to our notion of causality, whether, in particular, there is a connotation of \textit{necessary connection} in our notion of causality which is not captured by the notion of constant conjunction. It should be emphasized that this is not the problem frequently encountered in scientific practice, as to whether an observed association between two types of event signifies that the one causes the other, or is mere coincidence, or perhaps signifies a common cause of both. The alternatives here can be resolved in principle by application of Mill’s methods, i.e. by controlled observation or experiment. The distinction here between causal connection and constant conjunction is the distinction between observation of constant conjunction which does and which does not control for other relevant factors. The further problem identified by Hume remains after application of the requisite scientific methodology, which is why it is philosophical rather than a methodological. Even in case it has been established that one kind of event is a sufficient (or necessary and sufficient) condition for the occurrence of another, is this all that is required to establish a causal connection between the two? Does the concept of causal connection also connote an element of necessary connection, which we could express by saying that if the one kind of event occurs, then the other \textit{must} occur?

Hume gave a sceptical answer to the problem that he had identified: he could find no resources in his empiricist philosophy capable of explicating any such notion of (empirical) necessity. According to empiricism the phenomena are known by experience. Thus also any correlation among the phenomena is to be known only on the basis of observation, and is simply a matter of contingent fact, not of any ‘necessity’. What comes more or less to the same is that Hume supposed cause and effect to be discrete—entirely separate—events; so that we can, for example, always imagine the cause without the effect (Hume 1777, Section IV). Imaginative capacities aside, the point is that there is no logical, \textit{a priori}, or conceptual linkage between the description of the cause and description of the event. There is in this sense at least no necessary connection between cause and effect, only observed association between kinds of event. This association, and no more, is all that is allowed by a strict empiricism.

The failure of empiricism to capture \textit{a priori} conditions of experience, in particular necessity in causation, became a major rationale for Kant’s subsequent ‘Copernican Revolution’ in philosophy. For the present purpose, however, we omit discussion of the Kantian post-empiricist response, and consider rather a more contemporary solution.

It is widely acknowledged that there has to be a distinction between ‘merely accidental’ generalizations and generalizations with nomic, law-like necessity. For the statement ‘A-events cause B-events’ to be true there has to be not only
a correlation between the two kinds of event, but also this correlation has to be, or to be a consequence of, a law of nature: it is not enough for the correlation to be merely accidental. Braithwaite, for example, distinguishes laws of nature from ‘mere generalizations’, and defines causal laws as a subclass of the former (1953, Chapter 9). Davidson’s complex views on a range of issues concerning causation include endorsement of the following (Davidson 1967, p. 160):

A singular causal statement ‘a caused b’ entails that there is a law to the effect that ‘all the objects similar to a are followed by objects similar to b,…

Thus also Fodor in the context of causal semantics to be considered in detail later, puts the point as follows (1980, p. 70):

If one assumes that what makes my thought about Robin Roberts a thought about Robin Roberts is some causal connection between the two of us, then we’ll need a description of RR such that the causal connection obtains in virtue of him satisfying that description. And that means, presumably, that we’ll need a description under which the relation between him and me instantiates a law.

The idea may be briefly expressed as being that causality implies generality covered by (natural) law. Such a view is very widely accepted and for convenience it will be called in what follows the ‘standard assumption’ about causality. The next main point is that the natural law invoked in this standard assumption is usually and plausibly taken to be physical law. But before going on to consider this, let us briefly make some links with empiricism and post-empiricism that will become important as we proceed.

As remarked above, empiricism was intimately involved, in Hume, with the analysis of causation in terms of correlation and the problem of necessary connection. However, the empiricist claim that all empirical knowledge is derived from experience has come to be recognized as mistaken. As discussed in the first chapter (Section 1.3.1) post-empiricist epistemology sees that empirical knowledge typically has the form of a theory which posits unobservables, and which cannot be analysed in terms of statements about sense-experience. It may be expected that the new epistemology has implications for Hume’s empiricist treatment of causality. An obvious implication is that some statements of empirical associations will have an element of necessity insofar as they are which are deducible from theory: they must hold, if the theory is correct (Braithwaite 1953; Popper 1959). In effect, the ‘empirical’ necessity here derives from a deduction from other propositions. While this account clearly exceeds what is envisaged by empiricism, it remains true to one fundamental aspect of Hume’s empiricist analysis. The account defines a sense in which empirical generalizations ‘must’ hold, but this element of necessity is added, as it were, from the outside, by the covering theory. It is not a matter of
internal linkage between cause and effect, which remain, as in Hume, discrete, entirely separate from one another. —The relation between the above approach to causal necessity and what has been called above the ‘standard assumption’ about causality is controversial. The standard assumption links causal necessity to natural law, or ‘necessity in nature’, and it is not obvious that this law-like necessity can be equated with something like inferential role in theory (Armstrong 1983). The theory would have to be a true, yet to be discovered, representation of reality. Even so, it may be said, the necessity of natural law derives from necessity in nature, not from necessity within the representation. This controversy is not, however, relevant to the line of argument here. From the epistemological point of view, if not the metaphysical, the status of natural law is bound up with belonging to theory. We shall assume in what follows that natural law underlies causal necessity, and that our best estimate of what is or is not a natural law is current theory.

The standard assumption about causality, as involving generality covered by natural law, has the pretty well inevitable consequence that causality comes to be seen as the province of the natural sciences, of physics and chemistry in particular. After all, it is (trivially) the natural sciences that aim to identify laws of nature, and among the natural sciences it is physics and chemistry that apparently capture unlimited generality. A connected point is that these are the sciences in which generalizations can be seen to follow from covering theory in something like a hypothetico-deductive form. The idea that the natural laws involved in causal relations are (or are ultimately) physical laws will be called for convenience in what follows the ‘physicalist construal’ of natural laws (or of causality).

This construal of natural law and causality belongs with the physicalist view that ultimately all causing goes on at the physical level. One source of this view is the metaphysical assumption that there are only physical things. The strength and the weakness of this assumption, however, is that it may stand opposed only to (often outdated) metaphysics, claims to the effect that there are, e.g. minds as well as bodies, or Platonic forms outside of nature. It is plausible enough to say that there are no entities of these kinds, and that even if there were they could have no causal role in nature. This ontological approach combines with the construal of natural law and causality now under consideration, providing support for the view that ultimately all causing goes on at the physical level. It may be noted that recent statements of physicalism have tended to emphasize that it is indeed primarily an ontological doctrine—to the effect, roughly, that there are only physical things—and is not concerned immediately with circumscribing causal laws (see for example, Loewer 2001; Papineau 2001). This general tendency is partly a response to increasing interest
in the prospect, opened up by Fodor (1974), that the ‘special sciences’, including psychology, may have causal laws of their own, and a need to consider whether this prospect is, after all, compatible with physicalism as an ontology. Whether physicalism really would permit these special, non-physical laws to be genuinely causal, is a topic of vigorous current debate (e.g. Kim 1998; Gillett and Loewer 2001; see also the discussion in the next chapter on the possibility of reduction of biology to physics/chemistry, 5.5). Insofar as physicalism would rule out this possibility, it continues to have the consequence that is called here the ‘physicalist construal of causality’, that ultimately all causing goes on at the physical level, covered by physical laws.

This physicalist view is widespread in contemporary philosophy, including in major positions in the philosophy of mind. It is one pressure behind adopting mind–brain identity theory as soon as mental causation has been acknowledged. As discussed in the previous chapter (Section 2.2), Fodor’s Language of Thought Hypothesis allows mental, meaningful causation only because it coincides with material (neural), syntactic causation. Davidson’s doctrine of anomalous monism (1970) has the consequence that the laws implicated in causal interaction between the mental and the physical must be physical. Dennett appears ambiguous over the question whether intentional states are real or (merely) constructs useful for prediction, as noted in the previous chapter (Section 3.4), but in any case proposes that explanations that invoke them are causal only insofar as they supervene on physical conditions (e.g. Dennett 1987, p. 57). These diverse and influential views in the philosophy of mind apparently share the assumption that ultimately causation must be physical, involving physical laws.

4.3 Causal semantics: meaning as a (standard) causal relation

Causal semantics tries to capture meaning within the familiar net of causal relations, preferably in terms consistent with physicalism. This involves dismantling the dichotomy between meaning and causality by defining the former in terms of the latter. In general terms the problem with this proposal is that it tries to dismantle a philosophical dichotomy by acknowledging only one of its terms. We have come across this philosophical strategy earlier, mainly in connection with (simple) mind–brain identity theory (Section 2.1), where it was identified as one most likely to fail. The general problem is that distinctive characteristics emphasized by, though exaggerated by, the category to be absorbed, are not captured by the category doing the absorbing, which always was defined in opposition to the other. In the present case this means: the definition of meaning
as being a causal relation omits the specificity of meaning, its relation to the subject, and the origin of its necessity within these factors. Causal semantics makes meaning too general, too objective, and too necessary, with no possibility of it ‘breaking down’.

Causal semantics seeks to construe the relation between meaningful mental states (or information-carrying states generally) and what they mean, as being a matter of association covered by natural, probably physical, law. If causal semantics can be made to work, then the critical intentional concepts will be analysed in the familiar terms of causality, and then presumably explanations which invoke concepts of information and meaning could be eliminated in favour of explanations which invoke no such concepts. In brief, semantics would be ‘naturalized’ (e.g. Fodor 1990). However, we shall argue that causal semantics cannot be made to work. As implied in the preceding paragraph, the reasons why the theory does not work is connected with the fact that the dichotomy between meaning and causality marked a genuine tension which cannot just be glossed over, a tension between meaningful phenomena and explanation, and the methodological assumptions suited to the (sub-biological) natural sciences.

Causal semantics has been much discussed in the literature (Dretske 1981, 1983; Fodor 1990; also e.g. Baker 1989; Villanueva 1990). Various forms of causal semantics have been proposed, the most rigorous and sophisticated being those of Dretske (1981, 1983), and of Fodor (1990). Some aspects of these versions will be considered as we proceed. For purposes of bringing out some critical features and problems of causal semantics, a brief statement of its main idea from Fodor will suffice, as follows (Fodor 1990, p. 57):

S-events carry information about P-events if ‘Ps cause Ss’ is a law.

A similar analysis can be given of the expression ‘S-events mean P-events’. It can be applied to cognitive states or to linguistic utterances, though the distinction here is blurred. A precursor in psychology of more recent theories of causal semantics, as Fodor remarks (1990, pp. 53ff.), was Skinner’s attempt to extend operant theory to verbal behaviour (Skinner 1956), the proposal being that (meaningful) utterances are under ‘stimulus control’. This proposal could be expressed in the form: utterances are caused by environmental stimuli, and thereby have meaning.

Causal semantics is subject to three main criticisms. Firstly, its explanation of the content of meaningful states tends to be either vacuous or inadequate; secondly, it cannot adequately explain the fact that informational or meaningful states can come to represent what has no existence in reality; and thirdly, it cannot obviously account for the conventional nature of the link between sign and signified. We consider each in turn.
According to causal semantics, cognitive states (or utterances with meaningful content) are caused by events in the environment, and thereby carry information about, or mean, those events. The critical question concerns the definition of environmental events. Broadly speaking, there are two options. Either the events are defined independently of the contents they are alleged to cause, or they are defined by appeal to their alleged affects. Both options are however problematic. Environmental stimuli can be defined independently of the informational states that, according to causal semantics, they cause. Physical descriptions can be given of the stimulus or of the sensory stimulation to which it gives rise. Or again, low-level phenomenal descriptions can be given, concerning shape, colour, etc. But either way there is so far no account of the richness and variety of informational states. Informational content is in general not determined by physical or low-level phenomenal characteristics. For example, a person sees a dog and comes to believe (with or without conscious thought) that it is dangerous, and so runs away, or that it is friendly, and so pats it. If the contents of such beliefs are determined by the stimuli that cause the beliefs, then these stimuli cannot be defined in physical terms (or in terms of perceived shapes and colours). Since this option is unpromising causal semantics tends to rely on the alternative: environmental stimuli are to be defined by reference to the informational states that they are held to cause. However in making this move the theory lapses into vacuity: the environment is populated with whatever properties are required to explain the corresponding mental states. If I see a dog and believe it to be dangerous, my belief has this content because it is caused by (an instance of) the property dangerousness, etc. Hence causal semantics comes to embrace a prolific realism concerning properties, and in particular a non-explanatory realism, of the kind remarked by Chomsky in his criticism of Skinner’s proposal that verbal behaviour is under ‘stimulus control’, already discussed in the first chapter (Section 1.1.1). Causal semantics seeks to capture meaning within the notion of causal association by identifying the meaning of information-carrying states with their environmental causes. But it has great difficulty in specifying the requisite environmental causes in a way that is both adequate and non-trivial.²

It may be noted that cognitive science tackles content in a very different way, using the notion of information-processing. At the input end, in stimulation, information is picked up by sensory systems. The information picked up depends partly on the physically defined nature of the stimulus, and partly on characteristics of the sensory system. As a rule, sensory systems are designed to pick up information of kinds relevant to the animal’s behaviour and needs, at least to its survival. This information is then processed, which includes assimilation into innate or acquired patterns of association or expectation,
of greater or lesser complexity, these being again of kinds relevant to the animal’s behaviour and needs. Processing eventually produces informational states that serve in the regulation of behaviour. The more information becomes processed, the more it differs from the low-level information picked up at the periphery. The information that this is thirst-quenching water, for example, is not what is encoded on the retina. The processed information not only does not allow definition in terms of physics (e.g. the content ‘water’ cannot be defined as H2O), but it essentially implicates the animal’s needs (drives), which have even less to do with physics. The environment has to be defined in physical terms to tell the first part of the information-processing story, in specifying what can be and is picked up at the sensory level, but after that physical definition of informational content becomes decreasingly relevant. What becomes relevant in its place is the way in which low-level information is interpreted, the criterion of which, at any given stage, is a matter of behavioural responses of information-processing subsystems, eventually of the animal (as a whole) as it acts in the environment. We assume, crude though the above sketch is, that it captures some essential features of the cognitive psychological account of the causal history and content of information-carrying states, and it is apparent that in such an account physical descriptions of the environment represented in cognitive states (as opposed to bio-psychological descriptions) play a limited, though by all means a fundamental, role.3

Cognitive psychology acknowledges that there are properties of environmental stimulation that can be specified without reference to information-carrying states, physical properties such as shape, orientation, energy patterns etc. But it proceeds to explain how these are processed in ways dependent on the living being (the receiver, perceivers, and agent), producing cognitive states with content which cannot be defined in physical terms, which is richer and more diverse. It is in this critical respect that the information-processing story in cognitive psychology diverges from causal semantics, which seeks to explain content by reference to environmental causes. If causal semantics acknowledges that the environmental causes sufficient to explain content cannot be captured by physical definitions, then it has to define them, in a circular way, by reference to the content of the information-carrying states themselves. In this way the environment is credited with properties corresponding to mental states that involve much interpretation or processing of physical characteristics, mental states concerning, e.g. dangerousness. In effect, the results of interpretation and processing are explained in terms of ready-made features of the world. In this sense the subjective contribution to concept-formation (meaning) is denied.

In this respect the theory of causal semantics stands in the venerable (and diverse) realist tradition, which posits reality as ready-formed, then simply
impressed on the mind (or brain), with nothing for the mind (or brain) to do except register the way things are. Empiricism was a theory of representation and knowledge of this kind, and causal semantics is one of its not so distant descendents. Causal semantics is true to the realist tradition in two related ways. First, in that the mode of representation is objectively defined (i.e. as a causal association); second, in that the representational content is objectively defined, in terms of already made, independent properties.

The second and related main problem for causal semantics is that it can provide no adequate account of the fact that meaningful content can be about what does not exist. Content expressible by empty terms is one kind of case; another is content expressible by false propositions. The problem can be expressed as follows: according to causal semantics, an event A means or carries information about an event B in case A is caused by B, but, if A is not caused by B, then A carries no false information about B, but rather carries no information about B at all. Correlations between types of event can be more or less reliable, but there seems to be no apparent sense to the notion of a miscorrelation, and hence none so far to the notion of false or incorrect information. In brief, the problem is how to obtain a distinction between right and wrong in terms of the notion of causal association. Attempts by proponents of causal semantics to solve this fundamental problem have not met with much success.4

The problem of empty content (of concepts) and the problem of false content (of judgements) are closely linked together, both arising from the fact that what is represented need not exist. This feature is of course none other than the intentionality of representation (Section 1.2.1). Any aspiring theory of content of course has to account for this; it constitutes a very clear adequacy condition for the theory of meaning. The problem for causal semantics is that it seems to fail just this critical test.

We first considered the problem of error, which is, as just remarked, another name for the problem of intentionality, in the first chapter (Section 1.2.1). We began to tackle the question: how can one item represent, or mean (or carry information about) another? We saw that the simplest answer would be just that sign and signified are ‘correlated’ in some way or other, so that the one stands for the other. But even at this superficial level the problem of error makes itself felt. An empty or false sign stands for nothing, but then what is the difference between this and not being a sign at all? How can a sign be meaningful even though there is nothing it is correlated with? The notion of resemblance provides an excellent solution to this problem, though its plausibility depends on the extent to which signs do in fact resemble what they signify. Signs of language, in particular, apparently do not. In the absence of
resemblance we can define meaning in terms of the use of signs in activity, acknowledging the distinction between right and wrong actions, and uses of signs, in terms of the notion of rule-following. The question as to what following a rule amounts to was taken up in the third chapter, Section 3.3. The problem of making out a difference between ‘right’ and ‘wrong’ presses hard in the account of meaning in terms of rule-following, as it does in any theory of meaning. We arrived at the apparent paradox that when a person follows a rule what seems right is right, so far as the person is concerned for the time being, and so far we have defined no sense to ‘but is wrong’. The proposed solution was a relativistic one, which made out the normative distinctions in two connected ways, in terms of agreement or disagreement between judgements made from various points of view, and in terms of success or otherwise of action (Sections 3.3–3.4). An implication of these relativistic distinctions between right and wrong, or between appearance and reality, is that the vehicle of meaning (of true or false representation) has to be a system which can compare representations from various points of view, which can predict one from another, and which can modify them as appropriate. We arrive, in brief, at a conception of the vehicle of meaning (the measure of reality) as being an active system with the capacity to process information. The contrast here is with theories of meaning which posit static, object-like measures that mirror, or resemble, absolute states of affairs (cf. Sections 1.2.1, 3.3).

We are working our way towards this idea from another direction, by considering what is wrong with causal semantics. The point argued so far in this section is that this theory apparently comes to grief on what is a decisive testing ground for theories of meaning, the problem of empty content. There are at least two aspects of the problem, involving the creativity and error in ideas and judgement, both aspects of the fact that meaning can run free of reality, and no account of these features of meaning can be gleaned simply from the idea of ‘objective’ causal correlation between events. So what is the alternative? A more promising account has been indicated in the discussion so far. In the course of criticising causal semantics we have invoked an account which looks more promising, namely, one which acknowledges what causal semantics is concerned to deny, namely, that there is a subjective contribution to meaning, one which derives from the measuring system itself. This idea will be taken up in later sections.

We have noted that causal semantics is subject to the following two criticisms: first, its explanation of the content of meaningful states tends to be either vacuous or inadequate, and secondly, it cannot adequately explain the fact that informational or meaningful states can come to represent what has no existence in reality. A third criticism, in a way the most obvious of all,
is that it cannot obviously account for the *conventional* nature of the link between sign and signified: the fact that “chair” means chair is apparently not a matter of natural law, physical or otherwise, but a matter of convention which could be, and of course in many languages is in fact, different. From this point of view trying to assimilate the meaning-relation to the causal relation as understood in the physical sciences, that is to say as fixed, is just the wrong way to go; rather, we have to envisage the meaning-relation, and with it a kind of causal relation, as capable of variation.

We suggest that the diagnoses of all three failings are the same: in both cases the problem is that causal semantics (explicitly) seeks to define information entirely ‘objectively, without reference to the ‘subjective’ contribution to information processing and content. Or again: the basic fault of causal semantics is its attempt to define information without acknowledging its relativity to a ‘receiver’ (and user).\(^5\) A corollary, signified by the fact that causal semantics cannot be made to work, is that the underlying presumed concept of causality is also suspect for the present purpose. These points together indicate that we should envisage in the information-based biopsychological sciences a kind of causality that is unlike what is found in the physical sciences, namely one that involves creative systemic/functional activity. In brief, the causal connections in question, and the meaning they determine, are ‘organism-based’. Several distinguishable though closely related points come under this heading, and will be discussed in remaining sections of this chapter:

Firstly, informational content is relative to functional systems.

Secondly, explanations which invoke informational content and its processing are essentially relative to functional systems, and the ‘laws’ covering such systems must be of a kind distinct from those in physics and chemistry, concerned with the design, means and ends of particular functional systems. The necessity in these laws will turn on the assumption of ‘normal’ functioning. Causal concepts and normative concepts coincide here.

Hence, thirdly, since these ‘laws’ are specific to particular information-processing systems, we lose the *generality* characteristic of the physical sciences.

4.4 **Functional semantics: meaning defined in terms of systemic function**

Causal semantics defines meaning in terms of causality as understood in the physical sciences. Further, it defines meaning primarily in terms of environmental causes rather than behavioural effects. These two features of causal semantics hang together with the fact the theory does not envisage, indeed goes out of its way to deny, that there is any systemic contribution to the
production of meaning. Properties are posited as already in the environment, able to cause mental states with corresponding content, which causal process hence involves no subjective contribution. This negative conclusion is plainly demanded by the physicalist construal of causality. The implication is that the rejection of causal semantics involves not only a shift away from the physicalist construal of causality, but also a shift in the definition of meaning away from emphasis on ‘input’ towards emphasis on interactions among information-carrying states and their role in regulating ‘output’. The chief significance of this change is that the definition of content can begin to take account of the contribution of the semantic processing system. This kind of definition of meaning belongs with the idea invoked in all the preceding chapters, that meaningful states are invoked in order to explain (intentional) activity, and hence are to be understood essentially in terms of the difference they make to behaviour.

Another way of looking at what is essentially the same point about the move from causal to functional semantics is in terms of the theory of error. We saw in Section 4.3 that causal semantics flounders on the problem that information-carrying states can be false as well as true. This fundamental feature of such states apparently defies capture by the notion of causality alone: either events of one kind are causally associated with another or they are not, but there is no obvious sense in the notion of a ‘mis-association’. In this section we explore the possibility indicated at the time, that solution of the problem of error requires reference to the system which picks up, processes and utilizes information. Error will be down to something like ‘misinterpretation’, or ‘misapplication’.

By whichever route we approach functional semantics, meaning comes to be defined with reference to information-processing systems. The first version of functional semantics to be considered retains the essential claim of causal semantics, namely, that the content of an information-carrying state is defined by its environmental causes. We shall call this version ‘causal-functional semantics’, and it will be contrasted later with a ‘behavioural-functional’ version, which defines content primarily in terms of the difference it makes to the behaviour of the system.

Functional semantics in its causal version defines the normative characteristic of informational content—that it can be true or false, correct or incorrect—in terms of a normative distinction among its environmental causes. The task is to define a sense in which some causes of information-carrying states are ‘right’ and others are ‘wrong’. Such a normative distinction between types of cause is not afforded by a straightforward causal semantics, but it can be drawn once we make explicit reference to functional systems. The basic idea
of functional semantics is that error arises in informational states of a system in case they are caused by conditions unlike those in which the system has been designed to function. The required assumptions concerning design, function, and conditions can be based in considerations of evolutionary biology. Functional (or teleological) theories of content along these lines have been proposed for example by Millikan (1984, 1986) and Papineau (1987). What follows is a brief version of some of their key features. Biological systems and subsystems have been selected in the evolutionary process insofar as they fulfil certain advantageous functions in particular environmental conditions. These latter may be called for short the ‘Normal’ conditions for particular systems. Consider now specifically the case of systems whose function is to represent (carry information about) the environment. Such representational systems, like others, have evolved in Normal conditions. Normal conditions define the content of a representational state, as follows: a representational state carries the information that it is caused by Normal conditions. In these terms it is possible to apply a normative description to particular representational states of a system. We may distinguish between representational states which are caused by Normal conditions, and those which are caused by Abnormal conditions: the former are ‘correct’ representations, the latter ‘incorrect’.

In this way we can apparently capture a distinction between correct and incorrect representations, and one, moreover, with scientific credibility. The basic idea that in incorrect representation something has gone wrong is explicated in terms of informational states of a system being triggered by conditions unlike those which the system has been designed to respond to.

An objection to the analysis outlined above has been forcibly put by Fodor (1990). Fodor makes the objection using the example of fly-detection and -snapping behaviour in the frog, the subject of Lettvin et al.’s seminal paper ‘What the frog’s eye tells the frog’s brain’ (1959). An account of the frog’s behaviour according to the proposal being considered would include the following claims. There is in the frog an information-processing mechanism selected in the evolutionary process for detecting and snapping at flies. On occasion the frog detects and snaps at ambient black dots which are not flies. However, in this case the mechanism is responding to environmental conditions unlike those in which it has evolved. Thus we may say that in this case and in this sense the informational content carried in some state of the mechanism is ‘incorrect’. Hence we achieve a distinction between correct/incorrect, true/false informational content. —Fodor’s objection is, however, that we can apparently run the account in another way, blocking the conclusion. We can say that there is in the frog a mechanism selected in the evolutionary process for detecting and snapping at ambient black dots. If the function of the mechanism
is described in this way, detection and snapping at a non-fly ambient black dot is not an error. By all means, in the frog’s normal ecology, all or most ambient black dots are in fact flies, so the result of the selection process is indeed a mechanism which all or most of the time succeeds in detecting and snapping at flies. The choice is therefore in the description of the ‘intentional object’ of the frog’s information-carrying state, as being flies or ambient black dots. But, Fodor objects, the evolutionary story can be told either way, and in the latter case the proposed distinction between correct and incorrect informational content collapses (1990, pp. 71ff.).

But is the objection valid? Can the evolutionary story be told either way? According to evolutionary theory a given mechanism is selected for a particular function. Plausibly this means something like: it would not have been selected unless it performed that function. So then, what function has the frog’s ‘fly(?)-detecting-snapping’ mechanism been selected for? Surely the answer has to be: for catching flies as food, not for catching inedible ambient black dots. That is, the mechanism would not have been selected but that it performs the function of securing flies (as food); not, … but that it performs the function of catching ambient (inedible) black dots. The point may be expressed in terms of intensional descriptions (as defined in Section 1.3.1). Evolutionary theory demands an intensional description of the function of the mechanism for detecting and catching flies, as being for securing food, and hence also it vindicates the corresponding intensional description of the Normal conditions in which the mechanism has been selected.

Nevertheless, there is something right about Fodor’s objection. Its valid aspect can be brought out by asking the question: how could a biological information-processing system ever come to represent environmental conditions which it has not been selected to represent? Insofar as there is no answer to this question, the proposed distinction between true and false representation seems to collapse. Let us unpack this line of thought. It appeals to features of biological information-processing systems such as specialized detectors, and capacity for being deceived, which will be emphasized and elaborated on in the next chapter.

Not any state of an information-processing system counts as an information-carrying state. For example, a state of the brain caused by massive haemorrhage so far carries no information at all, and in particular none about the cause of the state. A state of an information-processing system is information-carrying only insofar as it results from the processing (coding, translation etc.) of information picked up from the environment, characteristically by specialized detectors. The problem for the theory of error under consideration is that the only environmental states which can cause information-processing
systems to go into information-carrying states are those which the system is designed to respond to. In the case of biological information-processing systems this means: only Normal environmental conditions. So the proposed distinction between true and false information-carrying states cannot be made out.

In the particular case of the frog’s behaviour there is, then, a reason for describing the regulating information as being about ambient black dots. It is simply that frogs are just as good at detecting and snapping at non-fly ambient black dots as at dealing with flies. It is hard to avoid the conclusion, endorsed by the considerations in the preceding paragraph, that the relevant mechanism is designed to process and respond to information about ambient black dots, regardless whether they happen to be flies or not.

So we have here two apparently conflicting intuitions, backed by biological and behavioural considerations. But is the conflict genuine? There is no escaping the conclusion that the frog’s mechanism is designed in such a way that it detects and responds to ambient black dots, flies or otherwise. The behavioural evidence is clear. But equally, there is no escaping the demand of evolutionary theory that this mechanism has been selected because it fulfils the function of detecting and catching flies (as food). It is on the basis of theory of function that biology speaks pervasively and unhesitatingly of ‘deception’ in biological systems. But ‘deception’ is itself possible only because the system is designed in such a way as to receive and respond to information which is in fact irrelevant to, which does not serve, its function (the function for which it has been selected). The notion of deception, and in general a distinction between correct and incorrect information, can be vindicated on the basis of an (intensional) specification of systemic function. Such specification can in turn be based on evolutionary theoretic considerations, as indicated above.

The question arises as to whether specification of systemic function has to be based in evolutionary theory, or whether it can be based in behavioural evidence alone. Plausibly behavioural evidence alone will do, bearing in mind that we are concerned here with behaviour which exhibits intentionality. To bring out the nature of the behavioural evidence sufficient to determine function, and hence to afford various normative distinctions, let us start with evolutionary theoretic considerations. It appears then that such evidence can stand on its own, detached from evolutionary theory.

Part of the evolutionary story about the frog’s information-processing system is that it would not have evolved but for the fact that it enabled ingestion of flies as food. If the environment had been different (too few ambient black dots were flies) the system would have been de-selected and, let us suppose, replaced by another, more discriminatory one. This notion of adaptation is of course fundamental to evolutionary theory. As things are, the system fails to
discriminate between flies and other ambient black dots. Frogs snap at and ingest the one as much as the other. They have, in particular, no ‘corrective’ mechanisms which arrest the routine of snapping at and ingesting non-flies at any stage. The evidence for such mechanisms would of course be behavioural: we would observe ‘corrective behaviour’, which is essentially a matter of arrest, possibly with replacement of, an initiated behavioural routine. Frogs—we are assuming—show no such corrective behaviour in the case of a non-fly; they do not desist from snapping on the basis on a closer look, nor do they spit it out. All this gives reason for saying that so far as the frog is concerned, non-flies are all the same as flies.7

Thus there is no evidence that an individual frog regards non-fly routines as an error; it does not behave as if it has made a mistake. We, on the other hand, because we know the function which the behavioural routine is meant to serve, that for which it has been selected, can declare its application to non-flies to an error. Connected with this, it might also be said, briefly and therefore in scare quotes, that the ecosystem consisting of the species frog and its environment also ‘treats the non-fly routine as an error’: too much in the species and it would be discarded.

The above remarks define the kind of behavioural evidence required to support the hypothesis that the frog regards catching non-flies as a mistake. Imagine an adapted frog species, members of which show either or both of the following sorts of behaviour. Firstly, on sighting any ambient black dot, the frog prepares for snapping, but makes closer inspection (in some way): the frog then usually snaps if the dot is in fact a fly, but otherwise usually does not. Secondly, in case the frog snaps at and takes into its mouth a non-fly, it promptly spits it out. Here we would have behavioural evidence that the frog treats snapping at and/or ingesting non-flies as a mistake, the evidence being arrest of either or both the snapping and the ingestion behaviours. Such behaviour is evidence of discriminatory mechanisms, and of regulation of behavioural routines on the basis of information received at particular stages. The discriminatory and corrective behaviour of this (hypothetical) frog constitutes evidence that it is after flies but not any other ambient black dots. The behaviour itself shows what the function of the behaviour is. In particular, the function may be determined on the basis of behavioural evidence alone, without the need for an evolutionary theoretic definition of function.

Indeed it is arguable that even with frogs being the way they are, there is behavioural evidence that it is flies they are after, not any other ambient black dots. It is true that the frog, as it were, happily snaps and ingests non-flies. But the behavioural evidence is broader than just this. The behavioural consequences of at least persistent non-fly snaps are presumably different from
those of persistent fly snaps. In the former case the frog stays hungry, an affective state which would show up in various ways; in the latter the frog is satiated, with different behavioural effects. Observation of these behavioural differences would be grounds for saying that the function of snapping behaviour is to secure flies (as food). In this case, contrary to what has been assumed so far, evolutionary theory is not required in order to order to define the function of snapping behaviour as being to catch flies (as food); this definition of the function can be based on behavioural evidence alone.

We may note in passing that these considerations to the effect that there are behavioral criteria of content of information-carrying states characterized intensionally runs counter to the claim that attempts to naturalize intentional explanation have failed because they have rendered intentional states non-intensional (e.g. Rosenberg 1986), but without restriction to language-users (e.g. Emmett 1989). Of course the line of argument we propose is based on the assumption, made back in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2), that the behavioural evidence for meaningful states already has (to be seen) to have intentionality. In this sense there is here no sympathy with the aim characteristic of causal semantics, to ‘naturalize’ meaning (Fodor 1990; with critical commentary in e.g. Baker 1991; Bontly 2001; see also Section 4.3 above).

Function may be specified using behavioural evidence, not only by appeal to evolutionary theory. Moreover, it may be argued that there is a sense in which behavioural determination of function has to precede evolutionary considerations. The point is the simple one that until we have determined on the basis of observation of behaviour the function of a behavioural routine, and hence of the information-processing mechanisms which serve it, we cannot even begin to construct an evolutionary explanation of its development. That said, in the light of post-empiricism (Section 1.3.1), the implied contrast here between observation and theory is artificial and unnecessary. ‘Observation’ of basic patterns of animal behaviour is laden with biological/evolutionary theory. The point for the present purpose is simply this: the function of functional behaviour is generally manifest in the behaviour, particularly in such characteristics as discrimination, modification of strategy, and satiation or otherwise.

The fact that we can get a handle on function, and on what counts as error, without recourse to evolutionary theory has particular importance, however, in relation to ‘higher’ forms of activity about which evolutionary theory may have nothing definite to say. The scale of ‘higher’ and ‘lower’ forms of activity concerns at least degree of discrimination, of complexity and length of behavioural routines, and hence degree of regulation. ‘Higher’ behaviour is thus precisely of the kind in which function, or at least distinction between getting it right and getting it wrong, shows up in the behaviour itself. In this way
behavioural criteria of function and error are increasingly available as we move up the scale from lower to higher activities, and the need for evolutionary theoretic definitions decreases. Indeed such definitions become less and less helpful, particularly as we consider cultural practices, which constitute much of human activity, and which interact with our ‘natural’ behaviour. It is arguably degrading, but in any case notoriously difficult, to define the function of cultural activities, and the complex processes by which they are regulated, in terms of basic biological needs and natural selection.\(^8\)

Let us summarize some of the main points made so far in this section. Causal semantics fails to allow the possibility of informational content being wrong. The suggested diagnosis of this failure is neglect of the contribution to informational content by the system that receives, processes and uses information. This neglect is made good by functional semantics. Given an intentional specification of the function of a system, of what it (its response) is ‘meant to achieve’, we can define what counts as success or failure, and hence define other normative distinctions. If, on a particular occasion, a system fails to achieve its function, it has made an error somewhere along the line. Intentional specification of systemic function can be derived from evolutionary theoretic considerations, or on the basis of (intentional) behavioural evidence alone.

Let us grant that functional semantics in the form so far considered affords a solution to the problem of error, and in this respect improves on causal semantics. Still, insofar as functional semantics seeks to retain an essential claim of causal semantics, the claim that content is defined by its environmental causes, it inherits other problems of causal semantics, reviewed in Section 4.3. Thus, what is to be said about environmental causes that define the content of ‘empty’ informational states, e.g. those carrying information about (and regulating behaviour about) unicorns or phlogiston? There are no corresponding conditions in the environment. Or again, do we have to adopt a profligate (and vacuous) realism, ascribing to the environment whatever properties are needed in order to explain the existence of informational states with the corresponding content? Of course such problems are minimized, though certainly not removed, while we stay within the context of basic biological mechanisms and functions, the context in which the theory of functional semantics has usually been worked out. But they arise explicitly and in full force when we come to consider highly processed informational content that frankly exceeds characteristics of its environmental causes as defined in physics, or in psychological theories of perception. Here we think of content such as dangerous, or edible, but also, e.g. beautiful, democratic, etc. In brief, insofar as functional semantics seeks to remain a genuine causal theory, to define
informational content in terms of environmental causes, it continues to run up against problems of the kind faced by causal semantics.

It was concluded in Section 4.3 that the failures of causal semantics all arise from the same source, namely, its neglect of the systemic contribution to informational content. Functional semantics in the causal version so far considered, does not sufficiently free itself of this error. In order to explain this criticism, let us sketch a different form of the theory, to be called for convenience ‘behavioural functional semantics’, which avoids the problematic definition of content in terms of environmental causes. The basic claim of functional semantics in this form is that informational content is defined by its effects on the outputs of the system rather than by inputs (McGinn 1989; Papineau 1993). The point may be expressed by saying that behavioural functional semantics defines informational content in terms of what the information-processing system makes of input. Thus functional semantics captures the idea that there is indeed a systemic contribution to information, or meaning, a point recently emphasized and recommended under the name of ‘consumer semantics’ (Botteril and Curruthers 1999).

As we have seen, all semantic theories have to explain how information or meaningful content can be true or false. We have seen that causal semantics apparently fails in this task, while functional semantics in its causal form succeeds. But consider how it succeeds. The normative distinction applied to content is based in a normative distinction among environmental causes. This distinction in turn is based in a definition of systemic function, in considerations of what the system has been designed to achieve, of that function for which it has been selected in evolution. Systemic function has to be specified here intensionally, and we saw that such specification is indeed legitimate in the context of evolutionary biology. It was argued, however, that definition of systemic function essentially refers to the behaviour of the system, in particular to its intended effects, that is, the effects which the system has been designed or selected for. The implication, then, is that normative distinction among environmental causes of information-carrying states rests ultimately on normative distinction among the behavioural effects of these states. The implication is that the latter distinction is fundamental, and this point is what functional semantics in its behavioural version seeks to make explicit.

Let us consider in some detail how behavioural functional semantics works, and in particular how it approaches the problem of error. —How might error in informational content be defined in functional terms? Functional systems pick up information from the environment, process it, and use the result in regulating responses. It is in this systemic process that we find the possibility of error. In brief, a functional, information-processing system makes a mistake
if it interprets a signal $P$ as being a sign of (as being caused by) environmental condition $C_1$, when in fact $P$ emanates from (is caused by) environmental condition $C_2$.

For this proposal to work, we obviously require a definition of ‘interprets signal $S$ as a sign of $C$’, and it is at this critical point that we need to refer to behaviour. The definition required is something like the following: a system ‘interprets a signal $P$ as a sign of $C$’ if reception of $P$ causes the system to respond in way appropriate to it being the case that $C$.

This definition in turn requires definition of when system responses are appropriate or otherwise to particular environmental conditions. This runs along the following lines. In order to know whether a systemic response is appropriate to the environment being in such-and-such a condition, we have to know what the behaviour is ‘meant to achieve’. In other words, definition of what counts as a response being appropriate or inappropriate requires a theory about the function of the behaviour in question, or generally, of the system. This theory has to specify function intensionally, and we have already considered in the previous subsection the kind of principles used in such specification.

In summary, the proposed account of correctness or error in informational content runs as follows: A system $S$ emits a certain response $R$, regulated by an information-carrying state $S_i$ with a particular content. The response (we assume) is meant to achieve a particular result, typically some change in the environment to a condition $C_R$. The response is appropriate to achieving $C_R$ if the initial condition of the environment is $C_i$. In this sense the response is appropriate to it being the case that $C_i$. The informational state $S_i$ is then true if $C_i$ is in fact the case, and is otherwise false. Whether the state is true or false will then (tend to) show up in the success or otherwise of the behaviour to which it gives rise.

As would be expected, the above account of truth and error in informational states defines also informational content. In brief, an information-carrying state $S_i$ has a particular content, $C$, that is, carries the information that the environment is in condition $C$, in case it tends to cause, other things being equal, behaviour appropriate to it being the case that $C$.

This kind of definition of content may seem to raise problems. Causal semantics was charged with the problem of being unable to specify the environmental causes of information-carrying states independently of the contents that they are supposed to cause (Section 4.3). But now it looks as if behavioural functional semantics might be faced with a behavioural version of the same problem, namely, that of identifying the content of information-carrying states independently of the behaviour they are supposed to cause. Insofar as mental content is defined in terms of its alleged behavioural effects,
it seems that it cannot be taken to have a causal role. This echoes one of the considerations underlying the traditional distinction between meaningful and causal connections. However, this line of thought presupposes a narrow reading of what is involved in understanding cognitive states in terms of their role in regulating behaviour. The definition of content suggested above was as follows: an information-carrying state $S_i$ has a particular content, $C$, in case it tends to cause, other things being equal, behaviour appropriate to it being the case that $C$. This definition of content so far cites no specific behaviour, and therefore avoids the alleged circularity. The specific behaviours which are appropriate to it being the case that $C$ will depend on many factors, including as already indicated on what the system is trying to achieve, and on interaction with other relevant information-carrying states. For example, the behaviour appropriate to it being the case that there is a bull before me is a function of my desire to escape it, and my belief that this can best be done by climbing a tree, if there is one, or otherwise by running. Thus the content of my belief that there is a bull before me can be simply defined in terms of its tendency to generate behaviour appropriate to that being the case, but what this amounts to is specifiable in non-trivial ways. There is therefore so far no obstacle to saying that the belief has a causal role in relation to the behaviour generated in particular circumstances.

In the definitions given above of correctness and incorrectness, and of informational content, information-carrying is a property of states of the information-processing system, not, as in causal semantics, a property of the signal itself. Further, and related, the proposed definition of content appeals primarily not to the environmental causes of information-carrying states, but rather to their role in the regulation of behaviour. In brief, content is defined not in terms of input, but rather in terms of what the system makes of input. The contribution of the system to content is what gives scope for error. Also it creates the possibility of ‘empty’ content, content which corresponds to no reality. Both these features of informational content are problematic for causal semantics, precisely because it neglects the systemic contribution to content.

We have considered two versions of functional semantics. One defines content and the true/false distinction by reference to the role of information-carrying states in the regulation of intentional activity; the other by reference to a certain type of environmental cause of such states, namely, their Normal causes as defined by evolutionary theory. In any given case, however, given the same intensional specification of function, both versions of functional semantics will deliver the same results, the same specification of content and the same evaluation, true or false. The behaviour-based version has several advantages, however. It avoids those problems that the causal version inherits from
causal semantics *simpliciter*, namely, the problem of identifying environmental causes independently of their alleged representational effects, and the problem of empty content. Further, it is not restricted to behaviour and informational content of the limited kind addressed by evolutionary biology. But aside from these advantages, the behavioural version of functional semantics makes explicit what is misleadingly only implicit in the causal version, namely, that specification of informational content and normative description of it rest fundamentally on considerations of (intentional) behaviour.

We are led by this route, via discussion of causal and functional accounts of meaning, to themes and conclusions already familiar from the first three chapters. Attribution of meaningful content rests on behavioural criteria. The behaviour in question is essentially interactive: it already has intentionality. Hence explanations that invoke meaningful states are effective in the prediction of action. Such explanations attribute propensities to follow rules: the behaviour which they predict is essentially subject to normative descriptions: correct/incorrect, appropriate/inappropriate, successful/unsuccessful, etc.

### 4.5 Functional semantic causality: norms and necessity, generality and agency

Functional semantics in the form proposed here defines meaning essentially by reference to the functional activity of information-processing systems. The implication is that this functional semantic activity is causal, though in a way to be distinguished from causality in the physical sciences. In this section we consider the differences in two crucial respects, necessity and generality, leading to a distinctive notion of agency.

It was noted in Section 4.2 that the problem of necessary connection in causality can be solved by appeal to covering natural laws, and it is tempting to construe these as physical laws. However as this physicalist construal does not suit psychology (Section 4.3), why not just jettison it and draw back to the weaker position that causal explanation is committed to there being some covering natural law or other? This line of thought leads to the idea that the causal status of cognitive explanations derives from their place within a well-entrenched systematic empirical theory about relations between stimuli, cognitive states and behaviour. There is something correct about this suggestion but it is not yet complete. It omits special features of descriptions of functional systems, namely, that they essentially invoke *norms* of function, and that this accounts for their necessity.

If a person believes such-and-such, then she *must*, in appropriate circumstances, act in a way which accords with that belief. This ‘must’, however, has
nothing to do with scientific theory or natural law. If the consequent of the hypothetical fails, no scientific theory has been refuted, still less has there been a miracle! Rather, the inference would be that, for one reason or another, the person has apparently acted irrationally. The nomological character of the prediction pertains to the ‘laws’ of reason, not to laws of an empirical science. It is true that cognitive explanations are embedded in theory, but it is also true that the theory is permeated by reference to norms.

Let us expand on this point in relation to Dennett’s notion of the Intentional Stance, already described in Chapter 1 Section 1.2.2. Dennett is clear that use of the Intentional Stance as a predictive strategy involves adoption of several working assumptions: we treat the living being as a rational agent, assuming that it acts on beliefs and desires according to rational rules; we attribute the beliefs it ought to have given its place in the world and its purposes (including here all truths relevant to its interests which are available from its experience); in a similar way we attribute desires the creature ought to have, and make predictions on this basis (Dennett 1987; e.g. p. 17). The critical first assumption is one of ‘perfect’ rationality, and this ideal is revised downwards, presumably in the light of the creature’s behaviour. Attribution of what beliefs and desires the creature actually has, as opposed to those it ought to have, is presumably subject to revision downwards in the same way. It may be seen that application of the Intentional Stance in the way Dennett proposes requires assumptions about the creature’s sensory and cognitive capacities (which determine what is ‘available from experience’), and about its purposes and interests. Some of these assumptions are presumably made in advance; for example, all living beings must have an interest in food, and information-processing capacities appropriate to its securement. Apart from such cases, however, determination of what desires and beliefs a creature has requires observation of what it actually strives for, and how.

Given that application of the Intentional Stance is partly based on and is answerable to observation of behaviour, it is tempting to suppose that the methodology could proceed straightforwardly a posteriori: we observe the behaviour of the system, find that its prediction is best served by positing drives and information-carrying states, attribute these in accord with behavioural criteria, adjusting such attributions as predictions fail. No a priori assumption of perfection in rationality would be made in this method, nor any assumption of appropriateness of beliefs and desires. In other words, it is tempting to suppose that application of the Intentional Stance as a predictive strategy can proceed ‘bottom-up’ just as well as ‘top-down’. However, the supposition that attribution of intentionality can proceed entirely a posteriori, on the basis of observation alone, though plausible, is unsound. Dennett is right
in claiming that non-empirical assumptions are being made, assumptions that are specifically *normative*.

Application of the Intentional Stance involves the assumption that the system in question has a design (natural or artificial) relevant to the achievement of certain ends. This assumption is essentially normative, presupposing distinctions between good and poor design, between function and malfunction. The non-empirical character of the assumption of design in the Intentional Stance shows up in the options open when its predictions fail. It is true that specification of ends and means can and should be based on observation of the behaviour of the system, that predictions of the theory then succeed or fail and that, if they fail, the theory can be modified. So far, then, the theory acts simply as an empirical hypothesis. However, there are always other possibilities open when predictions fail, namely, *that the system is poorly designed, or is malfunctioning*. When these possibilities are considered, the assumption of design is held fast, and is used for the purpose of diagnosing failure in the system. In these contexts the assumption of design assumes an *a priori* role, held fast in the face of anomalies, and used in the detection of error elsewhere. The error is located, as it were, within the phenomena, not within the theory. Only in biology and psychology is such a diagnosis of error possible; there is nothing corresponding to it in physics and chemistry. This is because these basic sciences are not concerned with functional systems (as such), and therefore have no use for normative descriptions of their subject-matter.

Psychological generalizations and their predictions in particular cases allow for the possibility of system failure. They are typically qualified by provisos to the effect ‘if all other things are equal’, by so-called *ceteris paribus* clauses, which include particularly explicit or implicit reference to ‘normal’ functioning. It can be said, for example, that perception of danger in the immediate environment will lead to avoidance behaviour, other things being equal. If in a particular case the creature in question fails to take evasive action, it may be inferred that other things are not equal, and one particular kind of possibility here is that the creature is not functioning normally.

It is clear, however, that while generalizations can be rescued in the face of anomaly by this method, the risk is that they become unfalsifiable, empty of empirical content, compatible with everything and excluding nothing. If this were the case, then the proposal that explanations which invoke intentional states are useful in predicting behaviour, the premise of the present essay, would be invalid: the appearance of predictive efficacy here would be an illusion.

This argument can be turned the other way round, however: since explanations which invoke intentional states are useful in prediction, they cannot be trivial or vacuous, notwithstanding their reliance on *ceteris paribus* clauses.
The argument is turned this way round by Fodor (1987, Chapter 1). Fodor goes on to observe that reliance on *ceteris paribus* clauses is characteristic of generalizations in other sciences, with physics being the possible exception, without lapse into triviality (Fodor 1987; see also Fodor 1991; Schiffer 1991).

It may be noted, however, that while scientific theory and prediction typically relies on *ceteris paribus* clauses, the theory and prediction of functional systems invokes them for a special reason. The point is not just that the phenomena are complicated, and generalizations in practice always partial. It is also that in the case of functional systems, theory and its predictions refer essentially to the *normal* case, and provisos are then added to allow for the abnormal.

Many examples from folk psychology and from the various fields of psychological science could be used to illustrate this point. Consider for example the following familiar case of a principle based in meaningful connections: intense sadness is precipitated, other things being equal, by experience of major loss. Anomalies include cases of intense sadness appearing in the absence of self-report of recent major loss, in the absence of such a loss in the recent history, or following recent experience of minor loss only, such as the death of a pet cat. In the face of such anomalies the principle can be preserved in one of two ways. It can be hypothesized that memory of past major losses, perhaps cued by one or several minor losses, is regulating current mood, consciously or otherwise. Alternatively, disruption to normal psychological function by lower-level (non-meaningful) causes, such as hormonal imbalance, can be hypothesized. In general the explanation of breakdown of meaningful connections can proceed by positing either other meaningful connections or lower-level (non-semantic) disruption. These points about the explanation of breakdown will occupy us through subsequent chapters. For now the point is that in the case of functional systems, including human beings, theory and its predictions refer essentially to the *normal* case, and provisos are then added to allow for the abnormal.

We cited above the psychological principle: intense sadness is precipitated, other things being equal, by experience of major loss. We noted that ‘other things being equal’ in this case includes: … unless experience of recent minor loss is intensified by memory of past major loss, and, unless there is biochemical disruption to normal psychic function. Both of the above qualifications are reasonable. Others would (probably) not be, such as: … unless the person’s birth sign is Scorpio. This means, both cited applications of the *ceteris paribus* clause are plausible on the basis of current theory and empirical data. But the clause does not license salvage of the theory in any which way we chose. It has more or less specific, but in any case circumscribed, content. It leads, in case of
anomaly, to more or less specific, but in any case circumscribed, predictions, concerning early learning history, or the underlying biochemistry. The psychological principle, together with its specified ceteris paribus clauses, serves as a methodological rule for distinguishing between normal and abnormal function, and for the investigation of apparently abnormal cases.

It can be seen here that the relation between a meaningful generalization and its ceteris paribus clause is an intimate, ‘internal’ one. In brief, the former is about what happens normally, while the latter is (partly) about what happens abnormally. — Another aspect of this point is that psychological generalizations do not even purport to hold good in all cases; rather only, and by definition, in normal ones. In this sense anomalies are not properly described as ‘counter-examples’ to the generalization; they are rather and only the abnormal cases which the generalization already envisages. The internally related ceteris paribus clause then serves to explain why and how conditions are abnormal. The position is different in sciences unconcerned with systemic function, and therefore with the distinction between normal and abnormal function. In these sciences anomalies for a generalization are indeed counter-examples that so far contradict it, unless a ceteris paribus clause can be invoked to explain away the counter-example and hence save the generalization.

In summary, then, the relative immunity of meaningful explanations from revision, their use of ceteris paribus clauses and in particular the fact that they express norms of function, does not preclude their usefulness in prediction. It is important to stress that we have here only relative immunity from revision. It is true that theories of meaningful content and connections, with more or less specific ceteris paribus clauses, are well-entrenched. But in principle they can be given up, and some have been. In effect this involves radical revision in the theory of functions of particular biological or psychological (sub-)systems, and of their norms of operation. Consider for example assumptions concerning the accessibility of mental states to consciousness and self-report, a topic already discussed in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2). A principle in the Cartesian mould would run something like the following: if a person believes that p, then, other things being equal, she is aware that she believes that p, and will assent to the statement that p. ‘Other things being equal’ includes: all the relevant psychological functions are working normally, but also, e.g. the person is being sincere. Anomalies for the generalization, disavowal or denial of a belief apparently present according to other (behavioural) criteria, would be dealt with by invoking one or other component of the ceteris paribus clause. In this way the principle can be maintained, and was for a long time. However, it has been overturned, regarded now as valid only within a limited domain, by the combined operation of two factors. Firstly, accumulation of (or attention to)
anomalies which can be dealt with only by *ad hoc* explanations with no inde-
pendent support, and secondly, and essentially, by the emergence of a new
paradigm, according to which the definitive function of mental states is regu-
lation of action, not appearance in consciousness. The processes by which
even well-entrenched theories can be overthrown, or at least radically
demoted, are described by Lakatos in his classic (1970) paper, as discussed in
the first chapter (Section 1.3.1). Lakatos was concerned with the physical
sciences, but the basic rules are the same for psychological theory, whether
philosophical, folk or scientific.

It has been argued that explanations of action in terms of meaningful states
are not causal in the sense of Hume’s analysis and its standard elaborations, at
least because they typically involve rational norms. These claims are familiar
in the literature (Collingwood 1946, with commentary by e.g. Martin 1991;
also Strawson 1985; Roque 1987–1988; Haldane 1988; Henderson 1991). To the
extent that it is assumed, then, that the neo-Humean accounts have a monopoly
on causality, it follows that the explanation of action in terms of reasons, the
bringing of behaviour under rational norms, must be a different kind of enter-
prise from causal explanation. This inference in effect preserves something like
the dichotomies between meaning and causality, and between understanding
and (causal) explanation. The position being argued for here is quite different.
The proposal is that reason-giving explanation is causal: *it is what causal
explanation comes to look like in the case of the action of rational agents.*

This interpretation of the general idea that reasons are causes is distinct
from Davidson’s very influential thesis. Davidson has argued that explanations
in terms of reasons are causal, but the causal laws envisaged here are not content-
based but rather refer to physical properties (Davidson 1963, with commen-
tary in e.g. Lepore and McLaughlin 1985; Dretske 1989; Evnine 1991). Our
quite different proposal is that the causal nature of explanations in terms of
reasons involves precisely those reasons, and hence meaning and norms. As
above, our argument is that reason-giving explanation is what causal explana-
tion comes to look like in the case of the action of rational agents. In physics
causal laws have nothing to do with either intentionality or functional norms.
These concepts make their appearance in the bio-psychological sciences, and
they come eventually, as we move along the phylogenetic and ontogenetic scales,
to involve beliefs, desires, and reasons for human action. But the logic of
explanation that cites reasons as causes can be seen already in the foundation
of biological science, the fundamental point being that the causal explanation
of functional behaviour typically invokes information-processing and norms.

We turn now to consider further points about *generality*, which, as Hume
observed, is fundamental to the notion of causality. The proposition that one
event has caused another implies the generalization that events of the one kind are followed by events of the other kind. How might this insight be applied in biology and psychology, to the relation between stimuli and responses? Hume's analysis would be applicable most straightforwardly in case the same stimulus always gave rise to the same response. In other words, the paradigm causal connection would be the reflex arc (as in the knee-jerk), axiomatic to seventeenth-century physiology and to bio-psychological schools that continued that tradition. The relation between stimulus and response in living systems is, however, not always one-one. Particularly as systemic complexity increases, the relation is more often one-many and/or many-one. Explanation of such variability requires postulate of mediating processes within the system, operating in a way dependent on the system’s design. Therefore such generalizations, or partial (statistical) generalizations, as exist are essentially relative to the design of particular systems. Systems with different designs give rise to different correlations between stimuli and responses. So far there is of course nothing to prevent us calling such correlations causal in Hume’s sense, nor is there need to deny the implication of generality.

Generalization of this kind will be possible, however, only across systems with similar designs, and this condition severely restricts the scope of generalization in the biological sciences and upwards. By way of compensation, there can be generalizations over systems with different designs but the same function, though these generalizations are so far unconcerned with details of the mediating mechanisms. Either way the result is that there is no ‘general theory’ of biological function. What we have rather is many specific (sub-)theories, concerning the function and design of such as the heart, kidney, liver, limbic system etc, with often different theories for different species. —In psychology the same point applies, even more so as we deal with more highly differentiated cognitive-affective functions. We have (sub-) theories of vision and of memory, for example, more or less varying across different species, and often different depending on the kind of information being processed. In psychology, as in biology, there is no ‘general theory’ of function. In psychology there was of course an early attempt to construct a general theory of at least one fundamental function, learning, which would be applicable across the phylogenetic and ontogenetic scales, i.e. the theory of conditioning. The theory explicitly aspired to the status of the general laws of the natural (sub-biological) sciences. But such aspiration is misconceived. Once we deal (explicitly) with systemic function, generality of the kind achieved in physics and chemistry is unattainable, and more importantly, inappropriate. Bio-psychological systems have diverse functions and fulfil them by diverse means. The scientific method appropriate in the case of such systems is investigation of specifics.
The above considerations raise the question to what extent we can expect to find generalizations concerning cognitive-affective states, their environmental causes and their behavioural effects. Such connections are essentially relative to the perceiving, acting living being concerned. Given species differences, individual differences within species, particularly in human beings, given the diversity of contexts in which action occurs, it would seem so far that the prospects for generalization are slim.

That said, there is in fact no shortage of generalizations concerning cognitive-affective states, their causes and effects. However, generalization here is of a special kind, and is achieved at some cost. Examples of generalizations over cognitive-affective states include the following. Fear is caused by (perception of) stimuli which are (interpreted as) threatening, for example because associated with pain, or just because they are novel, and results, depending on many factors, including (perceived) context, in such behaviours as search, defence, avoidance, or preparation for attack (e.g. Gray 1982). Or again, the cognitive-affective state of helplessness results from persistent or traumatic (perceived) lack of control over major aversive events, such as pain, or deprivation, and ensues in behavioural inertia (e.g. Seligman 1975).

Such generalizations invoke informational content, or meaning. Stimuli are perceived as having a certain significance, resulting in a cognitive-affective state with a particular content, which generates in turn, in a way depending on perceived meaning of context and on aims, appropriate intentional, meaningful behaviour (or, in the case of helplessness in particular, appropriate cessation of intentional behaviour). In this sense, the generalizations are over ‘meaningful connections’. Jaspers cites other examples: attacked people become angry and spring to the defence, cheated people grow suspicious (1923, p. 302).

So there are generalizations over cognitive-affective states, their causes and effects, and they typically invoke meaningful connections. It may be seen, however, that such generalizations are somewhat vague, or non-specific. This is of course connected to the well-known multi-factorial nature of the processes involved. There is variation among species, among individuals, this in turn compounded by variation in (perceived) characteristics of particular situations. The generalizations cover many different kinds of case, and many different particular cases. What counts as threat, novelty, pain, defence, lack of control, deprivation, attack, cheating, suspicion, etc. differs, more or less, between species, individuals, and contexts.

Although the generalizations are vague, their instances can in principle be described in highly specific ways. “This person, in this mental state, finds that such-and-such is intolerably offensive, and so retaliates in these ways …”. Description of the details in particular cases contains much information,
in principle as much as is being used (consciously or otherwise) by the agent. Hence the familiar idea that meaningful connections are by their nature highly specific, even to the extent of being ‘unique’, instanced in but one particular case. On this particularity, for example Jaspers writes (1923, p. 314):

We all know a great many psychic connections which we have learnt from experience (not only through repetition but through having understood one real case which opened our eyes). … Such meaningful connections as we all know and as constantly conveyed by our language lose all their force if we try to give them a general formulation. Anything really meaningful tends to have a concrete form and generalization destroys it.

Compared with the particular instance, the corresponding generalization is less informative. The implication is that specificity in particular cases makes generalization problematic: it can be achieved, but at the expense of information. Generalizations concerning meaningful connections thus do not capture the data inherent in particular cases, but are rather abstractions achieved by reduction of content. In this respect such generalizations stand in marked contrast to those in the (sub-biological) natural sciences.

As summaries of observations of particular cases, generalizations concerning meaning leave much to be desired. However, summary of observations is not the only function of such generalizations. As noted earlier in this section, they also have a ‘non-empirical’ role in theory, as expressions of norms. Consider again Jaspers’ examples: attacked people become angry and spring to the defence, cheated people grow suspicious. As noted earlier in this section, such propositions possess an element of non-empirical necessity, involved with norms. If they seemed not to hold in a particular case, we would be inclined to investigate further to see whether first appearances were deceptive, and insofar as investigations were negative, the generalization can still be retained, by considering the possibility that the person is not acting ‘normally’ (appropriately, meaningfully, rationally). It can be seen in these and similar examples that generalizations concerning meaning are not simply the result of observation, but rather serve as rules for the interpretation and investigation of the phenomena, and in particular, for the diagnosis of disorder.

Jaspers was right to emphasize the particularity of meaningful phenomena. It is a mistake, however, to suppose that generalization here is impossible. Generalization over meaningful connections is possible, though, as Jaspers again recognized, it is unlike empirical generalization. It is not grounded in induction from observed cases, nor, a related point, is it overthrown by anomalies. This non-empirical character generalizations about meaning is not, however, derived from a covering general theory. Rather, meaningful generalizations function as expressions of norms of appropriateness (rationality) for
particular kinds of cognitive-affective states, their causes and effects. They concern norms for specific cognitive-affective sub-systems: trust, fear, grief, anger, curiosity, rationality, and so on. In these contexts the laws are ‘logical’—‘psycho-logical’—rather than empirical.

The distinction at issue here may be drawn also in this way. Empirical generalization is grounded in enumeration of instances. In meaningful, psychological generalization, by contrast, single instances already contain the general. If connections are perceived as meaningful in just one instance, the perceived meaning immediately assumes the status of a rule for the interpretation and investigation of other, similar cases. In this sense generality is inherent in meaning. Hence the inevitable though hazardousness ease with which we move here from the particular to the general.

Meaningful generalizations can be used in such a way as to be immune from revision by experience. If they seem to fail in a particular case, appeal can be made to one or another mitigating circumstance, and in particular, to failure of ‘normal’ function. However, as noted earlier what we have here is only relative immunity from revision. Theories of normal function can change, from pressure of empirical anomalies, consolidated by paradigm shifts, and what was at one time a rule for the interpretation of phenomena can become treated as an empirical generalization which turns out to be false.

The dual aspect of propositions which invoke meaningful connections, which function on the one hand as summaries of empirical correlations and on the other as rules of normal function, is relevant to an aspect of the issue of discreteness of cause and effect, discussed in the second section (Section 4.2) and subsequently in relation to functional semantics (Section 4.4). Hume’s analysis emphasized that if two events are causally related they (their descriptions) must be logically independent. However, some propositions that invoke meaningful connections apparently flout this condition. We can say, for example, that if someone believes that p, then she tends to act in a way which accords with that belief. In this formulation the belief and the action fall under the same intensional description. It is tempting then to suppose that the generalization is simply true ‘by definition’, without substantial content; in particular that it does not specify an empirical association between two independent events, and is for that reason not a causal proposition. However, this line of thought, which would support the dichotomy between meaning and causality, can be seen in the light of considerations in this and the preceding subsection to be over-simple and invalid. Meaningful generalizations are not true ‘by definition’, at least, not by definition of words. One might say that they are true by definition of the meaningfulness of psychological processes. They are true insofar as agents are behaving meaningfully: normally, appropriately,
with ‘everything intact’. The generalizations can fail insofar as the condition of normality is not met. We can imagine cases, indeed there are of course actual cases, in which a person shows clear signs of having such-and-such a belief, but nevertheless behaves in ways incompatible with that belief. The implication of this possibility of failure is that a belief and its normal effects can become dissociated, so that there are indeed two independent states (processes) at work here. This being so one more support for the dichotomy between meaningful and causal connections appears invalid.

The considerations so far in this section on meaning and causality lead to a perspective on the new/old problem of free will and agency. This problem is of course in fact a set of interrelated problems, each of which and the connections between them are complicated. But consider something like the following line of thought, which brings into question not so much freedom as action itself: insofar as we suppose that all of nature proceeds according to laws, then it seems as though what we are inclined to call human action is rather part of a larger process, following these laws of nature, in which nothing new, nothing not covered by law, could appear. Each branch of knowledge, each ‘science’ in the broadest sense, could give its own account of this process and the laws which it followed, as in theology, in mechanics, and to some extent also in evolutionary biology, psychology, and sociology. So we have the idea of natural law, of what happens under natural law, but no fundamentally distinct notion of action; a forteriori, then, no notion of free action. — The only concept on offer in this thought space seems to be just that the law can sometimes be broken. In the case of divine law, theology struggled with the problem of free-will. In the case of natural law, in the modern scientific world-view picture, the idea that the law can fail, can be broken, is out of place. In any case, lawlessness, what looks as though it may be caprice or chance, may offer no attractive analysis of (free) action. Thus there seems to be an unattractive choice between action being subsumed under general laws, and its being law-less. It is possible however to deconstruct this dichotomy.9

The argument so in this section has been that our notion of causality, and the notion of law-like necessity to which it is linked, is inevitably modified in application from the lower-level natural sciences, to the biological, then up into psychology. The ‘laws’ involved in causality become increasingly specific. At the same time, and by the same considerations, the origin of law appears increasingly specific, from the whole of nature, to parts.

This point may be illustrated as follows. Explanation of why a living being, a dog say, when unsupported falls to the ground, appeals to the nature of the physical body as one among all others. Explanation of food-seeking appeals to the nature of the dog as a living being; more particular styles of behaviour are
explained in terms of the dog’s being a dog. To the extent that one dog behaves much like another, at least so far as we are concerned, we attribute the cause of the dog’s behaviour to the nature of its species, rather than to the individual. As to human beings, there are perhaps also actions, or reactions, which are common to all, or to all human beings of a particular culture, and for these we may want to find causes within human nature, or within society, rather than in individuals. The question is where the authorship lies.

The concept of individual action takes hold in cases where human beings act differently from one another. It is by experiencing the diversity of the actions of others that a human being can realize her own possibilities, between which she must choose. When a person acts in the way she has chosen, the reason for the action can be attributed to no nature other than her own. What a person does then is self-caused, with inner necessity due to the person’s nature; and in this sense such an action is the agent’s responsibility, and ‘free’.

Human action does conform to laws, but these laws become increasingly specific, reaching the point at which the law is the ‘inner law’ of the agent. Another way of expressing the point would be to say that human action does not simply conform with, but nor does it ‘break’, natural laws. Within these terms, the point would be rather that our action creates natural law, that we are in this sense small, human-size, miracles. By all means we are at this point a long way away from general natural law of the kind known in the physical sciences, but the transition here is developmental: individual agency is what general natural law becomes.

This conclusion is consistent with the line of thought in the previous chapter (Section 3.3), concerning what it means to follow a rule. Wittgenstein’s argument as interpreted there is to the effect that in activity that accords with a rule—a concept that underlies meaning, rationality, and regularities in the world—the rule is made in practice, in the activity itself, as opposed to being given in advance, in acts of mind, or in pictures, formulae, tables, and other expressions of rules. The argument is a priori, a matter of logic, and is not concerned with causes of action. However, at the philosophical level of generality, these various kinds of points tend to merge. If logic comes to the conclusion that action involves the creation of order, it is likely that the analysis of causal law will come to something like the same conclusion, that action is self-caused, etc.

Also in the sciences themselves there is expression of the very general idea that action involves the creation of order, for example in Schroedinger’s (1967) suggestion that living systems are local areas in which entropy is in reverse compared with the overall direction in the second law of thermodynamics. This suggestion in turn belongs with the shift from causal to functional semantics recommended in the previous section, the implication of
which is that systemic functional activity creates information (cf. Sayre 1976, 1986; Oyama 1985; Wicken 1987). There are deep connections between concepts such as order, entropy, information, action and intentionality, anticipated in the intimate link between cognition and affect (Section 1.1.2). In recent developmental approaches to the behavioural and brain sciences there has appeared a concept linked to ‘self-causation’ and ‘agency’, namely ‘self-organization’. Self-organization is understood as a process in which order and complexity create more order and complexity, proceeding hierarchically as each level of self-organization builds on the level that precedes it. Self-organization is closely linked with temperament and affect regulation (Derryberry and Rothbart 1997), may well essentially involve representations of others (Aiken and Trevarthen 1997; Fonagy and Target 1997), and can be implemented in models of neural circuitry (Schore 1997).

The argument proposed above is that as behaviour becomes more particular and less general, then its causes are seen correspondingly as more particular and less general. This process reaches its height in the case of human action, which is seen as self-caused; that is, as opposed to being attributable to our nature as physical bodies, living beings, human beings, of a particular culture, etc. But this perception is by all means highly theory-dependent! Roughly, the methodological rule is to attribute the origins of action to the entity which is acting, … until we find out more about the general laws under which it falls. It follows that the more we know about, say, the psychological principles governing human behaviour, the less we are inclined to say that the particular person is the cause of the act. This, it should be remarked, apparently threatens the moral idea of individual responsibility for action. So it may be that after all we have to envisage a form of determinism that seems to rule out (individual) action, not linked to mechanics, but to the twentieth-century paradigm for explaining human behaviour. —On the other hand, we have the fact that there is, objectively, according to current deeply entrenched biological and psychological theory, increasing differentiation along the phylogenetic scale, and then along the ontogenetic scale. Generality decreases, specificity (individuality) increases. This spectrum is in the phenomena (in nature). Another aspect of the same point is the special characteristic of the generalization that emerges as we deal with increasingly specific systems. As noted previously there are generalizations in biology and in psychology, but they are achieved at the expense of loss of information about specifics. They assume the role more of methodological propositions for the investigation of specifics, as opposed to being empirical generalizations that summarize individual instances. From this it follows that as much as we learn more about the psychological principles of human behaviour, this general knowledge cannot wholly grasp the origins of the individual’s activity.
4.6 Summary

The conclusion that meaningful explanations of action are causal was reached in the first chapter, based primarily on the fact that they deliver theory-driven predictive power. The meaningful explanations are those of folk psychology, but the same considerations encompass models in cognitive psychology and indeed in biology, which share the fundamental idea that functional systemic activity is regulated by information-carrying states. The main argument of the present chapter has been that while explanations of this general kind are causal, their logic is not captured by certain familiar interpretations of causality.

The traditional analyses of causality were sketched in Section 4.2. Hume proposed that causal propositions are based in observation of association between kinds of event. However, this analysis failed to capture the necessity in causal propositions, a gap which has to be made good by distinguishing mere generalizations from those which are or which are covered by natural law, in particular of physics. Essential features of causal propositions according to this kind of analysis are thus empirical correlation covered by a general physical law. Meaningful explanations do exhibit the features which are expected of causal explanation—necessity and generality—though not in the way envisaged by the views of causality already outlined.

Nevertheless, once it is granted that meaningful explanations are causal, there is great pressure to bring them into the domain of the physical sciences and the notion of causality appropriate to them. Causal semantics, discussed in Section 4.3, is one way of doing this. The proposal is that A carries information about B in case B causes A, i.e. in case there is a correlation between events of kind A and events of kind B covered by a natural law. As a theory of content this tends to be either vacuous or inadequate however, and generally causal semantics fails to capture several linked features of signs, that they can be incorrect as well as correct, and that are typically related to the signified by convention, not natural law.

Neglect of the systemic contribution to information processing and content is the main failing of causal semantics, and is made good by so-called functional semantics, to which we turned in Section 4.4. The main idea of functional semantics is that content is to be defined with reference to the (normal) function of the information-processing system. Two versions of functional semantics were considered. In its ‘causal’ version, the notion of normal function is used to make a normative distinction among the causes of information-carrying states, and hence a normative distinction among the contents of such states, with the critical task of defining the normative distinction among causes.
to be performed by biological/evolutionary theory. Contrary to an argument of Fodor’s, evolutionary theory can deliver intensional descriptions of functions and objects, and hence also a theory of error. It was subsequently argued that a behavioural version of functional semantics can deliver the same. Causal-functional semantics disguises the fact that the notion of normal function affords primarily a normative distinction among behavioural responses, and that it is this which grounds the distinction between true and false informational content. Functional semantics in its behavioural version makes this explicit.

The intimate connection between intentional states and functional systems is what gives rise to the special causal status of intentional explanations. The familiar account of causality in terms of generality covered by natural law is appropriate for the lower-level sciences, physics and chemistry, up to, but not including, biology. With the appearance of (the study of) functional systems, in biology and psychology, different principles of causality come into play, different approaches to necessity and generality, considered in Section 4.5. If prediction from physical theory fails, and statements of initial conditions are sound, then there is an error somewhere in the theory. Either that or there has been a miracle! By contrast, if prediction from a meaningful generalization fails in a particular case, then certainly the generalization can be abandoned, but there is another possibility, namely, that the system in question is failing to function normally. This possibility is analogous to the breakdown of law, which the physical sciences never envisage. But in the case of systems breakdown can and does occur. The ‘laws’ being broken are not general laws of nature, but are rather rules or norms which apply specifically to one or another kind of functional system. In this way the causal necessity in explanations of systemic function is based in norms of function, not in general laws of nature. This is one aspect of the difference between functional semantic causality and the kind envisaged in the standard analyses. Further, while it is possible to make generalizations concerning systemic function, and meaning in particular, they are restricted to, precisely, one or another kind of functional system. The sciences from biology upwards are concerned with specifics. A connected point is that generalization tends to be at the expense of information about particular cases. This point increases in relevance as specificity of function increases, in particular as we make generalizations about meaningful connections among higher-level cognitive-affective states and action. Implications for the concept of agency fall out of the analysis (Section 4.6.3). Causal power is attributed to what is specific to the agent to the extent that explanation cannot be given in terms of a more general nature. In the extreme case, the individual person is identified as the causal origin of the act.
Endnotes

1. It should be remarked here that the distinction we are working towards is not that between non-functional and functional explanations. Functional (or teleological) explanations which appeal to principles such as ‘The function of chlorophyll in plants is to enable plants to perform photosynthesis’, are characteristic of biology, and in their appeal to function, or purpose, they appear different from the non-functional explanations found in the sub-biological sciences. On the other hand, standard philosophy of science is that explanations of this type can be analysed into a set of non-functional, non-teleological statements (e.g. Nagel 1961). But this distinction and its apparent superficiality is not what is at issue here. We are concerned rather with the distinction between explanations which do, and explanations which do not, invoke semantic concepts (information-processing). A functional-teleological explanation of an information-processing system may be given in the form: ‘A system of such-and-such kind encodes/processes information in order to facilitate such-and-such kind of activity’. It may be possible, along the lines of the standard analysis (Nagel 1961), to render this as a set of non-functional, non-teleological propositions, but the expression ‘encodes/processes information’ survives the analysis untouched. It is this expression, we suggest, which signifies a form of causal explanation distinct from what is found in the sub-biological natural sciences.

2. No one is better aware of this cleft-stick, and the problem of escaping it, than Fodor, but he has remained committed to causal semantics nevertheless. In his (1990) paper to be discussed below in the text Fodor proposes a causal semantics that relies on one of the two options, defining environmental causes of semantic states in terms of the properties identified by the content they are said to cause, apparently choosing to ignore for the sake of argument the risk of vacuity. Earlier, in his well-known paper ‘Methodological solipsism considered as a research strategy in cognitive science’, Fodor (1980) endorses the other option open to causal semantics, definition of meaningful content in terms of its physically defined environmental causes. This physicalist version of causal semantics is consistent with the physicalist construal of causality (Section 4.2), as involving coverage by physical laws. It is also closely related to the idea, discussed and rejected in the second chapter (Section 2.5), that ‘meaning is not in the head’. The main point in the background here is that if the key concepts of meaning and causality are interpreted in a physicalist way, they turn out to
have nothing to do with cognitive behavioural psychology. Thus we find that Fodor in his (1980) paper endorses the physicalist version of causal semantics, but he does not recommend its use in cognitive psychology. On the contrary, he argues that it offers to cognitive psychology an impossible methodology! The implication is that cognitive psychology has to manage without any semantics at all. Indeed, Fodor proposes, it has to manage without any account of the (causal) interactions between organism and the environment. Rather, cognitive psychology is confined to a ‘solipsist’ methodology. In this way Fodor provides a salutary lesson on the consequences of applying the physicalist construal of causality to psychology. The main point in reply is that the cognitive states that regulate action, and the activity they regulate, are intentional: they have ‘aboutness’ in relation to the environment, and are not suited to a ‘solipsistic’ methodology.

3. This account is intended to be relatively uncontentious cognitive psychology. Cognitive psychological theories of vision are concerned with physical features and particularly their invariance relations, but acknowledge more advanced stages of processing which involve the ‘semantics’ of objects, including use and purpose (e.g. Marr 1982). The points made in the text against causal semantics, that it neglects the agent-relativity of informational content, and that content exceeds what can be specified in physicalist terms, echo the arguments in the second chapter against Putnam’s claim that ‘meaning ain’t in the head’ (Section 2.5).

4. Dretske (1981, 1983) attempted to allow for error by distinguishing between causal links between sign and signified established during learning and causal links established subsequently, and perhaps wrongly. Fodor has convincingly argued that this does not work (1987, p. 102f.). Fodor proceeds to develop a highly sophisticated causal semantic theory that does indeed afford distinction between correct and incorrect content, resting on what Fodor calls the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence (1987, 1990). However, there are in our view two weaknesses in Fodor’s theory. One is that it depends essentially on the idea that properties (as opposed to their instances) are the causes of mental content. This idea has already been criticized in the text for its apparent obscurity, not least from the point of view of scientific investigation and explanation. The other weakness concerns specifically the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence. The Principle solves the problem of error, and the closely related problem of ambiguity of mental content, but at the critical point of solution Fodor appeals to the behavioural characteristics, specifically to ‘recovery from error’ (Fodor 1990, p. 107). In this way the distinction between truth and error turns fundamentally on
systemic behaviour, and the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence, with its apparatus of properties and causal associations, appears only as an embellishment. This criticism of Fodor’s solution is elaborated below, Section 4.4 Note 7.

5. While the Mathematical Theory of Information, or Communication, (Shannon and Weaver 1949) is concerned with quantities of information and explicitly not with informational content, and it is therefore irrelevant to the definition of the latter (Dretske 1981, 1983; see also above, Section 1.1.1), it is the case that it defines quantity of information as essentially relative to the receiving system, in particular to the information already possessed. Our main objection to causal semantics to be made in this section is that it neglects this essential relativity in the case of informational content.


7. Fodor’s (1990) sophisticated causal semantics seeks to secure what a simple causal semantics cannot secure, solution of the problem of ambiguity of content and of the related problem of error. Fodor’s solution rests on appeal to what he calls the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence. It was remarked above in Section 4.3 (Note 4), that while Fodor’s Principle succeeds, it does so only because it helps itself to criteria which go beyond what is available to causal semantics. This remark can now be justified. Fodor argues, by application of the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence, that the intentional object of the frog’s fly-snaps is ambient black dots rather than flies, and hence that non-fly snaps are not errors. Crucial to the argument, however, is appeal to behavioural characteristics. Thus: frogs ‘are prepared to go on going for bee-bees forever’, they are not ‘in a position to recover’, they ‘have no way at all of telling flies from bee-bees’, in particular no discrimination by use of another modality (Fodor 1990, p. 107 and Note 19, original italics). By contrast, Fodor observes, he can tell the difference between a fly and a bee-bee, and if he swats at the latter he has made a mistake, from which he can ‘recover’ (loc.cit.), i.e. presumably, he makes a mistake that he can correct. In this way Fodor appeals to discriminative and corrective behaviour, or their absence, in his definition of content and error. The position is, then, that Fodor’s sophisticated causal semantics, by use of the Principle of Asymmetric Dependence, can indeed resolve ambiguity of content and provide a solution to the problem of error, but by appeal to resources that exceed what is permitted to causal semantics, concerning (presence or absence of) discriminative and/or functional behaviour.
The idea that content and error should be defined in these terms belongs rather to functional semantics.


9. The problems here are discussed in the literature in connection with two positions usually called compatibilism and incompatibilism (Searle 1984; Honderich 1988; Ginet 1989; Bishop 1989; Dretske 1992). According to the former free will is compatible with the fact that our action conforms to natural laws, while according to the latter it is incompatible. The proposal to be made in the text identifies with neither of these views.

References


Fodor, J. (1991) You can fool some of the people all of the time, everything else being equal; hedged laws and psychological explanation. *Mind*, 100, 19–34.


Chapter 5

Two forms of causality in biological and psychological processes

5.1 Introduction

In the previous chapter we worked towards the conclusion that there are two types of causal explanation. One is the familiar neo-Humean causal relation, based in observation of empirical correlations, covered by general natural law. This notion of causality well suits the lower-level natural sciences, physics and chemistry, but the attempt under the heading of ‘causal semantics’ to make it cover the causation that involves information, found in biology upwards, fails for many reasons. Following the criticisms of causal semantics we considered ‘functional semantics’ which defines content and causality together essentially by reference to functional systems. We considered some aspects of this functional semantic causality, specifically those relating to norms, generalization and necessity. In this chapter we consider in more detail the features and characteristics of the two forms of causality and the relations between them. Against the background of extensive use in the first four chapters of the concept of intentionality, the two forms of causation will be from now on called the ‘non-intentional’ and the ‘intentional’.

The task of this chapter is to elaborate the distinctive character of intentional causality and its relation to non-intentional causality. We shall see that causal explanations which invoke mental states have many features that distinguish them from non-intentional causal explanations. However, the proposal is far from raising any possibility of a mind–body dualism. Rather, we argue that both forms of causal explanation apply throughout biological systems, whether psychological, physiological, or biochemical. In particular, intentional causal processes can be seen to operate across the phylogenetic scale, in all biological processes of any given organism, and throughout human psychological development. This form of causality was referred to in a previous paper (Hill 1982) in terms of ‘reasons’, but we have preferred to use ‘intentional causes’ here in order to underline their causal role, and to emphasize that the concept does not refer only to psychological causality.
The proposal is biological but not ‘downward’, or reductionist. It runs counter to a prevalent assertion that the aim of biology is the explanation of living processes in physico-chemical terms, and instead highlights the levels of abstraction and intentionality already present in non-psychological living systems. It will be seen that this is of crucial importance in the area of psychology and psychiatry where a very specific reductionist interpretation of the meaning of ‘biological’ has been widely espoused (Guze 1989; Scadding 1990). It is equally relevant in other areas. For instance Ingold (1990) has outlined the consequences for social anthropology, of a psychobiology that leaves phenomena such as culture stranded as in some way ‘non-biological’.

The method employed will consist first of a presentation of the characteristics of intentional causes, contrasted with non-intentional causes. We will illustrate the application of the analysis to a number of biological processes. We will then show that explanations which invoke intentional causality cannot be translated into accounts which invoke non-intentional causality, and that for the same reasons a reduction of biological and psychological processes to physico-chemical terms cannot on a priori grounds be effected. The general point to be made is that processes characterized by intentional causes cannot be redescribed in a reduction that is unable to specify the same informational content. However it will be seen that this holds only where the system is functioning normally, and that under conditions of malfunction the explanation may be in terms of a non-intentional cause, such as that where pathology is identified in disease. This in some ways resembles a reduction in the level of explanation from the physiological or psychological to the physico-chemical.

Having established the case for biological systems in general we will examine in Chapter 6 examples from different points in the phylogenetic scale, and at different stages in human psychological development, and this will constitute a further test, and an illustration of the utility of, the proposition. We will argue further that this and other approaches should be tested not only in relation to discrete acts of perception, or computational tasks, but should provide an analysis of real life activities including those where there is distress or disturbance. There will be a discussion of the interplay between intentional and non-intentional causes, and a specification of conditions under which each is sought in giving an account of psychological function and dysfunction, which will lead in Chapters 7, 8, and 9 to a more detailed consideration of psychiatric disorder.

5.2 **Intentional causality: 15 principles**

The principles of the operation of intentional causes can be specified generally, with reference to any biochemical or physiological processes, and the regulation
of blood pressure in the cardiovascular system will be used to illustrate the points. The description of such regulation will be of the form: ‘pressure receptors in the walls of the major arteries (baroreceptors) respond to changes in arterial blood pressure leading to an alteration in the frequency of impulses in the nerves which travel to the specialized (vasomotor) centre in the medulla oblongata region of the brain, resulting in an alteration in the frequency of impulses in the (sympathetic and parasympathetic) nerves running to the blood vessels and the heart. Alterations in blood pressure lead via this mechanism to changes in the diameter of the blood vessels and heart rate, with consequent compensatory changes in blood pressure.’ Fifteen principles involved in this regulation may be identified, as follows:

**Information and intentionality**

Firstly the receptors, nerves, and brain stem structures carry information about blood pressure. The physical state of each of these elements is of no causal relevance apart from its capacity to encode the level of blood pressure. Put another way, the physical states in the neural pathways concerned with the regulation of blood pressure are directed towards a state of affairs elsewhere, and therefore they have intentionality. This concept is very familiar in respect of psychological process, ‘Intentionality is that property of many mental states and events by which they are directed at or about or of objects and states of affairs in the world, (Searle 1983). By ‘mental’ Searle is referring to states such as beliefs, desires, hopes, and fears. We are in complete sympathy with Searle’s analysis of intentionality, except that we do not agree that it is bounded by the mental. In practice Searle allows some extension accepting that human perception, and some non-human psychological states, for instance those of dogs, have intentionality. In arguing for the intentionality of visual experience, Searle writes ‘the visual experience is as much directed at or of objects and states of affairs in the world as any of the paradigm intentional states (such as beliefs, wishes, desires)…’. We will show that there is no principled difference between the directedness of neural events associated with changes in blood pressure, that of the dance of the bee in respect of the direction of nectar, the preference of the new born infant for looking at the human face, and the fully fledged belief of an adult that land mines are dangerous.

**Normal and abnormal processes**

Secondly, we note that the description is of the normal functioning of the system. The response of the regulatory systems is referred to as ‘normal’, ‘correct’, or ‘appropriate’, and it follows that incorrect, abnormal, or inappropriate responses can be identified. In the absence of these or equivalent terms, there
would not be an adequate explanation of the regulation of blood pressure nor of the failure to regulate blood pressure. This is consistent with Searle’s assertion, in respect of mental states, that intentional states have ‘conditions of satisfaction or success’. Beliefs are satisfied when what is believed is true, the patterning of electrical impulses in the neurone is satisfied if it accurately represents blood pressure.

**Goals**

Thirdly, the definition of normal functioning of the system requires a specification of its goals. In the absence of mention of this, when talking of the maintenance of blood pressure, we will not have criteria for normal or abnormal functioning. Ethological explanations of animal behaviours, similarly, entail a specification of their goals (Tinbergen 1948; Hinde 1982).

**Purpose**

Fourth, reference is made to the purpose of this system. This specifies the task that is achieved in relation to survival, and places the organism within an evolutionary framework. In these third and fourth points it will be clear that we are talking of a teleological account, and two rather contrasting points need to be made about this. There is no doubt that this account joins those of Polanyi (1958), Tinbergen (1948), and Hinde (1982) in asserting that *descriptively* a teleological explanation is required. For many purposes this will put the ultimate purpose in terms of survival, although as we shall see, as our thesis develops, the concept of purpose in human psychological functioning changes. It does not however disappear. We will see that descriptions that lack teleology will lack also intentionality, and so both are crucial to the prediction of the behaviour of biological systems. Nevertheless at no point will it be argued that the teleological account includes an explanation of the way any particular function has come about. Certainly once the role of intentional causality is described, some questions may be posed regarding its origins in biological systems, but these are not the concern of this analysis.

**Range of function and preoccupation**

Fifth, the frequency of the nerve impulses to the brain is not defined by the blood pressure but by the preoccupation of the system, which is to monitor the blood pressure in relation to its normal level. In humans, below an arterial blood pressure of 50 mmHg there are no impulses, the frequency increases slowly over the next 30 mmHg, and then the rate of increase accelerates between 80 and 160 mmHg, and plateaus at about 200 mmHg. Thus it shows a maximum response in relation to the point around which it is required to
regulate blood pressure. Other blood pressures are of no ‘interest’. Here, and throughout biological systems, we need a concept of what matters to the system. This does not amount to semantics in the usual sense of the term, nor would it be useful to stretch it this far, nevertheless it is a precursor of what we recognize as meaning when referring to the activities of the mind.

Action
Next, the response of the cardiovascular system is an action. Action here refers to behaviour that is informed by the implication of the stimulus for the system, and is an appropriate response to it. In general, intentional causal processes whether within the internal environment of the organism (milieu interieur) or in the organism in its external environment (milieu exterieur), have implications for action. Thus events in the environment, the preoccupations of the system or organism, and actions are closely linked elements of intentional causal processes. As we shall see in examples of animal behaviour, and normal human behaviour, perceptual and cognitive responses generally lead to effective action. Similarly in interpersonal functioning the capacity for appropriate action in social settings is crucial. In considering the possibility of disorder, we will be concerned with the difference between behaviour and action, and with conditions under which effective action is not possible.

Selectivity and accuracy
The link to actions points to the need for efficiency in intentional processes. The information processing deals with those particular aspects of a stimulus that are relevant to action. It is selective. There is not a response to what is ‘out there’ in terms of a complete objective account, but to those aspects of what is out there that are relevant to what the system is up to. When we come to a consideration of the relationship of organisms to events in the environment, we shall see that the same point applies. The analysis has to place the organism as central to the process in that it determines which aspects of the environment are relevant. Some theories of psychopathology postulate deficits in an individual’s capacity to select from a large number of sensory inputs and hence ineffective action.

Differences
Eighth, the system deals predominantly in differences. It is most exquisitely tuned to departures from the normal. As we shall see in further examples, biological systems in general respond to departures from the expected in terms of key features rather than by detection or perception of the object as a whole.
Rules, convention and agreement

The ninth feature is that the changes in blood pressure and the alterations in the frequencies of impulses in the nerves require rules that specify what the frequencies will stand for. In their absence there could be no systematic link between the pressure of the blood in the arteries and the frequencies of transmitted impulses. The tenth feature follows directly from the ninth and it is that the rules are conventionalized. That is to say they take the form of ‘let frequency X stand for blood pressure Y where X is open to a range of possibilities limited by the properties of the nerves.’ Thus, the physical properties of the nerve provide some constraints, but the convention linking the frequencies to the blood pressure changes provides the specification of those frequencies. This point is easily missed because we are familiar with conventions that are created among people, but not with those that are wired in within organisms and not in practice subject to change. Nevertheless, the principle is the same, for we could envisage a system that conveyed the same information about blood pressure but had a starting frequency of $X_1$ impulses per second that corresponded to a blood pressure of up to 50 mmHg and increased to $X_2$ impulses per second at 200 mmHg. Provided these frequencies changed in a manner that bore the same systematic relation to blood pressure their absolute values would not matter. It follows (principle eleven) from the specification of conventionalized rule-bound responses that this convention has to apply throughout the system. Thus the convention covering the relationship between blood pressure and frequency of impulses that are generated at the receptor has to be ‘read’ in the same way at the brain, otherwise the information will be lost. As we shall see, in more sophisticated sensory systems such as that of the visual system, the convention must be shared among several elements. We can speak, therefore of an agreement among the elements of the system about the information that is carried by a given physical state such as the frequency of impulses in the nerves.

Physical–intentional asymmetry

The twelfth principle is that the information (about blood pressure) can be encoded in a wide range of physical entities, and the intentionality is not specifiable by the physical state of the system only. A non-neuronal system might encode the information in terms of exactly the same range of frequencies as those seen in the nervous impulses, but the physical entities along which such frequencies were transmitted might be quite different. In one sense the physical entity is seen to be the servant of the functioning of the system. This point is made intentionally in a way which underlines the abstract nature of
the processes. However it is made with a further qualification, namely that the materials do matter. The physico-chemical laws are not violated and the processes have to take advantage of these physico-chemical properties in order to perform functions. Put another way biological systems consist of both form and substance, and a separation of the two is not sought in this analysis.

**Processes not specifiable by energy equations**

A further, thirteenth feature of intentional causes, which brings them into sharp contrast with non-intentional causes is that they cannot be specified using energy equations. The energy of neuronal transmission is generated within the nerve and is not caused by the force of the blood pressure. The energy or force entailed in a change of blood pressure does not enter into the equation specifying its representation, as this is defined by the convention that we have already described. It follows that the blood pressure could, in theory, be represented by a range of frequencies each involving different levels of energy expenditure. Thus, the link between the stimulus and the response does not violate the laws of physics, nor however do these laws enable us to define the response.

**Specialist receptors**

The fourteenth distinctive element of intentional causality is that it can act only via specialized receptors. The link between the blood pressure and the impulses in the nerves, which we could now reasonably call signals, requires an apparatus that translates blood pressure into the specified frequencies of nervous impulses. This is the interface between the physical changes of blood pressure and the encoded frequencies of the afferent nerves. The change of blood pressure stretches the baroreceptors, that is to say the force of the blood causes the stretching without the mediation of intentional processes, but the output of the receptor is variable depending on the blood pressure to which it is most sensitive. Thus, the physical changes induced in the receptor by the blood pressure are exploited to provide a measure of that blood pressure over a range that is closely linked to the task of maintaining a normal blood pressure. Whilst changes in blood pressure can initiate frequency changes via the baroreceptors, they will not have this effect at other points in the regulatory system where these receptors are absent. For instance, pressure applied directly to the nerve will have a local effect proportional to its force that may well damage it, but will not lead to a volley of impulses that represents such a pressure.

**Deception**

Finally, the regulatory system is capable of being deceived. Stimulation of the nerves from the baroreceptors at the same frequency as that produced by the
rise and fall of blood pressure would lead to a response of the vasomotor centre and the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves the same as that which would be observed if there were a change of blood pressure. Simulation leads to the same response as the actual stimulus.

The purpose of enumerating these 15 principles is to make them explicit and available for inspection as we proceed. They are however closely interlocking and exist in relation to each other. Two examples will illustrate the point. The notion of correct and incorrect responses can be seen to be linked directly to that of rules. The rules provide the basis from which the judgement of failure or breakdown can be made. Responses either follow the rule or break them. We should note that in the absence of rules, that is to say when only non-intentional causality applies, reference is made to the general laws of nature. These cannot by definition be broken except in a miracle, or in another universe. There may be observations that depart from the laws, but these are either disregarded, or provide a basis for the revision of those laws. However, when intentional responses depart from the prevailing rules, the rules may still hold whilst the responses are faulty. It is important to emphasize that we are considering here only the case where one set of rules applies, so that departures from them can be taken to be incorrect. As we shall see later, the position is different where more than one set of rules may be operating.

Similarly, the concept of purpose cannot be disconnected from intentionality and convention. The intentionality of the state of the system, for instance of nervous impulses, is related to the function that is performed by the system as a whole, and the set of rules provides the conditions under which the desired outcomes can be achieved.

5.3 Non-intentional causality

The implication thus far has been that the enumerated features of intentional causality are not to be found in the physical sciences. It is beyond the scope of this book to explore at any length the nature of physical causality. It has after all merited a substantial literature of its own. In the previous chapter (Section 4.2) we considered several closely connected interpretations of causality appropriate to the physical sciences, none of which of course involved intentional concepts, noting some of the unresolved issues.

Here we will re-emphasize that the nature of causality in physics and chemistry is not straightforward. The mechanistic classical mechanics of Newton have been supplanted by uncertainty, probability, and relativity, the last of which has been discussed in Chapter 3 (Section 3.4). This has led to questions about the possibility of determinist explanations in which outcomes can be predicted precisely from a given set of physical conditions, and a considerable
controversy that started with Einstein and Bohr over whether physics can deal only in probabilities, or whether uncertainty about outcomes is an expression of current ignorance. Thus the question of the extent to which available explanations are a function of what is ‘out there’ or of the observer, or an interaction between the two are unresolved. These ideas of the new physics with their emphasis on the fit between the physical phenomenon and the process of the mind of the scientist are entirely consistent with the argument presented so far and the one which will be further unravelled over the next chapters. At the same time, the nature of the explanations employed in that human activity, which must significantly reflect aspects of the reality, differ in key respects from those employed in our explanations of biology and psychology. This is our current focus. Therefore, we will not attempt, even briefly, a further review of current models or ideas in physics, but highlight further the difference between explanations that refer to non-intentional causality and those that involve intentional causality.

The concepts of information and intentionality have no place in physical or chemical descriptions (first principle). All terms such as signal, representation, or language, which denote information processing are absent. Physical states do not have intentionality, although the human preoccupation with intentionality has led to the interpretation of physical events as ‘warnings’ or ‘indicators’. Explanations of this kind, for instance linking a fall in atmospheric pressure to cloud and rain, involve the exploitation of the regular association of events rather than the representation of one event by another in the physical world. Non-intentional causality makes no reference to normal or correct functioning (second principle). There may be unexpected or unusual results, but these are by definition not contained within the general law to which the explanation appeals, and lead to its modification or occasionally to its abandonment. Similarly the concepts of goals and purposes are not required in the elaboration of physical laws or the prediction of events (third and fourth principles). The fifth, sixth, and seventh properties of intentional causes referring to the preoccupation of the system, the selectivity of responses and response to differences have no place in physico-chemical explanations. Nor does the concept of action as directed and informed (eighth principle). The ninth, tenth, and eleventh principles refer to rules, conventions, and agreements, none of which are to be found in physico-chemical explanations. As we have seen already the physical laws stand in a similar relationship to physical events as do rules to biological events, but they are universal, not alterable, and cannot be broken.

In relation to the thirteenth principle, explanations in physics and chemistry are contrasted with those of intentional causality in that they involve the writing of energy equations, and both Newtonian and Relativistic physics make
predictions on the basis of these. The fourteenth feature of intentional causality was the requirement for specialized receptors as mediators between physical events and intentional causal links. In contrast physico-chemical interactions can take place at any point, and depend only on the physical features such as the spatial configuration or electrical charges of the atoms and molecules. Finally, the concept of deception or mistaken responses is absent from physico-chemical systems.

5.4 The relationship between intentional and non-intentional causality

Having outlined the case for two distinctive types of causal process, we move to examine the relationship between the two. As we have made clear previously there is no disguised dualism in this theory, and the operation of the two forms of causality are closely linked. This will become apparent as we survey a range of non-psychological and psychological examples. However at this stage we can summarize the relationship by saying that intentional processes, whether psychological or not, take advantage of the physical properties of matter in order to achieve their ends. In the case of neuronal conduction, the impulses are generated by the movement of sodium and potassium ions, which alter the electrical potential across the cell membrane, which in turn leads to an alteration of the permeability of the membrane thus leading to further movement of ions. This is done in such a way that the information is transmitted accurately. Thus although we can give a non-intentional account of the way in which the end result is achieved, the parameters of the end result, and the judgement about whether it is the right one can be made only with reference to the functioning of the system, the information carried, and the ensuing action. This is the domain of intentional causality. We shall see later in this chapter that DNA makes use of the structure of nucleotides to encode genetic information, and that the structure of haemoglobin creates a spatial organization of atoms so that oxygen is transported and released to the tissues of the body. There is, therefore, a very close link between the physico-chemical properties of the ions, atoms, and molecules, and the organization of these that employs the principles of intentional causality.

This can be summarized with reference to physical–intentional asymmetry. Taking again the example of the conduction of nerve impulses in the control of the cardiovascular system then the relationship of intentional and non-intentional causality can be expressed in the form of three statements. The same frequency of impulses may have no intentionality, the same frequency may have a different intentionality, and a different frequency may have the
same intentionality. The first condition would apply where the nerves were stimulated by an electrode. The second would occur if the nerves could be transplanted and connected to receptors that monitored something different such as the acidity of the blood, in which case the same frequencies would have a quite different intentionality. In the third condition the same information about blood pressure would be embodied in a different set of frequencies. This would be possible provided the frequencies of impulses bore the same systematic relationship to blood pressure as the existing ones.

This principle will be seen in further examples in later chapters and we do not want to anticipate their working out yet. However, Fodor (1981) has provided a graphic argument for the same point applied to economics, and we include it here because of its clarity, and because it provides an indication of the extent of the applicability of the principle. He assumes that some general laws of economic transactions can be stated, and considers the range of possible physical manifestations of those laws (p.134), ‘Some monetary exchanges involve strings of wampum. Some involve dollar bills, and some involve signing one’s name to a check’, and then, ‘…what is interesting about monetary exchange is surely not their commonalities under physical description. A kind like a monetary exchange could turn out to be coextensive with a physical kind; but if it did, that would be an accident on a cosmic scale.’

Returning to the principles of intentional causality, the intentionality of the frequency of the nerve impulses and that of money are guaranteed where there are rules which follow a convention, and these are observed by the participant elements; whether in a neuronal circuit or monetary system.

5.5 **Intentional causality cannot be replaced by non-intentional**

What then of the possibility that intentional descriptions could, in principle, be recast in non-intentional terms. It will be clear by now to the reader that we believe that it is not possible. After all, the starting point of this chapter, taking up themes from earlier chapters, was that attempts to describe psychological processes using the same causal principles as those of physics and chemistry have led to major problems. The proposal presented here is intended to solve these. Furthermore, we have indicated already that intentional causality entails processes that are not found in physico-chemical processes. Nevertheless, it might be objected, surely the only real causality is physico-chemical and non-intentional, and in any case it is widely assumed in areas of psychiatry and psychology that the causes of disorder are likely to be established at a molecular level. We will come at the issue of the possible elimination of the intentional
from three directions in this section. First there are the arguments that intentional explanations could be replaced by physics and chemistry by a reduction of one to the other. Secondly there is the case, put particularly strongly by Searle, that non-mental intentional explanations are fine as a manner of speaking, but are not really explanatory. Thirdly, the question is posed what might be the consequences of trying to describe an intentional system with reference only to its physical components? We consider these three approaches in turn:

**Intentional explanations are not reducible**

‘Reductionism’ has had a long history, and has been understood in many different ways. We are interested in the strongest form of reduction, whereby the claim is made that explanations given in terms of intentional causality could be replaced by the ‘lower-level’ explanations of physics and chemistry. Following the argument from earlier in the book we will require a reduction to provide at least as good, and preferably a better, explanatory framework. This should enumerate the general principles by which the causal processes work, and should be effective at prediction.

As we saw in Chapter 2, there are powerful arguments against the reducibility of intentional states of mind and actions, and examples such as that provided by Fodor of the impossibility of a physical specification of the laws of economics, provide further support to the case. The question then arises as to whether non-psychological biological processes can be reduced. If they can, we will have to entertain the possibility of a dualism, whereby explanations of the mind are in some fundamental way different from those of biology more generally.

Nagel’s (1961) argument for the possibility of the reduction of a ‘secondary science’ such as biology to the ‘primary sciences’ of physics and chemistry provides a useful starting point. He wrote (p. 352), ‘A reduction is effected when the experimental laws of the secondary science (and if there is an adequate theory, its theory as well) are shown to be the logical consequences of the theoretical assumptions of the primary science’. However, he continues, ‘If the laws of the secondary science contain terms that do not occur in the theoretical assumptions of the primary discipline… the logical derivation of the former from the latter is prima facia impossible.’ It is clear from the example of the regulation of the cardiovascular system, and it will be apparent in further examples, that this is the case with biological processes. Numerous terms such as ‘normal’, ‘function’, ‘mistake’, ‘information’, and ‘rules’ do not occur in the primary sciences. Nagel proposes that under such conditions the reduction might still be made if the secondary and primary sciences can be linked in
accordance with the ‘condition of connectability’ and the ‘condition of derivability’, where the first must be satisfied before the second is applicable. Fodor (1981) has similarly argued that the reduction of one science to another requires ‘bridge’ laws or conditions.

According to Nagel’s first condition the terms may be connected either if they are analysable in physico-chemical terms, or if they are associated by a co-ordinating definition, or if there are empirical connections. The intentional terms cannot be re-analysed in physico-chemical terms for the same reasons that this cannot be done in economics. Specific physico-chemical examples of normal blood pressure can be given, but the meaning of the term within a description of the cardiovascular system, and in the prediction of its behaviour, cannot be provided in physico-chemical terms, and similarly for ‘information’, ‘signal’, ‘rules’ and so on. A second way in which the condition of connectability might be fulfilled is through a co-ordinating definition. It would seem however, that in the absence of concepts corresponding to those found in intentional causality, a definition or convention that might link these to physico-chemical processes will not be possible. The third of Nagel’s conditions of connectability is the presence of an empirical link. It might be tempting to suppose that where the molecular structure has been established, as is the case with many protein molecules, then an empirical link between the physico-chemical and intentional has been established. However, the protein molecule is part of a system that includes its synthesis and its actions, for instance as an enzyme. Information is required for its construction, criteria for correct and incorrect assembly are needed, and these are to be found in relation to its effective function. Empirical evidence that protein molecules assemble themselves in the absence of encoded information is lacking. Indeed the evidence is that amino acids polymerize under certain conditions in sequences that are determined partly by the different reactivity of amino acids with different substituent groups and partly by chance (see e.g. Fox and Dose 1972). In other words, they do not assemble preferentially into functional protein molecules. It seems, therefore, that the condition of connectability cannot be met, and the reduction cannot be effected.

A somewhat less technical objection to the reducibility of biological processes can be put briefly by drawing on our earlier consideration of intentionality. Intentional states carry information about, and refer to, other states, events or conditions, and cannot be reduced beyond the point where that information has been lost.

As we saw in the previous section our argument does not propose that there is not a relationship between the intentional and the non-intentional, but that many of those functions we expect a causal explanation to perform cannot
be reduced. The point can be illustrated with reference to two opposing views on the reducibility of biochemical explanations. Kincaid (1990) has argued along similar lines to those described here, that an attempted reduction of biochemistry will not work for a range of reasons, including that the same function may be served by different physical entities, and that any one particular physical entity may serve different functions depending upon context. Robinson (1992) countered with the assertion that ‘Biological entities and processes are being equated to chemical entities and processes increasingly day by day.’ This however does not bear directly on the issue of the reduction of causal mechanisms. The discovery of the physico-chemical structure illuminates the detail and the realization of intentional processes. Furthermore in the process of discovery there will be an interaction between the studies of functions and structure. Robinson provides details of the relationship between a range of neurotransmitter substances and receptor sites, and describes the way in which different chemicals may have similar effects at those sites, ‘For it is through examination of the structure of the receptors (his italics) that biochemical unity is revealed. The triumph for biochemical simplification and generalization is in recognizing that these chemically diverse mediators work through two different classes of receptors.’ In spite of his emphasis on chemistry, Robinson inadvertently demonstrates that he is interested in the physical realization of intentional processes, through reference to transmitters, mediators, and receptors. This is further illustrated in his comments on structure and function, ‘Knowledge of function has been a guide and reference for biochemistry research, but, …the biochemical studies not only reveal common themes for achieving that function, they also can add to the catalogue of functions.’ The point is that biochemistry is the study of structure in relation to function, and these belong to the area of intentional causality. The study of structure may indicate further functions, and the study of function lead to the elucidation of structures.

The claim that intentional causal explanations are reducible to physics and chemistry has been subjected to a softening by some authors so that the case is no longer one that biological explanations can be replaced by physico-chemical ones. For instance with reference to scientific domains, such as those of psychology and neuroscience, Hardcastle (1992) has proposed that, ‘…reduction merely sets out a relationship between the two domains’, and Sarkar (1992) has argued for constitutive reductionism which refers to, ‘…Those models of reduction that assert, at least, that upper-level (intuitively larger) systems are composed of lower-level (intuitively smaller) systems and conform to the laws governing the latter’. These weaker ‘reductionist’ theories do not run counter to our thesis, insofar as they do not imply that intentional descriptions of biological processes could be eliminated in favour of
physical descriptions. There are certainly physical descriptions of the biological structures that carry and process information, and physical laws that they obey, but our claim as argued for above is that these physical descriptions and laws alone will not provide sufficient range of explanatory and predictive power. They would so far not include the organizing principles and rules that will determine the onset, the direction, the content, the duration, the outcome, and the cessation of biological responses. This point is relevant to Kim’s (1998) proposed criterion of reducibility that turns on the idea that the functional–causal role of a higher-level property can be explicaded in terms of the causal properties of lower-level structures that implement it. This criterion of reducibility is weaker than Nagel’s, but is nevertheless taken to imply that the reduced property is something we would ‘have to learn to live without’ (Kim 1998, p.108). The claim that biology could be reduced to physics in this sense would be incompatible with the arguments presented here, which lead to the conclusion that biological concepts could not be replaced by physical concepts without catastrophic loss of explanatory and predictive power. Explanatory and predictive power is after all what we demand in physics, and we require the same also of causal explanations of biological processes.

In concluding this section it is important to emphasize that the identity of the domains of function and explanation should not be taken to be clearly demarcated. It will be evident in later chapters that the intentional response to an external event will often be psychological, physiological, biochemical, and neuroendocrine. Our prediction is only that in order for the causal process to take place there must be a capacity to encode information about the stimulus. Thus it will not be useful to determine whether in general psychology can be reduced to neuroscience, but rather how is the intentional state of the organism represented and placed in the service of action. As Hardcastle observes, ‘…no easy or obvious division of labour exists between psychology and neuroscience.’

*Intentionality is not ‘as if’*

A second assault on our proposed demarcation between intentional and non-intentional causality could take a rather different form. This would argue that the proposed intentionality is spurious and that it constitutes what Searle (1984, 1990) has termed ‘as if intentionality’. He has claimed that once intentionality is ascribed to biological processes other than mental processes, then there will be no limit to the phenomena that will be included, ‘everything in the universe follows laws of nature, and for that reason everything behaves with a degree of regularity, and for that reason behaves as if it is following
a rule, trying to carry out a certain project, acting in accordance with certain desires and so on. For instance suppose I drop a stone. The stone tries to reach the centre of the earth, and in doing so follows the rule \( s = \frac{1}{2}gt^2 \). Searle rightly objects to the ascription of mental processes to biological processes in general, but wrongly denies their intentionality. His fears that this would lead to a universal intentionality can be countered by the application of the principles that have been enumerated already in this chapter. In brief, the falling stone cannot fall incorrectly, its fall can be described without reference to information, it does not give priority to some speeds rather than others, it follows universal laws of nature that cannot in this universe be conceived of differently and do not entail a convention, the fall is described using an energy equation, there are no special receptors involved, nor could there be deception. There is, therefore, a very clear demarcation between intentionality, including non-mental intentionality, and the non-intentional world of physics and chemistry.

The Martian needs knowledge of intentionality

In a third approach to the problem let us suppose that we wish to instruct a Martian, who knows nothing of intentionality, to assemble the regulatory apparatus of the cardiovascular system. Would it be possible to assemble a working replica of the regulatory system without reference to intentional concepts? We will assume that the mechanics of this process are fully understood, and that we have already a conducting apparatus able to transmit electrical impulses in the same way as that of the relevant neurones, with the same frequency range as that found in the regulation of the cardiovascular system. We now need the receptors that will convert blood pressure to nervous impulses. It would be possible to tell the Martian how to construct the receptor, but he/she would have to carry this out on the basis of ‘that goes there’. If the Martian were to ask ‘why?’ then the answer would be either that this must be obeyed without question, or that ‘this is how it is done in order to convert a range of blood pressures into a given frequency range.’ Thus the construction could be carried out either by submission to an authority, or with reference to the intentionality of the system. Further, if the Martian were working only from the universal physical laws governing the components he would not know when he had made a mistake. This could be identified only by the instructor, or by a Martian who knew about the intentionality of the system. Similarly he would not know when to stop, unless either he was instructed, or he was aware of when the receptor had been completed according to the function it was designed to perform. The general point is that knowledge of intentional causality would be required for the Martian to understand what he was doing and to act appropriately, and in its absence he would have to depend on
the instruction of another, who did know about the intentionality of the baroreceptor.

5.6 The place of non-intentional causality in the explanation of breakdown

Thus far we have focused on processes that cannot be described adequately in physico-chemical terms, and for which a reduction to such terms is not possible. Surely, it would be objected, the history of medicine especially over the past hundred years has rested on the replacement of explanations that involved intentional causes by physico-chemical and reductionist explanations. Thus, syphilis is the cause of general paralysis of the insane, a brain lesion is the cause of temporal lobe epilepsy, and Alzheimer’s disease is a cause of dementia. Here we come to a further element in the application of the distinction between intentional and non-intentional causes to biological systems in general. The general case was put by Polanyi (1958) who argued that we look for reasons for the way biological systems work, and causes of their failure. Restated within the terms of this book we invoke intentional causes to describe the way biological systems function, and non-intentional causes for the account of their breakdown. The example of the regulation of blood pressure will serve again to illustrate the issues. When the regulation breaks down, and there is for example low blood pressure, we look for a non-intentional cause. The judgement that this has taken place is based on knowledge of normal functioning and this is an issue to which we will return in the next section. At this stage it will be assumed that it has been established that the blood pressure is low. The origins of this can be found in any medical textbook under the heading of ‘the causes of hypotension’. The headings from ‘Harrison’s Principles of Internal Medicine’ include hypovolaemia (low blood volume), cardiogenic causes, obstruction to blood flow, and neuropathic (due to abnormalities in the nervous control of blood vessels). The list illustrates a number of points that provide a sharp contrast with those made regarding the way the system works. Here the causes of disruption do not act with reference to information about blood pressure. Examples include a laceration to a blood vessel, an injury to heart muscle, an obstruction to blood flow along an artery, or nerve damage. A description of the cause and effect is a physico-chemical one without the mediation of information. The amount of damage is related to the volume of the toxin, or the force of the injury. The cardiovascular system does not have a detection apparatus nor a state of readiness for such disruptive agents, and they can in principle have their effect at any part of the system. Finally there is no question of failure resulting from mistaken identity or deception.
It seems then that in clear cases of dysfunction or disease at least some of the causal story does not entail intentional causal processes. However the position is somewhat different from that of eliminating an intentional account, for instance through a reduction to physics and chemistry, because here we are seeking to explain those cases where intentionality has run out. Taking the example of low blood pressure, this is no longer performing its function adequately, and it is the departure from the correct intentional response that needs to be explained. Just as in Chapter 1 we saw that as long as behaviour was described only in terms of movement, and not as action or similar functional response then only a physical causal story was required, so this is also the case in breakdown. If the explanandum (low blood pressure) lacks intentionality so will the explanans, at least in part. This is not therefore a reduction in the sense considered by Nagel, Fodor and others, whereby intentional phenomena are explained in the physical sciences, but it resembles a reduction inasmuch as one type of event in the biological system (that representing disruption of function) may have a non-intentional explanation.

The analysis of system failure or illness as disruption of function by physical agents provides a general model in physiology and biochemistry. However, in psychological systems and especially when referring to human functioning, there are further possibilities. These can be explored once the differences in the operation of intentionality in physiology and human psychology have been outlined.

5.7 Disruption of function and the conditions for non-intentional causality

If questions of function and dysfunction, normal or abnormal are central to the identification of intentional or non-intentional causal processes, then we need to clarify the conditions under which each is sought. Often it is clear that breakdown has occurred, as function has been quite dramatically disrupted. However, this is not always the case, and it may well be very unclear, especially in examples of psychological functioning. In the regulation of the cardiovascular system, if the frequencies of impulses in the nerves were not to rise in the normal rule-bound manner in relation to a rise in blood pressure then we would look for a (non-intentional) cause of the disruption of function. However, the behaviour of a part of an intentional system does not necessarily indicate whether a disruption of the rules has taken place. Take the example of pulse rate. A low pulse rate, or bradycardia, might lead the physician to suspect dysfunction on the grounds that this was a departure from normal. One possibility would be that there had been an interruption of the functioning of
the conducting tissues of the heart leading to the bradycardia. This would have involved non-intentional causality; for instance a toxin or reduced level of oxygen supplied to the tissues might have damaged the nerve. However, the same bradycardia could arise in a very fit person. In this case it would be a response to the increased capacity of the heart, and would therefore be an appropriate response mediated by information about cardiac output. Furthermore, we would find in this case that when the person exercised, the pulse rate would increase in a way that was systematically linked to the increased need of the body for oxygen. The damaged heart, by contrast, would not respond appropriately. The general principle is that we pay attention to apparent disruption of normal functioning and of the operation of rules, and such an apparent disruption may originate from intentional processes or may represent breakdown arising from a physical, non-intentional cause. Either way our starting point is a study of the integrity of the intentional system. The conditions for establishing breakdown of function, and the question of whether intentional or non-intentional explanations are relevant will provide a recurring focus in later chapters.

5.8 Biological processes: a further examination

Thus far we have considered only one example in order to explore the distinction between intentional and non-intentional causality and the relationship between the two. In concluding this chapter we will take further examples in order to illustrate the general applicability of the argument, and to provide at least, in part, an examination of the proposals.

5.8.1 DNA and protein synthesis

At first sight the elucidation of the role of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) in determining the structure and function of complex biological structures, with the accompanying possibilities of the modification of such structures through the alteration of the molecule, appear to support the physico-chemical re-analysis of living processes. However it provides one of the most dramatic demonstrations of the opposite thesis—the one argued here. For the DNA molecule has significance only by virtue of the vast quantity of information that is stored within the molecule, and because it is linked in a systematic way with protein synthesis, a process that is characterized by intentional causality. Briefly, the sequence involves the reading (transcription) of the nucleotide triplet codes in the DNA, by the messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA) molecule, which acts as a template for the assembly of amino acids in the synthesis of proteins. Amino acids are brought to the mRNA by smaller transfer
RNA (tRNA) molecules which have the task of delivering specific amino acids to the correct sites on the mRNA. This process is referred to as the ‘translation’ of the genetic code into proteins. It follows the 15 principles of intentional causality considered earlier (Section 5.2):

i) the DNA molecule carries information about, or has intentionality with respect to, protein structure, and this in turn has intentionality in relation to a range of functions.

ii) the process can take place normally or correctly, and there can be mistakes often with devastating results.

iii) the goal of the DNA–RNA protein synthesis system is the accurate construction of protein molecules from amino acids.

iv) the purpose is to provide the underpinning for living organisms, and a means whereby adaptive structure and function are passed down the generations.

v) and vi) only certain features of the DNA molecules are of interest to the mRNA, namely the nucleotide sequence.

vii) the DNA provides the information that directs the assembly of the RNA and protein molecules; it informs actions.

viii) the DNA code is read as this sequence in contrast to another sequence; the system deals in differences.

ix) the nucleotide code follows the rule that links particular triplets to particular amino acids.

x) this code is conventionalized. From the point of view of the physics it could take many different forms. The criterion for a fault is given by the convention. Thus some amino acids are coded by more than one triplet code, which means that in some cases a difference of nucleotide is not a mistake, but in other cases it is.

xi) the crucial feature that enables the convention to work is that there is agreement throughout the sequence. For instance, amino acids are brought to the mRNA by the tRNA, molecules which have sites that fit selectively to certain mRNA triplets. Thus the structure that systematically links a particular amino acid (say AA1) to the tRNA site for AA1 must correspond to the triplet code for AA1 in the mRNA, and the triplet code for AA1 in the DNA.

xii) the information about protein structure or mRNA could be encoded in a different physical structure. However the DNA, mRNA, and protein molecules make use of the physical properties of the nucleotides in order to carry out the task of protein synthesis with great efficiency.
xiii) the sequence cannot be specified by an energy equation.

xiv) specialized receptors are involved. Notably the tRNA has a specific site at which it binds to the mRNA.

xv) the system can be deceived. This can be demonstrated for instance in relation to the synthesis of the enzyme (a protein) lactase in bacteria. This enzyme takes part in the metabolism of lactose, and the rate of its synthesis increases in the presence of lactose. However, if a molecule is introduced that resembles lactose in some key respects, but is not metabolized by lactase, the cell is deceived into producing more lactase than is appropriate to the level of lactose.

An attempted elimination of the intentional account of DNA and protein synthesis would have to define in physico-chemical terms items such as triplet coding, the role of mRNA as a messenger, and the nature of correct functioning and mutations. Similarly, whilst the terms ‘transcription’ and ‘translation’ may seem to refer inappropriately to language, in many respects the process more closely resembles human communication than physics.

5.8.2 The haemoglobin molecule

We can explore the relationship between intentional and non-intentional causality further using the example of a particular protein, the haemoglobin molecule. This large and complex molecule is the main component of the red blood cells which carry oxygen from the lungs to the tissues and help to carry carbon dioxide back to the lungs. The presence of the haemoglobin molecule increases the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood by seventy times, and without haemoglobin large animals could not get enough oxygen to exist. In order to perform this function it has to operate over a very precise range of oxygen pressures, such that it absorbs oxygen in the lungs and releases it in the tissues. If this does not occur, either it will carry insufficient oxygen from the lungs, or it will release insufficient oxygen at the tissues.

Consider an attempted reduction or redefinition of the synthesis of haemoglobin in physico-chemical terms. As we have seen, according to Nagel’s condition of connectability a reduction is effected if there can be a re-analysis in physico-chemical terms, a co-ordinating definition, or an empirical connection. The possibility of a re-analysis can be explored with reference to normal or correct versus abnormal or incorrect sequences of amino acids. The re-analysis of the normal sequence of amino acids in the haemoglobin molecule would simply be a recitation of the amino acid sequence. However it is known that the substitution of one amino acid (valine for glutamic acid) has serious consequences for the functioning of the haemoglobin molecule and leads to Sickle-cell disease. In this condition, the red cells become mishapen leading to
blocking of blood vessels, and reduction of blood supply and hence lack of oxygen at the tissues. The substitution of valine for glutamic acid gives rise to an abnormal or incorrect sequence. As long as the re-analysis of the Sickle-cell haemoglobin molecule was simply the enumeration of a sequence of amino acids it would be neutral as to whether it was normal or abnormal. It would not be able to specify the crucial difference which leads to malfunction and illness.

The second possibility, namely that a co-ordinating definition might enable the condition of connectability to be met, fails for similar reasons. Given that physico-chemical processes lack the features described in biological processes a co-ordinating definition cannot be envisaged. There remains the possibility of an empirical link. However as we have seen the experimental evidence shows that amino acids polymerize in sequences that are determined partly by the different reactivity of amino acids with different substituent groups and partly by chance. The probability of a given sequence is very low, and the chance of the sequence appearing repeatedly is remote. Thus Nagel’s criteria of connectability are not met.

The sickle-cell example illustrates very clearly the way in which abnormality is identified in relation to function, and is not given by any particular physical facts. Thus, if the shape of the red cells were not affected by the substitution of valine for glutamic acid, it would be a normal variant. Or, if the shape of the red cell in relation to the size of the blood vessels did not matter to their flow, and if the transport of oxygen to the tissues were not a central function of haemoglobin, then the substitution might not be a fault. This is to certain extent the case for individuals who live in parts of Africa where there is a risk of malaria. The sickle-cell trait, whereby only some of the haemoglobin molecules are affected, confers some protection from malaria and so if resistance to malaria is specified as a property of haemoglobin, then under certain conditions those with this trait have advantages over those that lack it. The question of which form of haemoglobin has a fault then is less clear. The general point is that the condition is determined by the function that the molecule serves in relation to particular features of the environment, and by the effect that the physical variation has on that function.

Once an abnormality has been identified a non-intentional causal factor may be sought. For instance a protein abnormality might be traced back to faulty DNA. This would require that the mistake in the DNA had been transcribed and translated correctly in the synthesis of the protein. Once the mistake in the DNA had been identified it might be possible to give a non-intentional account, for instance where a chemical agent had, by virtue of its physical properties, affected the nucleotide sequence. It seems then that an
elimination of intentionality, and reduction to physics could be achieved. However the intentionality has already been eliminated in that what has to be explained is the abnormal behaviour of the haemoglobin and red blood cells. There is therefore not a reduction from the intentional to the non-intentional, but from abnormal behaviour to abnormal molecule. At the same time the fault is defined by contrast with the correct behaviour and amino acid sequence, and the integrity of the rest of the intentional system is required for the chemical to be the cause of the abnormal protein.

5.9 Summary

In this chapter we have sought to lay the foundations for the argument that intentional and non-intentional causal processes occur throughout biological systems, including those involved in human psychological functioning. Our purpose has been to state and in some degree demonstrate the differences between the two, and to anticipate ways in which this analysis will provide an account that is biological and psychological, of order and disorder in the mind.

References


6.1 Introduction

We turn in this chapter from physiology and biochemistry to animal and human neurobiology and psychology. There is a shift from systems that respond to stimuli from the ‘milieu interieur’, such as changes in blood pressure or blood sugar, to those that respond to features of the external environment. The external environment is comprised both of inanimate objects and other living creatures. Intentional causal processes with the features described in the previous chapter, will be seen to operate throughout.

The method in the first place will be to determine whether there is a break at any point in the phylogenetic (evolutionary) or ontogenetic (human developmental) scales, whereby the analysis applied to physiological processes ceases to be appropriate. However this alone will not be sufficient. An analysis that showed a common form of causality would provide a valuable unity of explanation, but would run the risk either of an inappropriate elevation of basic biological processes to a level analogous to that of complex human psychological functioning, or an implied reduction of such functioning to a more basic form. Our argument does neither. Rather it proposes that there is a potential inherent in the simplest biological processes which has been elaborated during evolution, and is seen at its most sophisticated in human psychological functioning. Where the operation of intentional causal processes is ‘hard-wired’ through particular neuronal connections, then the rules, conventions, and agreements and their relationship to action are fixed. However where the organism has the capacity to learn there is scope for different rules and representations to apply under different circumstances and at different times. Where this is the case there will be a need for the capacity to represent representations, to monitor them, and to link them to action. These requirements follow inevitably from our specification of the features of intentional causality, once they are open to acquisition, testing, and variability. The analysis will then be seen to specify functions that are fulfilled by sophisticated human capabilities including consciousness and language. As the extent of the sophistication of
this evolutionary ‘play’ on intentional causality becomes evident, so will the scope for its malfunction. Our discussion in this chapter will lay some of the foundations for a consideration of the basis of disordered psychological functioning in Chapters 7 and 8.

Another way of describing the line of thought in this chapter is by reference to Brentano’s thesis. This, it will be recalled from the first chapter (Section 1.2.1), states that intentionality is the defining characteristic of mind. It was suggested already in the first chapter that Brentano’s thesis is mistaken because it is too restrictive: intentionality—being a feature of information—actually characterizes not mind alone, but also biological processes. This has been proposed and elaborated in different ways in subsequent chapters, most explicitly and in most detail in Chapter 5. Our claim that intentionality is not restricted to mind alone but runs down to biology, as expressed in the first edition of this book, has been criticized, but generally where there have been counter-arguments they have tended to appeal not to the two core features of intentionality—directedness and the possibility of error—but to additional features such as rationality (Thornton 1997), belief, or conscious awareness (McMillan 2000). By all means if intentionality were to be defined in terms of rationality, or as essentially involving belief or conscious awareness, then it would be strange indeed to attribute it to simple organisms, but nowhere is there a standard definition of intentionality in such terms. The same point would apply to any attempt to criticize our proposal by appeal to any feature that was not among the two core features of intentionality, but which were more or less plainly psychological features, such as language. It has been crucial throughout previous chapters that we mean by intentionality just the two core features of directedness and the possibility of error, and these, we have suggested, characterize the ‘information’ that is found from the simplest biological structures on up.

However, and this repeats the context for this chapter, it is plain enough that there are massive differences between simple biological structures and human beings. Our claim is that the difference cannot be marked in terms of intentionality appearing for the first time in us. But how then is the difference to be marked? If intentionality characterizes both psyche and bios, how then is psyche distinguished from bios? We propose that a plausible candidate here is second-order intentionality, the capacity to represent representational states. Consistent with this, we suggest that many plausible distinctively psychological phenomena, that have mistakenly been taken to characterize intentionality, are better construed as characterizing second-order intentionality. These include phenomena such as reason, belief, language, and consciousness. We argue through this chapter that the transitions from the biological to the psychological involve use of second-order, and other higher-order intentional processes.
These transitions are of various kinds and are developmental through phylogenesis and ontogenesis, and accordingly there is no clear demarcation line between the biological and the psychological.

The position adopted here is consistent with recent trends to characterize mind, often in an evolutionary context, by reference to some form of ‘higher-order’ cognition, as opposed to cognition as such, or representation as such. For example Carruthers (2001) approaches consciousness by way of the contents of higher-order thoughts; Papineau (2001) proposes that there is a distinctively human means-end reasoning, characterized by the use of generalization. Millar (2001) argues that only humans possess propositional attitudes, linked to rationality and higher-order intentionality. Approaches of these kinds are consistent with the general point made so far, that intentionality as such is found way down the phylogenetic scale, and that if we want a way of characterizing specifically human cognition in these terms it will have to involve higher-order intentional capacities. Issues relating to these higher-order intentional capacities will be explored through this chapter.

6.2 Neurobiology

6.2.1 The basic units

The basic units of the nervous system are the neurones which are the signalling units of behavioral responses (Kandel et al. 1991). Neurones possess the capacity to generate all or none action potentials which can convey information encoded in the frequency of the impulses. Where sensory data are involved there exist sense receptors that transduce physical events such as pressure, or light, into patterns of impulses that bear a systematic relationship to the relevant features of the stimulus. Information is passed from one neurone to another at synapses via a range of chemical neurotransmitters. The release of these transmitters is brought about by the arrival of the electrical impulses, which act at receptor sites on the next neurone (the post-synaptic membrane) to bring about further transmission of impulses. Synapses are points of integration where several neurones from different locations, or with different actions, can converge. The transmitted chemicals are released and taken up again in a precise manner so that the information in the signal is retained. The raison d’être of the neurone is information processing.

6.2.2 The visual system

This point may be illustrated with reference to the function of the visual system. Much of what is known about the visual system has been derived from work on animals, and so our analysis of intentional causality does not yet need
to refer to human psychological functioning. Nevertheless in all animals the visual system enables discriminations to be made that influence behaviour, and therefore it participates in processes that are at least pre-cursors of human psychological functioning.

Briefly, the visual system of a wide range of organisms may be described as follows (Bruce and Green 1990). The eye contains a lens that focuses images on the retina where there are cells that are responsive to particular frequencies of light. These cells convert (transduce) light into electrical events, and these lead to the release of transmitters into synapses with bipolar cells. These bipolar cells synapse with ganglion cells which send axons via the optic nerve to the lateral geniculate nucleus and thence to the visual cortex. Horizontal cells and amacrine cells in the retina modulate the flow of information. Particular structures in the visual cortex respond to specified features of the stimulus, and a representation of the stimulus is utilized in the elaboration of action.

How do the features of intentional causality that we enumerated in the previous chapter apply to the operation of the visual system? The role of the specialized receptor is very clear. Intensity, shape, pattern, and colour are features of the stimulus that play a causal role in perception and action, but only if they are detected by receptors capable of translating the key features of the stimulus into patterns of neuronal firing. Light is absorbed by the cells and leads to a change of molecular conformation of retinal, a form of vitamin A. This molecular change leads to the separation from retinal from opsin, which is a protein, and a consequent hyperpolarization of the receptor cell membrane, and this is mediated by a messenger (cyclic guanosine monophosphate (GMP)). The hyperpolarization of the membrane leads to the release of transmitters to the bipolar cells. There is an exact correspondence between the action of one photon and the amount of cyclic GMP synthesized, and therefore, a relationship between the amount of light and the amounts of transmitter released. Much of the information about the image on the retina is contained in the spacial arrangement of the retinal receptors and their systematic connections with the visual cortical cells. Thus, the retinal receptors make use of a photo-chemical process to generate information about light.

It might be supposed that in the initial, peripheral processing of visual stimuli processes that most resemble non-intentional causality might be seen. For instance it might be predicted that there would be a direct correspondence between light intensity and intensity of response of retinal cells. Then it might be possible to apply, at least initially, an analysis along the lines of causal semantics (discussed in Section 4.3). However the reverse is the case. The function and organization of retinal cells in invertebrates and vertebrates appear to be suited to the transformation of sensory stimuli into information, according
to a set of rules that is tightly linked to the functioning of the organism in its environment. The extensive research into the visual apparatus of the horse-shoe crab (Limulus) will illustrate many of the points. One of the first discoveries made by Hartline and Graham (1932) was that the frequency of impulses that pass along the optic nerve is roughly proportional to the logarithm of light intensity. This means that whilst the frequency is systematically related to the intensity, the changes of frequency are not uniform over the whole range of light intensities. The Limulus is exposed to light intensities that may vary by a factor of $10^6$–$10^7$, and if there were a linear correspondence the frequencies would have to cover the same range. Given that the maximum rate at which impulses can pass down an axon is 1000 per second, the dimmest light would be coded by a frequency of one impulse every several thousand seconds. Thus, even in this ‘primitive’ organism, the most peripheral visual processes entail a rule linking intensity of light to the frequency of impulses. This rule leads to function over a wide range of light intensities corresponding to the range of conditions experienced by the organism and in which action must be possible. It also preserves the quality of information over the range. In the absence of this mechanism it would be difficult to discriminate differences in frequency at the lowest end of the frequency range, and the time required to make that discrimination would put the crab at risk from predators.

The extent of peripheral processing is seen further in the phenomena of light and dark adaptation, and lateral inhibition. The response of the Limulus cell axon when light is shone on it, is first to show a rapid increase in the frequency of impulses, which rises to a peak and then falls to a steady state. Both the peak rate and the steady level are related to the intensity of the light. This therefore provides information both about the change, and the intensity of the light. Thus discrimination of some features of the environment is enhanced. Lateral inhibition (Hartline et al. 1956) enhances spatial discrimination. When photoreceptors are stimulated they inhibit the firing of those cells that surround them. This means that if the whole eye is evenly and diffusely illuminated, excitation of receptor cells by light will be largely cancelled by inhibition from neighbouring cells. However if there is a sharp boundary between bright and dimly lit areas lateral inhibition will enhance the difference in rates of firing of the neurones. Thus it is clear that the Limulus eye does not represent the objective characteristics of what is ‘out there’; rather it selects and highlights some features at the expense of others. Slow temporal changes and gradual spacial differences are not perceived, whilst rapidly changing sharply contrasted stimuli elicit maximal firings of neurones. This enhances the quality of the information about events in the environment that matter to the organism. The process is both selective and places a premium on accuracy.
The vertebrate eye is in general more complex but performs similar functions. The role of the peripheral visual system in selecting and discriminating is similarly striking. Each ganglion cell has a receptive field: a region of the retina in which stimulation affects the ganglion cell’s firing rate. In the cat these receptive fields are concentric (Kuffler 1953). Some ganglion cells respond with a burst of impulses when a spot of light is shone on the centre of the field, and when light ceases to shine on the surround. This is referred to as a centre-on response. Other ganglion cells respond in the opposite fashion, and are termed centre-off cells. Ganglion cells are further differentiated into X and Y cells. X cells show a graded response depending on the extent of illumination in different areas of the field. Y cells by contrast show a non-linear response, and respond preferentially to movement. These selective mechanisms increase discrimination and hence quality of information. Clearly the priority of the system is once again effective discrimination of stimuli.

This example highlights also the points made earlier about rules, convention and agreement. A stimulus with the same physical property leads to opposite responses in different neurones, and these are therefore not specified by the physical properties of the stimulus. Similarly in the distinction between X and Y cells the same physical stimulus may lead to a response in one, but not in the other. The systematic relationship between the stimulus and the response therefore requires a rule and a convention that extends throughout the visual system, so that for instance bursts in some neurones are read as onset and others as offset. There will need to be in effect an agreement within the system that this is the case. This is reflected in the very precise mapping of the retinal fields in the areas of the brain to which fibres from the eye travel via the lateral geniculate nucleus and the occipital cortex. Some occipital cortex cells have concentric fields like the retinal cells, but others have excitatory and inhibitory areas which are straight lines. In some cells there are two boundaries with a central excitatory area and an inhibitory area on either side, and vice versa. Clearly these will have to be linked systematically to neurones in the visual pathway in such a way that a burst of firing is ‘taken’ to signify onset or offset of light.

Overall the structure of the striate cortex shows a very precise regular arrangement of cell types. This ‘functional architecture’ (Hubel and Wiesel 1962, 1968) ensures that a wide range of features of stimuli is mapped on to the cortical structure. For instance some cortical cells are arranged in columns according to their preference for the orientation of the stimulus. Each column covers approximately a ten degree arc. Here then the responses of the cells are selective, precise, and make discriminations. They provide information about particular features of the stimulus.
Now let us turn to two broader questions in vision: possible mechanisms in the assembly of perceptions, and the relationship between vision and action. Marr (1982) argued that an explanation of the components of the system can be provided only once its overall function has been described. This requires a computational theory that specifies what the visual system must do, a specification of the way in which problems are solved (algorithm), and an understanding of ways in which these are implemented. A specific example of Marr’s approach is found in his theory of the role of the primal sketch in vision. He hypothesized that this is comprised of a number of representations of light intensity differences present in the image. Typically an image will contain numerous gradations of light intensity not all of which are of similar significance. The task of the raw primal sketch is to identify those changes of intensity that are crucial to the identity of the image, rather like the key lines in an artist’s sketch say of the human face. Marr and Hildreth (1980) derived an algorithm in which the gradients of intensity are measured using the second derivative of the intensity values. This mathematical operation provides a value that reflects the rate of change of intensity of light over distance, and therefore will provide specific information about the extent to which the intensity gradient in an image is changing. They implemented the algorithm using a computer and showed how it could produce patterns of light that might constitute raw primal sketches. This of course does not demonstrate that such an algorithm applies in living visual pathways, and the evidence concerning this is rather conflicting (Bruce and Green 1990). The method used by Marr and his colleagues does however underline the distinctive nature of the intentional–physical asymmetry. Interestingly in Marr and Hildreth’s algorithm the rule is defined by a mathematical procedure, but this might not have been the case. For instance they also postulate another set of operations which are effectively filters of different widths. These determine the intensity of light to which responses are made, and their setting is not specified by a mathematical operation.

Vision is linked clearly to action. Even in a simple organism such as a fly the mechanism is quite complex (Gotz et al. 1979). The fruitfly Drosophila...
Melanogaster turns to follow stripes within a rotating drum by a combination of altered wing action and a sideways deflection of the abdomen and hind legs. The visual system detects a difference in the environment and action is taken to lessen it. In more complex examples corrective action is taken to ensure that a goal is achieved. For the insect, accurate landing is crucial. Then there will be a relationship between perceptions of key aspects of the surroundings, and of the fly’s speed and position in relation to them, with action taken to ensure an effective landing. The vision must be selective and accurate, and the external state of affairs must be represented and compared with current actions in order to determine what is required for the landing. The principle is the same as that for the cardiovascular system but the goal, of landing, is one that is performed under many varied circumstances. It therefore requires the detection of differences, and corrective action, under a much wider range of circumstances. Equally the complexity of the processes is much lower than that entailed in human action. Nevertheless, as we shall see, the human capacities for learned skills, multiple goals, and complex actions, are all sophisticated elaborations of the potential in these more simple examples of intentional causal systems.

Now that we have reviewed some of the key principles of the visual system in a range of organisms, let us recapitulate on their implications for causal explanations in biological systems in general, and more specifically for perception and behaviour. We have argued that external stimuli, linked systematically to representations by the organism, with behavioural consequences, constitute genuine causal pathways. When we describe the visual system we cannot omit reference to any of the features that we enumerated in Chapter 5. We are referring to the normal functioning of the system and there are numerous points at which it could fail. This is not merely normative, as an infinity of other forms of functioning would not serve this purpose, with serious implications for the organism. Abnormality is not given by the physical make-up, but by the implications for functioning in relation to environment. It is defined ecologically. The visual system highlights some aspects of the environment in order to detect crucial contrasts between different features of the environment and particularly those that have implications for different actions. In other words the totality of what is ‘out there’ is not represented, but what it is about ‘out there’ that matters to action. There are no ‘raw’ perceptual experiences, as physical stimuli are transformed and coded via sets of rules at peripheral receptors and made available for complex processing. The transmission of information entails the coding of a wide range of features of visual stimuli in frequencies of neuronal impulses, their spatial arrangement, and their interconnections at a range of points in the visual pathway. The rules are
of the form of a convention that must be preserved throughout. Marr has referred to the intentional–physical asymmetry in terms of the algorithm and the implementation. The physical apparatus is given the task of carrying out the procedure. As we described earlier the implications are (a) that the same physical events need not have intentionality—if for instance the same physical state of affairs were triggered by electrical or chemical stimuli, (b) the same elements of the system could have different intentionality—this is seen in the contrast between those neurones that show bursts of activity to onset of light and those to offset of light, and (c) that a different physical state, for instance a different frequency of impulses, could represent the same intentionality. Where the frequency range is optimal, it is because the organism has evolved an effective algorithm in relation to need, not because of a physico-chemical definition of a specific frequency for a given stimulus. It will be evident from these considerations that the energy of the physical stimulus does not enter into the energy equation of the perceptual response or the actions. The energy of the light may be represented but that will entail a rule-bound set of processes and not a series of events that are definable by a physical equation that includes the energy of the stimulus.

6.2.3 **Representation and behaviour in animals—some further examples**

Our consideration of further animal examples will cover the bat, the bee, and the stickleback. Take first the bat. This mammal has poor eyesight and flies at night. It emits pulses of soundwaves and is able to perceive when these are returned from objects. The auditory cortex is very large compared with that of other mammals, and it is subdivided into distinct areas, each of which provides information about some feature of the bat’s insect prey (Suga et al. 1981). Separate regions are concerned with the distance, size, relative velocity, and wing-beat frequency of the prey. Bats compute prey distance with great precision from the delay between emission of the orientation sound and time of arrival of the returning echo reflected from the insect. The frequency of emitted impulses is greater when the bat is near the ground which gives it better resolution for small objects. In one area of the auditory cortex, single neurones hardly respond to either the outgoing sound or the echo alone, but fire strongly to pairs of such sounds with a particular delay between them. Neurones sensitive to the same delay are grouped together and the delay producing maximal response alters progressively along the cortex from a fraction of a millisecond to about 18 milliseconds, equivalent to target distances ranging from just under 10 centimetres to three metres.

This system has to be described in terms of what is carried out, and the fact that this can occur correctly or incorrectly, requires special senses, is capable of
representing information about the physical world, and could be deceived. The reflected soundwaves are the cause of the bat’s behaviour, and in their absence the bat would collide with some objects, and fail to catch others. This example provides a good illustration of the way in which the properties of the physical world, here the effect of objects on soundwave, are exploited by the organism. The sequence of events from the emission of the soundwaves to their return is governed by the laws covering the transmission of sound through gasses, which are not variable, but the processes whereby the emitted and returning signals are compared requires rules and a convention within the bat as to how the frequencies are represented. This transforms the sounds into signals. A different species of bat could have evolved in which the same patterns of firing could have denoted a different range of target distances, say between 3 and 10 metres.

The representation of key features of the external world may be transmitted among organisms, and the behaviour of bees provides a good example. Bees returning to the hive perform a dance which indicates the direction and distance of nectar-bearing flowers, in relation to the position of the sun (Von Frisch 1967). The subsequent flight of other bees in the swarm is influenced by the features of the dance. The dance goes in a figure of eight, and the information is in the straight run through the middle of the figure eight. The angle from the vertical on the honeycomb gives the angle between a line from the nest to the sun, and a line from the nest to the flowers. The duration of the straight run gives the distance, at a ratio of 75 milliseconds per 100 metres.

In this example of social interaction among organisms, all of the principles of intentional causality are to be found. In brief, it serves a function, it can occur normally or there can be mistakes, it has intentionality with respect to the location of nectar, only some features of the dance count as sources of information, and only certain aspects of the terrain are conveyed, namely the ones that are crucial to the finding of nectar. The dance has the relationship to the location of nectar as has a map to a geographical location, and requires a set of rules and a convention that is held in common by all the participating bees. The rules must specify not only how direction is coded in the dance, but also that it is direction to which reference is being made. Not only what distance, but also that distance is what is referred to. Not only where and how far, but also that what is referred to is nectar. However there is no reason why a species of bees should not have evolved a convention that used, for instance, the angle with the horizontal to give direction, or a different ratio of time of run to distance of flowers, or that used the same dance to indicate a different set of information. Thus here again, before the evolution of human minds there evolved the operation of rules, requiring conventions, and these have
been utilized within social organizations so that both what is referred to and the content of that reference is shared.

Tinbergen (1948) demonstrated the significance of the red belly of the three-spined stickleback which develops during the breeding season when the fish establishes its territory. If there is an incursion by one male into the territory of another, the threatened male will attack if the intruder has a red belly. It has been shown that very crude models of the stickleback elicit attack from other males provided the red belly is present, and conversely life-like models that lack the red belly are relatively ineffective. There is no doubt that the red belly is the explanation for the behaviour, in that it meets all the conditions for a cause, viz the behaviour is elicited in its presence, is not elicited in its absence, and there is a regular conjunction of antecedent and consequent under specifiable conditions. However the process involves all the features described earlier in relation to the regulation of the cardiovascular system. There are normal and abnormal responses, the responses depend upon the capacity of the recipient to represent ‘red’, the response is selective and it depends crucially on the distinction ‘red’ versus ‘non-red’. The stickleback shows no ‘interest’ in other qualities such as whether the object is life-like. Referring back to the visual system, it is highly selective but has to be accurate with respect to this stimulus. There has to be a rule covering the relationship between the colour and behaviour and this must be shared within the species. This is conventionalized in the sense that it is quite feasible to envisage that another colour, or another perceptual quality such as size, could have the same causal function if there had evolved a convention within the species that such perceptual stimuli signified threat.

6.3 Early human psychological development

6.3.1 Introduction

How will our analysis stand up in relation to human psychological functioning? To repeat, we have proposed that it should (a) apply without a break across biological examples both psychological and non-psychological, (b) stand up to detailed scrutiny in relation to complex human behaviours, (c) make predictions about human psychological functioning, and in particular address both normal and abnormal processes.

6.3.2 The newborn infant

The newborn infant provides us with a useful starting point. He or she is in many respects helpless and incompetent. His/her survival capability is lower than that of most other animals, and this vulnerability will persist longer than
that of any others. Yet, given that for infants, adult caregivers are a normal part of the environment, they are equipped to detect and respond to those features of the outside world that are necessary for survival. Two examples will illustrate this.

Suckling is an activity that is seen in most infants from the first hour of birth. By contrast with the other motor capabilities of the newborn which are very poor, suckling is fully developed. It occurs in response to a stimulus such as a nipple, and consists of a well-coordinated activity involving sucking, swallowing, and breathing. Whether or not it is readily characterized as psychological, it entails perception, the encoding in the afferent nerves of information about a nipple-like stimulus, and a highly integrated delivery of efferent messages to a range of muscles. This highlights how a relationship between the stimulus, the assessment of the stimulus, and the behaviour, may occur in a way that is closely analogous to, and involves the same principles as, those of the cardiovascular system and the stickleback, yet is higher up the continuum towards psychological processes.

The second example is of the visual capabilities of the newborn infant. Newborn infants appear to make relatively few perceptual discriminations, however they do look preferentially at face-like patterns, compared to patterns that do not resemble faces (Fantz 1963). Here is a perception that is selective with respect to the stimuli, a receiving agent that is ready for such an input, and a response that requires a set of rules in the infant about patterns which are of interest or matter. In the light of the subsequent emergence of relationships with adults as a primary source of protection, stimulation, and affective development, this preference can be seen to perform an important function. Here is a process that most would describe as psychological and yet at a relatively low level of sophistication. It undoubtedly involves intentional causality.

6.3.3 The first months

Now let us take our account on a few weeks in the life of the infant. At around four to six weeks infants start to smile socially, and interactions with adults take off (Stern 1977). Infants show clearly that they enjoy contact with other people, through smiling, open facial expressions, gurgling, and excited body movements. Parents and other caregivers experience them as having elements of what appears later as mature psychological functioning. Much of the developmental research into the early months has focused on the pleasurable, excited face to face exchanges between caregivers and infants (Stern et al. 1974; Trevarthen 1980). These are constructed jointly by adult and infant and require the accurate and sensitive participation of each. The infant plays an
important part in the initiation, maintenance, and termination of the exchanges. Here then in early infant development, and within the context of an environment of other people, perception and action are tied together closely. Perception leads to action which leads to further perception, and further action. And what is that draws the attention of the infant? The behaviour of adults with infants is characterized by exaggerated, repeated, and rhythmic movements and vocalizations. It is as if adults know that it is helpful in the development of perception to create well-marked regularities, and indeed infants respond to this. Equally infants are interested in repetition only if there is variability woven into it (Kagan 1967; Kagan et al. 1978). As Stern has put it, ‘Infants are (also) constantly “evaluating,” in the sense of asking, is this different from or the same as that? How discrepant is what I have just encountered from what I have previously encountered?’ (Stern 1977, p.42). It seems that the infant is interested in the fact of regularity and departures from it, which suggests that once a set of rules about the stimulus is established the variations become of interest. The infant deals in (constructed) norms and differences from them. However if the difference is too great then the infant is likely to pause or withdraw. The variations are welcome provided they do not undermine the background set of expectancies developed by the infant, and if there is a major difference in caregiver behaviour a new appraisal is required. Here then perceptions are selective and related to what matters to the infant. By contrast with most of our previous examples, the sets of rules against which stimuli are judged are constructed by the infant. Even at this age we are beginning to see the exploitation of the potential inherent in all intentional causal processes. If events can be judged within one set of rules, they can also be construed and acted upon under others.

It is evident also from the study of early infant processes that aspects of the external world are represented. We have argued (in Section 1.2) against a pictorial concept of representations, and throughout earlier chapters in favour of representation as construction with respect to key aspects of the environment in relation to the preoccupations and needs of the organism. Further, representation will exist at a level of abstraction whereby the information is given by the rules and patterns, rather than any given physical state of the organism. Two further examples from early infant development will illustrate this. The first relates to the capabilities of three-week-old infants. In an experiment carried out by Meltzoff and Borton (1979) the infants were blindfolded and given one of two different dummies (pacifiers) to suck, one which had a spherical shaped nipple, and the other a nipple with nubs protruding from various points on its surface. After an infant had sucked one nipple, both were placed in front of him/her and the blindfold was removed. Following a quick
visual comparison the infants looked more at the nipple they had just sucked.
Thus the infant’s representation of what was sucked was sufficiently abstract
that it could be related to a visual stimulus. It did not consist only of what it
felt like, or what it looked like.

With age the level of abstraction becomes greater. Infants of 10 months of
age were shown a series of schematic face drawings in which each face was dif-
ferent in length of nose or placement of the ears or eyes. Then the infants were
‘asked’ using a task that involved the distinguishing of familiar and novel faces
which single drawing best ‘represented’ the entire series. They chose a drawing
that averaged the features of all the faces that had been seen, but was not one
of the individual drawings of the series (Strauss 1979). The representation was
related systematically to the stimuli but also took a form that was linked to the
needs of the developing child. The representation had sufficient generality
that it could provide a basis for future perceptions and actions, including faces
that had not previously been seen. Equally it had certain defining characteristics
such that some stimuli could have fallen outside its range.

6.3.4 Attachment

Infants can distinguish between familiar and unfamiliar adults from the first
days of life, but over the first six months of life they do not show major differ-
ences in their behaviours with familiar figures and with strangers. However,
between 6–9 months there are major changes. They become wary of strangers
and develop a distinctive repertoire of behaviours with parents or other familiar
adults. They seek proximity and comfort from these attachment figures espe-
cially when under perceived threat, or when tired or ill, but at other times
move away and explore. The attachment figure is said to act as a secure base for
exploration and play, as well as a comforter at times of anticipated or actual
distress. Different patterns of behaviour in relation to the attachment figures
can be identified reliably using the Ainsworth Strange Situation Test, and these
different patterns are related both to the preceding quality of parent–infant
interactions (Belsky 1999), and a number of aspects of subsequent development
(Bretherton 1985). These have been assessed several years later, and blind to
the original attachment classification, and there is an association between the
classification and subsequent characteristics such as quality of peer relation-
ships, self-esteem, and effectiveness at coping with difficulties or in tackling
novelty (Sroufe et al. 1990). It should be emphasized that an association does
not ensure a mechanism, but it is reasonable to conclude that the quality of
early relationships is relevant to later personal functioning.

What does this tell us about the developmental progression in intentional
causal processes? First it underlines the importance to the infant of other
people, and by this age, specific people. In the context of the points made earlier, other people matter to the infant. The intentionality of mental states even of young children is ‘directed’ towards the behaviours of other people, who themselves have directed mental states. This introduces quite distinctive demands that we shall come to later. Secondly it reinforces the proposition that any theory of causality in relation to the mind must encompass perceptual, cognitive, emotional, and behavioural aspects of interpersonal functioning. Thirdly, the behaviour of the infant can be predicted only on the basis of an internalized set of rules or schema. Earlier attempts to predict behaviour on the basis of frequencies of specific behaviours did not work (Sroufe and Waters 1977). Thus for instance smiling and laughing with mother do not predict smiling and laughter with a stranger. Indeed typically the securely attached infant demonstrates quite different behaviours with mother and with a stranger; differences which appear to represent inconsistencies of behaviour, but which can be reliably predicted under the terms of an internalized set of rules. Fourth, the attachment pattern is related to the preceding interactions of mother and infant (Crittenden 1992). These have entailed contributions from both mother and infant, and it is difficult to separate the relative contributions of each, however undoubtedly the characteristics of the mother’s handling of the infant play an important part. Thus the set of rules is assembled significantly from the infant’s experience of his or her mother (Stern 1985). Similarly each sequence between the mother and infant can be seen both as a manifestation of the sets of rules regarding attachment, and a test of them. It has been shown that when mothers are exposed to significant stress, the attachment category of their infants are more likely to change over a period of 6 months, than otherwise (Vaughn et al. 1979). It is likely that the rules and expectancies have changed in the light of experience. Fifth, the evidence from the follow-up into later childhood indicates that the internalized attachment schema may have considerable stability, and influence subsequent sets of rules (Sroufe et al. 1990). Such sets of rules about the worth of the self, and about competence are likely to be crucial to an understanding of the causation of psychological states and behaviours.

6.3.5 Play

At around 18 months we see the emergence of perhaps the most dramatic demonstration of the potential of intentional causal processes; in play. This is characterized by the creation of identities and stories related to objects or other people. As this activity becomes more sophisticated with age, the actual physical properties of objects act increasingly only as cues for their imagined identities. The story, a series of events tied together by an intentional
explanation, makes use of these imagined identities, which are conven-
tionalized and rule bound (Garvey 1977). In general, by the age of three,
children are at home with repeated changes of sets of rules. Sometimes this
is clarified by the words ‘lets pretend …’ or a statement that implies pretend-
ing such as ‘I’m the mummy and you’re the daddy’. There is no requirement
however that the participants are male and female, nor that the performance
is an exact replica of the children’s experiences. Equally it is likely to reflect
some key elements of their experiences or preoccupations. In joint play
it is crucial that the participants share the same set of rules. The actions
of each has a causal role in the actions of the other, which can be predicted
only by reference to the agreed, conventionalized jointly constructed frame of
reference.

In order for this to work the children must have a firm grasp of what is and
what is not play in their shared interactions. If this is in doubt there needs to
be the capacity to check, from outside the play.

Consider examples from Garvey (1977). The first is the following sequence.
X sits on a three-legged stool that has a magnifying glass in the centre:

X. I’ve got to go to the potty.
Y. (turns to him) Really?
X. (grins) No, pretend.
Y. (smiles and watches X).

For this sequence to work it must be assumed that there can be a conversation
in which an assertion is untrue but playful, and that there are communications
which can be relied upon to comment truthfully on whether this is the case.

The capacity to play requires a high level of abstraction of joint rules, and of
actions within those rules. Take this example: X and Y conduct a game that
consists of X discovering a stuffed snake, Y sharing the discovery, X playing the
straight man, and Y expressing fear.

X. (holds up the snake)
Y. (draws back in alarm) What’s that?
X. It’s a snake! (laughs at Y’s exaggerated fear)
Y. Do it again.
X. (holds up snake)

Here there are clear rules, unspoken but communicated, and an understand-
ing that ‘it’ refers to the sequence, and again that ‘Do it again’ is spoken from
outside the sequence and is about it.
The extent to which children familiarize themselves with rules and conventions of communication is seen in their play with the conventions of language, in which it is used as non-play and then experimented with, and then returned to non-play again. X and Y are discussing their feelings about the playroom.

X. Don’t you wish we could get out of this place?
Y. Yeah, ‘cause it has yucky things.
X. Yeah.
Y. ‘Cause it’s fishy too, ‘cause it has fishes.
X. And it’s snakey too ‘cause it has snakes. And it’s beary too ‘cause it has bears.
Y. And it’s hatty too ‘cause it has hats.
X. Where’s the hats? (X ends the game).

The conventions of social exchange may be played with and create humour. For instance if I ask you a question the convention is either that I do not know and need the information, or that I do know and I want to test your knowledge. In the following sequence two children relaxing together enjoy a series of pointless questions and answers:

X. (picks up dress-up items) What’s this?
Y. It’s a party hat.
X. What’s this?
Y. Hat.
X. Funny. And what’s this?
Y. Dress.
X. Yuck.
Y. Tie.
X. It’s all yucky stuff.

X did not need the information nor was he testing Y’s knowledge. They jointly violated the convention.

There is an extensive research literature on the purposes of play which undoubtedly extend beyond our current considerations, however, they clearly include the experimentation with movement among different sets of rules of interpretation, different solutions, and their associated feelings, wishes, fears, beliefs, and actions (cf. Section 3.2). This is personal and interpersonal, it requires that play and non-play are distinguished, that phantasy and reality are differentiated, and that true and false may be identified accurately.
6.4 **Rule multiplicity: selection and communication**

6.4.1 **The problems and forms of solution**

Consideration of rules about rules brings us to a crucial developmental issue, and one that is of great importance to our thesis. We return to our argument about intentional causal processes. In order for these processes to be effective their elements must operate in harmony. This is to say, the representation, the rules, the convention, the range of function, the needs of the organism, and the action, must be compatible. As long as the intentional systems are comprised of fixed biological structures, these rules and the underlying conventions are also fixed. Their harmonious operation has evolved over long periods and they have an established survival value. However, now we are considering examples in which the rules are in some degree acquired, and may vary rapidly depending upon internal states and needs, and external circumstances. In other words the appearance of novel intentional sequences, which in evolution have occurred over thousands of years, may appear as a new perception, cognition, or action sequence, in humans from moment to moment. It is not surprising then that the developing child practises from the first weeks of life, in play and relationships, the skills required to move among the internal sets of rules, representations, and states of mind.

In the context of this variability a certain general condition has to be met if action is to be possible: there has to be means for determining which set of rules apply at any one time. The necessary functions here are closely linked, in the theory and in practice, and they may be classified and described in various ways, such as the following:

- an executive function, to exercise some control over multiple rules, and specifically to select those used for immediate action. Presupposed here is a capacity for monitoring, so that the executive can access states of mind and relate them to external context prior to selection.

- in the case of social, cooperative action, a method of sharing information as to which among the multiplicity of rules are being used, or are about to be used. In brief, social beings need communication.

Broadly speaking, the former grouping has to do with what is within the organism, with the intra-psychic, and possibly with consciousness specifically, while the latter has to do with inter-subjectivity, including the use of language. These divisions are somewhat arbitrary however in that the phenomena in question, though distinguishable, are closely interwoven.

Concepts that span all the phenomena with which we are concerned here are those of self and person. These concepts highlight particularly continuity
through time, which is at the heart of action. Action presupposes continuity through time specifically in the form of access between memory and plans. From the point of view of the agent this continuity, and the access on which it is based, may appear subjectively as the sense of self, at least for those agents who can say and think ‘I’. Monitoring, selection, and communication of mental states, presuppose an I which thinks (which remembers, plans, wills). From the outside, from the point of another, cooperative agent, the continuity of self appears as the perception of an understandable, predictable enough person.

In summary, along the phylogenetic scale we see the release of the potential within intentional processes, specifically the freeing up of rules and conventions from what is innately fixed, the generation of multiple possibilities, which requires, if action is to continue, methods of monitoring, selection, and, for cooperative beings, communication. These hypothesized functions are closely linked to concepts of consciousness, self, communication and language. In this way the theme of the present chapter comes across these very large ideas. They are considered in the remainder of this section, which ends with some epistemological implications. The discussions are inevitably partial, with the emphasis on connections with the current theme and with other parts of the essay.

6.4.2 Self and personality

Continuity and consistency in conscious awareness and control of mental states and action, are closely linked to the concepts of self, subjectively experienced, and person or personality, as experienced by others. The extent to which individuals vary from situation to situation, and the extent to which they show consistency has been a source of extended and unresolved debate (Mischel 1968, 1973, 1979; Bem 1983). However in summary the evidence may be taken to indicate that there is both variability and consistency, and that in general the consistency is less in individual behaviours than in underlying organizational principles. Personality is ‘that which gives order and congruence to all different kinds of behaviour in which the individual engages’ (Hall and Lindzey 1978) and personality traits are ‘enduring patterns of perceiving, relating to, and thinking about the environment and oneself and are exhibited in a wide range of important social and personal contexts’ (American Psychiatric Association 1994, p. 630). This is consistent with the idea that there is an overarching mechanism that provides substantial continuity over time and place. Clearly the statement in schematic form of the need for this agency will lead to many questions that are beyond the scope of this chapter. For instance is this ‘self’ seen best in everyday events and encounters, or is it that which is seen under particular circumstances such as extreme passions or
duress? Is self as subjectively experienced co-extensive with the monitoring and executive mechanism whose functioning that we outlined earlier?

Notwithstanding these questions the developmental findings provide considerable illumination. Stern (1985) has provided an account of the development of the self system, that draws on developmental findings and theories, and is highly pertinent to this issue. He argues that in the first weeks of life there is evident a capability for representation that reflects the first steps in the development of the self. As we saw earlier in the chapter the infant possesses, from the first days of life, the capacity to represent aspects of the external world. Thus the perception of a difference in the shape of nipple that has been experienced only through touch is manifest when two nipples are seen. This requires a representation of difference in shape that is not tied to one perceptual route. Even at this age we see capacities of sufficient abstraction and generality that they may form the basis of what will become more recognizable as self functions, and Stern has referred to the presence in the first two months of life, of the ‘Emergent Self’. It is however in the succeeding four months that there appear capabilities that more clearly fulfil our requirements. Here, as Stern has argued, the infant develops the senses of self-agency, self-coherence, self-affectivity, and self-history. Self-agency refers to a sense of authorship of one’s own actions derived from a range of action-related processes: the formation of motor-plans for actions, feedback via nerves from joints and muscles that actions have occurred (proprioception), and the regularity of consequences for actions. Stern and colleagues carried out experiments with four month Siamese twins, which showed that although each sucked the other’s fingers, they distinguished between their own and those of their twin. This reflected differences in proprioception and action plans. Schedules of reinforcement for actions carried out by the self, and those carried out by others will be different, and infants as young as three months are able to make these distinctions. This experience of self-agency will provide the infant with an experience of continuity. Also in this age period, from two to six months, the sophisticated interpersonal exchanges with caregivers include many different games, and interactions which are not games, which means that they take place under different rules. Putting the two together, self-agency is a domain in which actions may be performed under different sets of rules, and are also experienced as having the same agent. It seems then, again, that action is crucial to the account. Not only is the elaboration of effective action a crucial outcome of intentional causal processes, it also provides a basis for the organization of intentional causal processes, representations and plans of actions. Subjectively it contributes to the continuity of the sense of self, with implications that where the conditions for
action are significantly curtailed the sense of self-agency and continuity may be threatened.

The argument concerning self-affectivity is similar. The young infant experiences the same affects, notably pleasure, and distress, in a range of circumstances. Stern comments that ‘affects are excellent high-order self-invariants because of their relative fixity: the organization and manifestation of each emotion is well fixed by innate design and changes little over development’ (Stern 1985, p. 89). Stern continues, ‘mother’s making faces, grandmother’s tickling, father’s throwing the infant in the air, the baby-sitter’s making sounds, and uncle’s making the puppet talk may all be the experience of joy’ (Stern 1985, p. 90). The rules of engagement with each of these people are likely to be different, and with development that differentiation will become sharper, yet it is the same joy with each encounter, and this provides support for the sense of self. In this analysis innate responses are taken to provide the underpinning of the self and its metarepresentational function. Different representations are linked to a common, wired in affective response, and this in turn leads to an overarching affectively laden representation.

Further on in development, we find an increasing capacity to formulate in language one’s own mental states, in particular to give reasons for one’s actions and to announce one’s intentions. This capacity to give an account of oneself is fundamental to our concepts of self and person, and has already been considered in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2) and the third (Section 3.2). Some developmental aspects of the capacity are referred to in the following subsection, and in the next section (Section 6.5.3).

6.4.3 Communication, metacommunication, and language

We have seen already that even at a few weeks of age infants are able to participate in joint activities with caregivers in which there are shared rules of engagement. At around nine months of age it is evident that the establishment of which set of rules will apply is simultaneously personal and interpersonal. Two examples will illustrate this. Sroufe and Waters (1976) asked mothers to put masks over their faces in the presence of their nine month infants, under a range of conditions. The authors described the typical responses of the infants. There was initially a cessation of previous activity and a period during which the infant looked closely at his/her mother often with an expression of puzzlement. This was followed either by crying and other manifestations of distress, or by laughter. The type of reaction was influenced significantly by factors such as whether the infant was in familiar surroundings. Thus it seemed that the central question which the experiment presented to the child was, ‘has my mother gone and am I under threat, or is she still there and
am I O.K.? The cues were both internal and external, and the search was for an individual and shared frame of reference. Once the solution was established action ensued, but prior to this it was not possible; the infant was immobile.

The second example illustrates the use of another person in order to determine which rules apply to a state of affairs in the physical world. Infants of one year may be lured with a toy to crawl across a visual cliff (an apparent drop off on the floor which is mildly frightening to a child of this age). When infants encounter this situation they often give evidence of uncertainty; action is unclear. Emde and Sorce (1983) found that they then look towards a parent to read her face for its affective (emotional) content. If the mother has been instructed to show facial pleasure by smiling the infant crosses the visual cliff, but if she has been instructed to show facial fear, the infant turns back and sometimes becomes upset. Thus the infant appears to find out from the other what her state of mind should be. Here the elements of intentional causality are interpersonal and the rules, convention and agreement are shared between the participants. These also need a metaframe which has the form of shared action and commitment. Here is scope for variability and creativity, provided the communications from the other person can be relied upon. If they cannot, further disruptions of intentionality with threats to effective action, may arise.

Increasingly non-verbal communication, and communication about communication, is joined, to some extent covered over, and is elaborated by, the use of language. It has been emphasized throughout this chapter that early human development is characterized by finely tuned sensitivity to social interaction, that the aspects of reality which matter to the infant are largely interpersonal. Social interaction requires agreement on tasks and methods. Social animals generally require ways of communicating which among various sets of rules are to be applied on given occasions, rules relating to such as hunting, avoiding predators, feeding, playing, etc. It is plausible to suppose that among the functions served by the development of language phylogenetically and ontogenetically is that of facilitating communication of which sets of rules are to be used in cooperative endeavours.

It was noted at the beginning of this section that selection among multiple sets of rules may be linked to consciousness within the agent, and to language (as well as non-verbal conventions) in relation to shared activities. It was anticipated that these divisions are somewhat blurred, however, and this point can be expanded upon here. There is an intimate relationship between cognition and social relationships, as was discussed throughout Chapter 3, and with particular reference to Vygotsky’s developmental psychology at the end of Section 3.3. Cognition here of course includes features of consciousness. The carer–infant relationship guides development of the infant’s cognitive capacities,
including aspects of consciousness itself. For example, Vygotsky proposed that the capacity for attention to aspects of the environment and to current activity, one function of consciousness, is an internalization of shared attention-behaviour within the infant–carer relationship (Vygotsky 1934). At a later stage, and more obviously, the acquisition of language depends on teaching, but this socially acquired language is internalized, as linguistically encoded rules, and these come to play an increasing role in regulating action in the developing child (Vygotsky 1934; Luria 1961; see also Section 6.5.2 below). In this way while both attention and language have social origins, both become crucial to the regulation of the individual’s actions.

The connections here between individual and social, thought and language, are many and complicated. For example, joint attention behaviour is arguably (one of) the earliest signs in the infant of the capacity for representing the other’s mental states, this being in turn at the basis of acquiring the ‘theory of mind’, problems with which may be implicated in autism (Baron-Cohen 1991). It has been noted above and in the first chapter (Section 1.1.2) that selective attention is one aspect of consciousness. The capacity to say what rules one is following is another aspect of consciousness, linked to what we call self-consciousness, as noted in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2).

6.4.4 Cognition and commitment

In the context of multiple rules and representations what is required is a cognitive function that selects one plan of action, with its associated representations, from among various possibilities, a function which ‘decides what to do’. So far in this section the need for a mental executive function has been considered from the point of view of biology and psychology. As generally in this essay, however, similar conclusions can be reached by an \textit{a priori}, epistemological route. In the present case this has to do with the close connection in post-empiricism between cognition and commitment.

In the first chapter we outlined general characteristics of post-empiricism (Section 1.3.1) and went on to discuss links between epistemology and logic, i.e. between the theory of knowledge and the theory of representation (Section 1.3.3). It was an insight of modern, seventeenth-century epistemology, in the Cartesian system, and in empiricism, that the \textit{a priori} basis of certainty is to be found in logic, in the nature of thought itself. According to the logic of Wittgenstein’s \textit{On Certainty}, this insight assumes the form: the \textit{a priori} basis of certainty lies in our methods of thinking, and beneath those, our ways of acting. Commitment to the methods being used, rejection of what is incompatible with them, is a precondition of action, and of thought itself. Doubts about the methods, indecision between alternatives, is incompatible with practice,
leading to perpetual hesitation, to no action. Conversely, insofar as we do act and think, we expel doubt and proceed with certainty. This commitment, or certainty, is necessary in practice. But it also belongs to logic, to the very idea of judgement. On this Wittgenstein remarks for example (1969):

150. … Somewhere I must begin with not-doubting; and that is not, so to speak, hasty but excusable: it is part of judging.

We have and must have certainty in action, and in methods of judgement. This means that in particular procedures some beliefs have to stand fast; these beliefs are not so much assumptions, as instruments essential to the activities in question. This applies to everyday actions. For example:

148. Why do I not satisfy myself that I have two feet when I want to get up from a chair? There is no why. I simply don’t. This is how I act.
150. How does someone judge which is his right and which his left hand? How do I know that my judgement will agree with someone’s else’s? How do I know that this colour is blue? If I don’t trust myself here, why should I trust anyone else’s judgement? That is to say: somewhere I must begin with not-doubting; and that is not, so to speak, hasty but excusable: it is part of judging.

The point applies also to the most cognitively complex activities, such as scientific enquiry. Wittgenstein (1969):

341. … The questions that we raise and our doubts depend on the fact that some propositions are exempt from doubt, are as it were hinges on which those turn.
342. That is to say, it belongs to the logic of our scientific investigations that certain things are indeed not doubted.
343. But it isn’t that the situation is like this: we just can’t investigate everything, and for that reason we are forced to rest content with assumption. If I want the door to turn, the hinges must stay put.

The beliefs that stand firm are those which define a particular method of interpretation and action. They have the form, typically, of affirmations of what is presupposed by application of a particular method, and at the same time they rule out alternative methods of interpretation and enquiry. Whatever activity we are engaged in, some things have to be taken for granted. The point here is of course a very general one. Thus Wittgenstein (1969):

344. My life consists in my being content to accept many things.

Another expression of the same point is that methodological rules guide the interpretation of experience and the planning of action (Sections 1.3.1, 1.3.3). These tend not to be given up in the face of anomalous experiences. Rather, these core rules are preserved by denying or reconstruing what seems to go against them. This is necessary if judgement, in general, or of particular kinds, is to continue. Related here also is the account given earlier of the incorrigibility of
self-reports (Sections 1.3.2 and 3.2). Reports of the mental states regulating one’s own current activity or the actions about to be performed function in part as statements of intent, and hence cannot, in normal circumstances, be wrong. In various ways the knowledge—or certainty—required for action and thought appears in the form of a decision (Wittgenstein 1969, e.g. 516, Section 360–362; quoted from and discussed in Section 1.3.3). What is needed is commitment by the agent, or an executive function within the information-processing system.

These issues are central to post-empiricism because it frees thought and knowledge from something pre-given and fixed, from ‘experience’ construed as an absolute category, and thereby emphasizes creative activity. There are then many possibilities, and in the midst of these decisions are necessary.

In biology this requirement appears as sketched through this chapter. Along the phylogenetic scale rules and representations are progressively less pre-given and fixed, becoming more acquired, created, and diverse. Hence the need for decision-making procedures and communication, appearing as aspects of consciousness and language.

In the history of epistemology the same underlying problematic can be seen at work in the problem of knowledge, particularly in its Classical form and in its present day form. As remarked in Chapter 1 (Section 1.1.1), the seventeenth-century problem was generated by and pre-occupied with the split between sense-experience and the absolute nature posited by modern science. There is however a more accessible problem of knowledge, related to though obscured by this modern extreme.

The problem arises from the relativity of what passes for human knowledge, relativity to the senses, to personal opinions, to culture, and may be expressed in the form: how in all this flux can we identify anything really fixed, anything that we can really know. This was the Classical problem, identified by Plato, for example in the Theaetetus (discussed above, Section 3.3) and expounded at length by the Pyrrhonists. Thus Sextus Empiricus propounded the various modes of sceptical argument, citing many and diverse examples of variation and opposition among experiences, theories, beliefs, and customs (Sextus Empiricus ca. 200 A.D., Chapters 14–16). To any one may be opposed another of apparently equal validity, so that there is no way of deciding which is right, and the sceptic therefore judges neither way, saying only ‘Perhaps’, ‘Possibly’, or ‘It seems so’ (Sextus Empiricus ca. 200 A.D. Chapters 21–22). This state of affairs invited the sophists to propose that being right or true can be a matter only of power, alleged values assigned to the opinions and interests of the dominant group. Such cynicism, which has much to be said for it, is well expounded by contemporary post-modernist writers such as Foucault (e.g. 1977; and for critical commentary see e.g. Norris 1993).
The sceptical problem arises where there is consciousness of variety, of the many possibilities, the relativity, and the apparent absence of absolutes. One response is to believe that one’s own beliefs have absolute validity, untainted, unlike everybody else’s, by relativity, but this position is essentially undermined by the sceptical critique. The conclusion that there are no absolute truths may appear inevitable. There is however the exception that we can affirm the world which generates this conclusion, a world in which relativity and difference are recognized rather than disqualified. A further qualification to scepticism, connected because it belongs with the same relativistic episteme, is that we have to affirm some beliefs rather than others in order to be able to think and act at all. This is a non-sceptical thought characteristic of twentieth-century epistemology, the positive side of the relativity, found when it is in an affirming rather than a sceptical mood, as for example in Wittgenstein’s *On Certainty*: we know, are certain of, what we need to know in order to be able to act.

To put the point another way, the sceptical suspense of judgement is nothing for a living being. It essentially presupposes an ‘I’ which sits and thinks rather than does anything. This kind of criticism was made by Hume in his *Treatise* (1739), (p. 160):

He (the Pyrrhonian) must acknowledge, if he will acknowledge anything, that all human life must perish, were his principles universally and steadily to prevail. All discourse, all action would immediately cease; and men remain in a total lethargy, till the necessities of nature, unsatisfied, put an end to their miserable existence. It is true; so fatal an event is very little to be dreaded. Nature is always too strong for principle.

Central to the sceptical problem is that *more of the same*—more experiences, thoughts, opinions, reasons—will not solve it. *More cognition* makes no difference. Rather, what is required is a decision, or commitment, to do (or believe) this rather than that. The implication here is that at basis activity and thought are unsupported by reason. This certainly does not imply ‘irrationality’ however. On the contrary, it belongs to the definition of action that it is justified by reasons, with reference to beliefs and desires. Rather, reasons in the end run out, and what remains then are our inclinations, the will, to act and think in this way rather than that, according to our nature, as living beings, as human beings, and as the particular person that we are.

These points have appeared earlier in other related contexts. In Chapter 3 (Section 3.3) in discussion of Wittgenstein’s critique of rule-following we concluded that reasons run out, leaving inclinations. In Chapter 4 (Section 4.5) it was noted that explanations of action cite the nature of the agent, involving theories with more or less generality, from those which cite general biological nature to those which appeal to personality.
6.5 **Higher-order intentionality: the development of thought and reason**

### 6.5.1 Introduction

The main task of this chapter is explication of the proposal that intentionality and intentional causality run right through from relatively elementary biological processes to the most complex psychological processes, up to mature human cognition including reason, by which time higher-order intentional processes have come into play. Essential to this developmental story is the seamless transition from biology to developmental psychology as considered in Sections 6.2 and 6.3. We saw in Section 6.3 that principles of intentionality can be seen at work in early development, and that their creative potential begins to be realized in children’s play. This creative potential, the freeing of rules and representations from fixed patterns, is of enormous significance in nature and culture, and was viewed from various perspectives in Section 6.4. In this closing main section we return to the developmental story of the chapter, extending it from the early stages of human cognitive development to its maturity.

### 6.5.2 Origins in action

Notwithstanding the evident, great differences between intentionality in the beginnings of life and in the mature human mind, the transitions are seamless. The links between early biological and psychological function in human development are made clear in the claim fundamental to cognitive developmental theory, that cognition has its origin in action. Vygotsky endorsed this point, in contexts that we have noted earlier, that action is typically social (Section 3.3), and that language serves in the regulation (or control) of action (Section 6.4.3). Thus Vygotsky (1981, pp. 69–70):

“Children master the social forms of behavior and transfer these forms to themselves. With regard to our area of interest, we could say that the validity of this law is nowhere more obvious than in the use of the sign. A sign is always originally a means used for social purposes, a means of influencing others, and only later becomes a means of influencing oneself. According to Janet, the word initially was a command to others and then underwent a complex history of imitations, changes of functions, etc. Only gradually was it separated from action. According to Janet, it is always a command, and that is why it is the basic means of mastering behaviour. Therefore, if we want to clarify genetically the origins of the voluntary function of the word and why the word overrides motor responses, we must inevitably arrive at the real function of commanding in both ontogenesis and phylogenesis.”
In Piaget, the fundamental linkage between cognition and action is most clear in the sensori-motor stage, where they practically coincide. Thus Piaget (1970, pp. 103–4):

In the common view, the external world is entirely separate from the subject. … Any objective knowledge, then, appears to be simply the result of a set of perceptive recordings, motor associations, verbal descriptions, which all participate in producing a sort of figurative copy or ‘functional copy’ (in Hull’s terminology) of objects and the connections between them. The only function of intelligence is systematically to file, correct, etc., these various sets of information; in this process, the more faithful the critical copies, the more consistent the final copies will be. In such an empiricist prospect, the content of intelligence comes from outside, and the coordinations that organize it are only the consequences of language and symbolic instruments.

But this passive interpretation of the act of knowledge is in fact contradicted at all levels of development and, particularly, at the sensori-motor and pre-linguistic levels of cognitive adaptation and intelligence. Actually, in order to know objects, the subject must act upon them, and therefore transform them: he must displace, connect, combine, take apart, and reassemble them.

From the most elementary sensori-motor actions (such as pushing and pulling) to the most sophisticated intellectual operations, which are interiorized actions, carried out mentally (e.g., joining together, putting in order, putting into one-to-one correspondence), knowledge is constantly linked with actions or operations, that is, with transformations.

Piaget here correctly suggests that the main idea, that cognition is grounded in action, stands opposed to a variety of traditional and contemporary doctrines, as has been argued throughout this essay, such as the resemblance theory of representation (Section 1.2.1), the computational theory of mind (Section 2.2, also 2.4), and empiricism (Section 1.3.1). While the linkage between cognition and action is most apparent clear at the start in the sensori-motor stage, it remains in subsequent developmental stages, including in the mature formal operational, attained during adolescence, characterized by abstraction, logic, theory, and beliefs about beliefs, and which forms the basis of cultural practices of science, politics, and so on. It is plausible to say that in this development the balance of influence shifts: at the beginning cognition is very closely tied to action, and is made possible by action. By the time of maturity however, cognition makes the practice possible.

6.5.3 Cognitive maturation

While both founding developmental theories, those of Vygotsky and Piaget, affirm the close connection between cognition and action, they also both recognize that in development there is a loosening of cognition from action, so that in fact the former can in some sense run free of the latter, and this is particularly so as cognition develops from its sensori-motor origins by using conventional
symbolism, i.e. language. Early in the development of language cognition as verbally encoded can run free, at the level of grammatical or word play, in flights of fancy, and in cultural practices of story-telling, spoken and written. The relations of these kinds of representation to reality are complex and varied. Separation of thought and language from their beginnings in action is a major developmental task, involving creation of many distinctions, between self and object, appearance and reality, sign, and signified. Such distinctions remain blurred in what may be called pre-rational, or magical thought. In this stage (or state of mind) imagination, wish, sign and reality merge, while through childhood the rational mentality draws more precise boundaries (Piaget 1937; Vygotsky 1981; Subotskii 1985; Harris 1994; Bolton et al. 2002).

Further cognitive development occurs at or around puberty. As would be expected this is linked to further maturation in brain structure and function specifically in the frontal regions (Jernigan et al. 1991), which characteristically serve the organization and regulation of action (Luria 1966). In his formulation of cognitive maturation during adolescence, Piaget emphasized the appearance of so-called formal operations, basic to which is application of propositional logic. Indeed the study was called The Growth of Logical Thinking (Inhelder and Piaget 1958). The propositional calculus specifies rules for making complex propositions from simple ones using connectives such as not, and, or, and implies. Inhelder and Piaget’s emphasis on formal logic as the high point of reason is connected to themes in early twentieth-century philosophy already referred to in the first chapter. The propositional calculus had a fundamental role in both Wittgenstein’s Tractatus (Section 1.2.1) and logical empiricism (Section 1.3.1). In both cases it was the structure which contained the combinations of all simple propositions which represented reality. It defined the permissible relations between propositions, and the validity of inferences between one (complex) proposition and another. In brief, and in these senses, the propositional calculus defined ‘reason’. Against this logico-philosophical background, it was plausible to regard human cognitive development as culminating in competence with the propositional calculus, and other formal logical systems (such as set theory).

This whole background metaphysics was being overturned at the same time, however, giving way to post-empiricism, with its emphasis on activity and theory. Representation is seen primarily as being in the service of action, as opposed to being pictures or images of states of affairs, and it employs hierarchically organized theory, and is not simply a passive reflection of experience (Section 1.3.1). Of course Piaget himself was a main contributor to both aspects of the paradigm shift as it has occurred in psychology. His emphasis on the intimate connection between thought and action in early cognitive development is well-known, and referred to in Section 6.5.2, as is his emphasis on the role of cognitive structures.
The paradigm shift in the definition of cognition has immediate implications for logic in the broader sense of the theory of judgement. The inference is that what matters to logic is the role of cognition in regulating action, and the role of theory in the interpretation of experience. In the new paradigm, what matters to logic, to the a priori definition of the conditions of thought and reason, is rather whatever is essential to theory in the regulation of action (Chapter 1, Section 1.3.3). Emphasis on the development of the power to theorize can in fact be found in Inhelder and Piaget’s theory of cognitive maturation in adolescence, but at the end, in the final chapter, after all the material on the development of propositional logic. The authors write (Inhelder and Piaget 1958, pp. 339–40):

The adolescent is the individual who begins to build “systems” or “theories”, in the largest sense of the term. The child does not build systems. His spontaneous thinking may be more or less systematic.; but it is the observer who sees the system from outside, while the child is never aware of it since he never thinks about his own thought. … The child has no powers of reflection, i.e. no second-order thoughts which deal critically with his own thinking. No theory can be built without such reflection.

In contrast, the adolescent is able to analyse his own thinking and construct theories. The fact that these theories are oversimplified, awkward, and usually contain very little originality is beside the point.

It can be seen here in Piagetian theory the mature ‘formal operations’ stage in fact involves various, linked competencies, including not only facility with propositional logic and the predicate calculus, but linked with that, conceptual abstraction, meta-representation (thoughts about thoughts), and (explicit) systematic theory. Arguably these various competencies are all linked to metacognition, to what we have been calling second-order and other higher-order intentionality. According to Piagetian theory this develops, at least mainly, in adolescence.

However, in the past few decades there have been major paradigm-shifts in developmental psychology, away from Piagetian general stage theory with its implications of a single theme of cognitive development occurring at more or less fixed stages. The point is not just that Piagetian theory is by now old in scientific terms, and developmental psychology has moved on, but rather that movement has not been simply linear, just a matter of ever better and empirically more refined Piagetian-style theory. There have been changes internal to the general model, for example changes in estimation of what stages are reached at what ages, but these matters of detail have been subsumed within larger paradigm-shifts. It has been argued that Piagetian theory had confused competence with performance, which can be brought out by appropriately designed experiments, including at younger ages than predicted. This was
coupled with increasing awareness that Piagetian theory had ignored major environmental influences that produced cognitive developmental changes in children, such as in the family, or school. Further, paradigm-shifts in psychology generally have affected developmental psychology, for example increasing dominance of the information-processing paradigm, and increasing emphasis on the domain-specificity of knowledge and the modularity of mind. The first breaks down cognition into many routines and sub-routines, the second emphasizes diverse systems dedicated to specific cognitive tasks. Both these new paradigms in several ways focus away from general theories and statements about cognition and its developmental stages and focus instead on specifics and on processes of change.

The upshot of these various developments is that while Piagetian cognitive developmental stage theory tended to imply that meta-cognition kicked in all at once in adolescence, the current picture is more that meta-cognition covers a variety of kinds of case, developing through childhood. Here are a few examples of meta-cognition, starting with what was most emphasized by Piaget:

A) recognition of logical or evidential connection between beliefs, e.g. that this follows from that, belongs with the other, that these various thoughts imply a general proposition, or form a theory.

It may be plausible to say that this capacity for theorizing is relatively late in development, that 5-year-olds have little of it, but many adolescents develop it. There is evidence for example that development and application of the concept of inferential validity may be attained later in childhood and in adolescence (Moshman and Franks 1986), but also evidence that pre-adolescents, even young elementary school children, are reasonably adept at crucial aspects of theory-building and application, such as differentiation of hypothetical beliefs from evidence, in particular domains (Sodian et al. 1991).

B) Evaluation/appraisal of thoughts (or statements), as being, e.g. good/bad, clever/stupid, useless, shameful, embarrassing, etc.

This kind of appraisal is common in family life, and may be internalized by the child, consistent with key elements of Vygotsky’s developmental psychology noted earlier: that mental life is an internalization of social life, and specifically that thought is inner speech. In any case there is apparently no reason from the point of view of cognitive development to put a lower bound on the age at which children can have—whether spontaneously or by internalizing—these kinds of appraisals about thoughts, or opinions, or behaviour, or about the self that has or does these things. There may be developmental factors related to content, however, as well as individual differences. For example more complex affective states and descriptions such as pride and shame seem

C) representation of controllability of mental states

Recognition that mental states may be under the person’s control, though some kinds are easier to control than others, is another form of meta-cognition. There is evidence that this capacity is already shown by seven-year-olds, though with increasing development through subsequent childhood (Flavell and Green 1999).

D) representation of what cognitive states are regulating another’s or one’s own behaviour.

This is a particularly interesting kind of meta-cognition, involving what has come to be called ‘theory of mind’, discussed in various contexts earlier (Sections 1.3.2, 3.2, 6.4.3). It is used mainly for attributing reasons for action and for affect, expressed in statements of the form: “I (or he) did what I (or he) did because I (or he) felt like thus-and-so / believed such-and-such”, and “I (or he) felt like thus-and-so because this or that happened to me (or him) and I (or he) believed such-and-such”. Very young children begin to give reasons of a sort, once they have the capacity for sentence-production, and subsequently in development the representation of one’s own states, or another’s, evolves to comprise a theory of the self, an interpretative narrative involving history, personality and plans, providing the basis for concepts of self-awareness, autonomy, and responsibility. In other words this very important meta-cognitive capacity admits of degrees, and begins to develop much earlier than adolescence, in young childhood (Chandler and Lalonde 1996). In this connection there is also evidence that young children around 6 years of age pass advanced higher-order theory of mind false belief tasks (“where does Jane think John thinks the ball is?”) (Sullivan et al. 1994).

It should be emphasized that, as argued previously in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2), all meta-cognition, like cognition generally, generates affect and behaviour. Meta-cognition—whether valid or invalid, right or wrong, reasonable or unreasonable, fair or unfair—in fact generates further activity, above and beyond the behaviour associated with the original cognition. For example, if I recognize that a succession of rejections are linked as such, and form a generalization “I am always rejected”, then I will make the prediction: “And the next time I will be too”. This is a new piece of information, over and above past individual instances. On this point, Papineau (2001) emphasizes that the means-end reasoning that characterizes human cognition involves generalization that provides new information for guiding action. Regarding the second
kind of meta-cognition listed above, if I judge my opinions or spontaneous thoughts to be bad or mad, then I am likely also to be ashamed or frightened, and act accordingly. And considering the third kind, if I judge—even though mistakenly—that anxiety cannot be controlled, then this will intensify my fear. Various kinds of errors are possible in relation to the fourth kind of meta-cognition considered above, i.e. representation of the cognitive states regulating one’s own behaviour. For example, a child may believe he was angry at his friend because the friend was nasty to him, but he was in fact angry because the friend had something he wanted; or someone may believe that there is no information-processing regulating behaviour, such as physiological arousal, when there is, as in panic disorder, or that there is when there isn’t, as in early experiments on manipulating social factors in attribution (Schachter and Singer 1962). But, even though such meta-cognitive appraisals of this fourth kind may be wrong (in any of the above ways), they generate further behaviour consistent with them. In the illustrations just given the associated further behaviour would be: self-righteousness and uninhibited anger, panic, and an emotion appropriate to the situation. These are new behaviours caused by the thoughts about the thoughts, by thoughts about the information-processing, or lack of it, regulating one’s (first-order) behaviour. This has the consequence that if first- and second-order cognition coincide, if one is a correct representation of the other, then there is integrity and certainty in action, while if they diverge there are created possibilities of disorder. This will be explored in Chapter 8.

6.6 Summary

In this chapter we have reviewed the operation of intentional causal processes in an ascent from the perceptual apparatus of primitive organisms to the complex interpersonal life of the developing child. Such processes are, we have argued pervasive and unifying in biology. Equally there are marked differences between the operation of non-human organisms and that of the human mind. These can be seen to be based on an extraordinary, explosive, and rich elaboration of intentionality, characterized by the capacity for the acquisition of multiple sets of rules of perception, thought, emotion, and action.

This implies immense scope for creativity and change, but also the need for the capacity for second-order and higher-order intentionality, to represent representations, to monitor them, and to link them to action, including social interaction. These functions are among those served by consciousness and language. As the extent of the sophistication of this evolutionary ‘play’ on intentional causality becomes evident, so will the scope for its malfunction.
References


Chapter 7

Psychiatric disorder and 
itits explanation

7.1 Introduction

We turn now to order and disorder in human psychological functioning. In doing this we build on the conclusions of the previous chapters. We assume that intentional states such as beliefs and fears are genuinely causal, and that they underpin action. We expect that the analysis of intentional causal processes which applied to non-psychological biological and psychological processes in development will apply also to descriptions of adult psychological functioning. Inasmuch as intentional processes have throughout been seen to require the specification of function and dysfunction, this will apply also to psychological order and disorder. In other words the analysis of order in psychological functioning inevitably delivers one of disorder. We will illustrate the application of the analysis through a detailed consideration of a relatively unremarkable example of danger and fear. Even in such a simple example there is scope for a complex interplay between intentional and non-intentional causal processes. This will lead to a more general consideration of the ways in which we might specify physical and psychiatric disorder, and the extent to which psychiatry has borrowed a model from general medicine. It will be evident that it is the examination of intentionality, rather than the issue of biological causation, that is central. We will suggest that the failure to identify the role of intentional causal processes in established medical diagnoses, has led to a rather narrow concept of biological psychiatry.

7.2 The operation of intentionality in psychological processes

Our ‘ascent’ through physiology, phylogeny, and development brings us to adult human psychological functioning. This forms the final part of the thesis that intentional causal processes are seen throughout biological systems. Our initial, and most detailed example will be of human behaviour in response to an external threat. We have chosen this because it provides a very clear basis
on which to illustrate quite substantial complexity. The case could be made that we need to go further, to sequences of behaviours, to relationships, families, social groupings, and societies, and some of these will be considered in relation to a range of possible mechanisms in order and disorder, in this and the following two chapters. Nevertheless we will not in this book attempt to carry the analysis into a detailed consideration of the functioning of complex human organizations.

Take the example of a state of fear induced in a person (who will be referred to henceforward either as ‘the man’ or ‘the subject’) standing in a field, at the sight of a bull in the same field. The state of fear is a normal or appropriate response. It is mediated by information about the bull. There is a series of physical events set in train starting at the retina and proceeding via the visual pathways to the visual cortex, and thereafter a number of complex processes involving other cortical and sub-cortical structures. These events have to be described in terms of being about a state of affairs in the outside world; they have intentionality.

The response is not determined by the inherent properties of the bull but by the preoccupation of the individual. Thus the size of the bull might be a determining factor, however it is likely that, in a manner rather analogous to that of the response of the cardiovascular regulatory system, there will be a threshold below which fear is not induced, then a range over which fear is related to the size of the bull, and a point above which fear is reduced on the grounds that at a certain weight the bull would be unlikely to be sufficiently mobile to pose a threat. The point is that the response is determined by a quality such as ‘dangerousness’ which is a function of the perceiving organism; the subject in relation to the stimulus.

The perception is rule-bound and conventionalized. It could be represented in many different ways providing the information were retained. Thus it would be possible to induce fear if the observer were looking in the opposite direction to the bull, at a person who had a prearranged signal which meant ‘bull’. This could be any action provided it had been agreed previously what it meant. The rules governing the response of the man in the field are likely to be a combination of hard-wired and learnt. Those linking light impinging on the retina, bursts of impulses in the visual pathway, and visual cortical responses were considered in the previous chapter. These rules, or the capacity to acquire them, are likely to be determined genetically, although as we shall see, the experiments of Hubel and Wiesel and others have indicated that exposure to light early in development may also have an important role. Further brain processes are likely to interpret shape or movement in terms of previous experiences. Influential experiences may include seeing bulls or even having been
charged by a bull, but equally may consist only of having read about, or having been told about bulls and their behaviour. Thus the internalized sets of rules may have been generated in a number of different ways. Further, there is a wide range of ways in which the link between the bull and the emotional and behavioural response could be mediated. It could be in the form of a belief of the form ‘bulls are dangerous’ or ‘Aberdeen Angus bulls are dangerous’. Equally there could be, depending on history and culture, other internalized sets of rules that would lead to the same response, of the form ‘all animals over five feet high are dangerous’ or ‘all four-legged animals are dangerous’ or ‘all animals with rings in their noses are dangerous’ and so on. Such beliefs would be embedded in further beliefs such as that ‘animals are stronger than humans’, or that ‘these animals move faster than humans’, and beliefs such as those concerning the efficacy and the value of the self. Thus the internalized rules may vary substantially and they may be generated through very different routes.

The term ‘belief’ is here a shorthand for a wide range of states of mind. Thus the man in the field might be a farmer whose knowledge of bulls is based on 40 years of experience but no reading, or he may have had no experience of bulls directly but might have read extensively about cattle. The beliefs of the former might be manifested in behaviour that is systematically related to the behaviour of the bull but in few words, and the latter predominantly in conversation. Alternatively, the man in the field might be a French student with exactly the same amount of book knowledge regarding bulls as a student whose first language is English. Each of these will have used entirely different words, and hold beliefs that are expressed differently, but are linked to the phenomenon in the same systematic way. Within the context of the analysis of intentional causality, a belief is an example of the way in which we describe to ourselves the set of rules governing the construction that is to be placed on our experiences. This is true of all intentional states including those that are predominantly cognitive, and those that are predominantly affective.

The indirect association between the energy of the stimulus and that of the response is well illustrated in this example. Clearly a charging bull has momentum and energy. However the response of the person to the presence of the bull is not mediated by that energy. If we suppose that the presence of the bull is indicated to the man by a third gesticulating party, then a large energetic gesture could mean ‘bull standing still’ whilst a small gesture might convey ‘bull charging’. This will depend entirely upon the convention which has been adopted. The process is fundamentally the same whether we refer to signalling among the neurones of the visual system, or signalling among people. Just as the responses of neurones to light may be an increase or decrease of the rate of firing—via on-centre and off-centre receptors—so human signalling
systems utilize increases or decreases of magnitude or energy of responses to denote the presence of the object.

The perception of the bull entails the detection of difference. We saw in Chapter 6.2.2 how this occurs in the peripheral visual system. Higher perceptual processes need to discriminate between numerous possibilities such as bull versus cow, and dead versus alive. The extent of the discrimination will depend upon the experience of the observer. For instance for many people the perception of the bull would be sufficient to provide the basis for action, however a farmer might discriminate ‘Aberdeen Angus’ and ‘Hereford’, and in the latter case (because Hereford bulls are not generally aggressive) he will not be anxious. The response is based on the presence of sufficient cues to make the distinction. Just as in the case of the baroreceptor, so here the response depends upon the presence of a specialised receptor, the visual apparatus. In the absence of this, and if no alternative sensory apparatus were used, the bull, no matter how fierce, could not be the cause of the fear.

Finally the person in the field was capable of being deceived. Clearly this could be achieved easily by the gesticulating mediator. However provided that the cues that were taken as crucial to make the distinction were available, so could a bull-like object. The conditions under which this requirement were met would vary. For instance at dusk, a bull-like shape may suffice whilst in daylight and close up, the resemblance would have to be closer. Nevertheless the bull-like object would be the intentional cause of the fear in exactly the same way as a volley of impulses from the baroreceptors to the vasomotor centre.

### 7.3 The disruption of intentionality

How then do we construct criteria for judging normal and abnormal responses? Thus far, we have stated that fear is a normal response to a bull that is perceived as a potentially dangerous animal. This can be further clarified with reference to the person’s beliefs about bulls, about this bull in relation to bulls in general, beliefs about the self, and information about the person’s current circumstances. All of these are relevant to a description of the state of anticipation or readiness of the person in the field. Let us assume that we are observing the man in the field. If he is clearly in a state of fear, as evidenced by sweating, rapid heart rate, or alteration of speech or behaviour, we would be likely to ask no further questions. This is because we have used the information about the situation and our knowledge of the concerns, perceptions, and beliefs of other people in general, and concluded that the response is consistent with the set of rules under which we expect it to take place.
Suppose however the man does not show fear under these circumstances. The observer cannot provide an account according to the set of rules, or expectations that he assumes are operating. *There is a discontinuity in the account that can be given.* However if the observer then notices that the man in the field is carrying a rifle, he is less likely to be puzzled, because he has further information that tells him about the assumptions or expectancies of the person in the field. The rifle can be said to be the intentional cause of the lack of fear, provided the observer can interrogate the man further to establish that the gun is loaded, and he knows how to use it, or following the point about deception, that he believes the gun is loaded, and he believes he knows how to use it. The observer can only account for the behaviour if he has the same information as that which is influencing the man in the field.

Suppose now that there are no such observable items that might enable the observer to give a satisfactory account. There are four possibilities, (a) that the observer does not have sufficient knowledge of the sets of rules or expectations that inform the behaviour, (b) the man in the field has not seen the bull and so does not have relevant information, (c) the man in the field does not have the relevant set of concerns, expectancies, or beliefs, and (d) that there has been disruption of the functioning of his perceptual, cognitive, or motor capabilities. The first explanation would apply if the man turned out to be a Spanish Bullfighter who relished an encounter with a bull. In terms of Dennett’s analysis that we reviewed in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2.2) this would be a design stance explanation, in that this was the framework in which the response could be predicted. The man had been trained to perceive bulls as a challenge and source of excitement, and the intentionality of his response could be described within that framework. This would have nothing to do with design in the sense of an immutable hard-wired feature, but as an acquired set of rules and expectancies, an issue to which we will return later in this chapter. In the second case the man in the field has not received the information about the bull and so there cannot be a response which has intentionality with respect to the bull. The third type of account would apply if the animal were unfamiliar to the man, either from direct experience or through other sources of information, in which case he would not have the ‘equipment’ with which to respond. The experience of the bull would then fall outside the range of the information-processing capability of the man, and this would be another modified ‘design stance’ explanation.

There remains the possibility that function has been disrupted. This may have been the result of disease or trauma to one or more elements of the pathway linking perception and action. For instance there may have been damage to the optic nerve, to the visual cortex, or he may have a condition that affects
thinking or emotional responses. The damaging agents operate in the same ways as those which might disrupt the cardiovascular system. For instance a blow to the head, or a tumour may disrupt the functioning of the optic nerve by virtue of its physical force or pressure. The energy of the trauma does enter into the equation, no special receptors are required, and the system does not have a set of rules that underpin the representation of the trauma. If a blow to the head is the cause of injury to the optic nerve there will be no requirement that the man ‘saw it coming’ or that he in any sense perceived the blow. Indeed it could have had the same effect if it were administered whilst he was asleep or under an anaesthetic. Here then the cause of the disruption would be non-intentional and would depend crucially on the physical make-up of the nerve and the extent of the injury. Thus far we need make no reference to intentional processes; and only to physico-chemical laws. The significance of the physical injury would however depend upon the role of the molecules, atoms, or ions in the intentional system. If the change of physical state had no implications for functioning, then it would not be a significant injury, and equally a small change of physical state might have serious consequences. Here then the envisaged link between the disruptive agent and the visual system does not entail intentional causality, but its significance does.

We turn next to the experience of the man in the field. In the straightforward case, he is likely to provide an explanation of his fear in similar terms to those that have been used by the observer. Common sense, or folk psychology, accounts are close to those of intentional causal explanations. He would be likely to explain similarly his lack of fear if he possessed an object such as a gun that made him feel safe. His explanation of those instances where he did not show fear, and there were no aspects of the circumstances that were hidden from the observer are of great interest. In these instances to a greater or lesser extent the man is likely to have been unaware of the cause of his lack of response. The Spanish Bullfighter might, if asked subsequent to the event, say that when he was younger he was afraid of bulls, or that he knew of people who were afraid of bulls. Then he would be able to refer to a different set of rules in which bulls were seen as fearsome, but it would be crucial to his competence as a bullfighter that the contradictory sets of rules, ‘I must fight’ and ‘I must run away’ did not operate together if effective action were to ensue. We will return at length to the consequences of the operation of contradictory sets of rules in the next chapter.

If the man in the field did not see the bull, then only afterwards when we say something like ‘you seemed very calm in the field with the bull’ and he replies ‘Oh my God was there a bull? I probably didn’t see it as the sun was in my eyes’ does the cause of the lack of fear become apparent. Where bulls fall outside the
range of experience or knowledge of the man, at the time he will have nothing to report. Questioned afterwards he will report the perception but not its significance. Once the significance of bulls is explored, it is likely that he will be able to provide the explanation of his lack of fear.

The physical cause of disruption of vision is similar. The man is not aware that the disruption has occurred. It is however different in that neither does he know about its origins. Whilst he has an intentional apparatus which perceives the sun as the origin of the blinding light, this is not the case for the physical agent. Thus he cannot give an account of the way in which his perceptual apparatus was disrupted. This is an example of the general principle, which is that non-intentional causal agents have their effect without the awareness or the activity of the person, who has the experience of something happening to him. This follows from our observation that non-intentional causal agents do not require sensory or information-processing facilities, which in relation to psychological functioning means forms of perception.

Before taking our example further we will summarize the general points covered so far. Human psychological responses are explained in terms of states of mind that entail intentional causal processes. These require internalized sets of rules or frames, and where responses are seen to be consistent with these, there will be many questions to be addressed about the origins and mechanisms, but there will not be doubt about the functioning of the system. Where the observer notes a discontinuity between the stimulus and the expected response then further questions will be asked. Answers may entail further information about circumstances, further information about the subject’s perceptions, expectations or beliefs; or they may specify stimuli outside the range of the subject’s perceptual or cognitive range; or there may be disruption of functioning. Where the apparent discontinuity has arisen from lack of information its provision will remove the discontinuity and provide an explanation of the apparent dysfunction. Where the stimulus is outside the range of functioning or there has been a disruption then the discontinuity will remain. The subject, on interrogation may be able to provide an account of the intentional origins of the discontinuity where for instance he was using a set of beliefs that were unknown to the observer. Where the stimulus falls outside the available set of interpretative rules, or where there has been disruption of the intentional processes, the origins of discontinuity will be outside the awareness of the subject, at the time.

Now let us return to our example and consider a change of behaviour, for this eventually is one of the key issues to be addressed in the area of psychological disturbance. The man looks at the bull, he starts to sweat and look around for an escape route; suddenly he stops. Now the discontinuity is clearly
a feature of the man in the field. Provided the observer is correct in assuming that up to the change of behaviour the man was responding appropriately, then we cannot postulate the modified design stance explanation whereby the stimulus is outside the range of the subject’s experience or expectations. The explanation could still be that this is only an apparent discontinuity in that he believes for instance that the best strategy for dealing with the bull is first to show fear and then indifference. However, other possibilities are more likely. The first is that he has remembered following the initial response, that the best strategy is not to show fear, and has put this into practice. In other words he has employed a new set of rules to govern the response. The second possibility is that he has acquired or discovered that he has, an agent that makes the position safer. For instance he has reached into his pocket and there has found a pistol. Thirdly in a revision of the perceptual processes of the sort described earlier, he may have discovered that it is not a real bull, or only a Hereford bull. Fourth, there may have been a disruption of his appreciation of the situation. Thus an agent which induced clouding of consciousness, such as epilepsy, or a drug administered unknown to him, could have been the cause. The general point is that disruptions or apparent disruptions in the account that can be given can arise from the intrusion or introduction of another set of rules, additional information, or a disruption of the intentional apparatus by a physical agent. In the latter case the search for further rules, or information will not remove the disruption. Of crucial interest here is the fact that from the observer’s point of view an apparent disruption in the rule following may arise either from the interaction of sets of rules, or from the acquisition of new information by the subject, or a disruptive cause, and the extent to which the observer considers alternative sources of such rules or information, will influence his or her explanation.

7.4 Levels of explanation and the reduction of mental processes

We have seen that intentional causality makes reference to principles that are not found in chemistry and physics, but the operation of the principle takes advantage of physical processes to achieve their ends. Intentional causality is not reducible to the non-intentional where the system is functioning, but dysfunction can arise from disruption that can be explained at least in part by non-intentional causal processes. There is implied in this analysis a concept of levels of functioning that needs to be spelt out in relation to psychological functioning.

Intuitively, it would seem, and many authors have proposed (e.g. Nagel 1961, Darnell et al. 1990), that a hierarchy of levels may be constructed which
places physics at the bottom and proceeds via chemistry, biochemistry, physiology, and neuro-psychology to psychology and psychiatry. This has led to a continuing discussion regarding the reducibility of mental processes (Fodor 1983; Putnam 1983; Dennett 1987; Hardcastle 1992). We have argued that if biological causality is not reducible to physico-chemical processes, then by the same argument neither will that branch of the biological, referred to as the psychological. The argument against reduction of the psychological therefore in part borrows from that in Chapter 5.

Many recent authors have also argued against the reduction of mental processes (e.g. Davidson 1980; Fodor 1983), but as we have seen the accompanying danger is that mental processes are stranded without a causal story, or one that separates them from other biological processes. However once the case for the pervasiveness of intentional processes in biology is presented then explanations of psychological processes are no more stranded than those of molecular biology. Nevertheless we do need to be quite specific about what can and cannot be reduced, and how far. We need also to be clear about levels of causal processes, for we are not referring to distinctions such as those of mental versus non-mental, or neuroscience versus biochemistry. That would be to create a dualism (or multilevelism) that is totally at odds with our analysis. For instance a rapid heart beat is part of the intentional response of fear, and an erection is part of male sexual excitement. These physiological responses have intentionality with respect to the stimulus in just the same way as mental processes.

In one sense then, the concept of ‘level’ becomes redundant. This is however different from the concept ‘level’ that emerges from our proposition; one that is defined by the nature of the analysis of information. Just as intentional explanations cannot be reduced to chemistry and physics where the words and concepts have no parallel, so they cannot be reduced to point where the rules of interpretation of information no longer exist. The location of this point will depend upon the way in which information is encoded, and the relevant rules are stored. Take the distinction between the neurosciences and psychology. These may be taken to denote different levels of explanation whereby one might be invoked to explain the other. In our analysis the relevant issue is, how is the representation and its link with action elaborated?

Often, this means that reduction will not be the appropriate way to characterize the link between the neurosciences and psychology (Hardcastle 1992). Thus the rules for transforming light from the bull into patterns of neuronal firing are present throughout the visual system and underpin the intentionality of the system with respect to features such as dark and light, orientation and movement. The specification of these rules belongs to the neurosciences.
However the determinant of the response is the perception of ‘bull’ or ‘particular breed of bull’ and this will require the representation of the person’s knowledge of the bull also under a range of relevant beliefs and expectations about them. As we have argued earlier such mental events are genuinely causal in the mediation of stimulus and response, and here it is clear that the response requires the internalized rules that underpin the perception and discrimination. The question of level of analysis relates only to the level at which such rules are present and capable of being utilized in perception and judgement.

The identification of level requires a specification of the intentional ‘work’ that is entailed. For instance what would be entailed in envisaging a lower-level account of perceptions or beliefs? It would be necessary to specify how the same information could be represented without these psychological entities. This would in effect require a parallel system with the same ability as a psychological system but non-psychological. It would need to have access to the information derived from sources such as reading, talking, and direct experience, and it would have to partake of the generation of internalized rules, and of the movement among them, whilst not being psychological. Further, if we take consciousness to be a key feature of psychological functioning, and the monitoring of the wide range of internalized rules to be an important function of consciousness, this lower-level activity would have to do without that facility to monitor movement among sets of rules. Thus in postulating a lower-level capability we would have to envisage it functioning without some of the capacity that appeared in our developmental account to be crucial to the handling of multiple sets of rules. It is likely that such a system would be inefficient and mistake prone. Further, from our perspective, it would not do any explanatory work. To return to the fundamental point, ‘level’ here refers to level of intentional analysis and response, and this may correspond to a range of academic disciplines.

The interplay between different levels of intentionality may be illustrated using two further variations of the story of a man in the field with the bull. In the first he is not anxious, and there is no explanation, and when asked about it subsequently the man says he was surprised at his response because previously he had been very frightened by bulls. The explanation is that unknown to him he has been given a drug which reduces anxiety. This drug interrupts the intentional link between the stimulus, the perception, emotional and physiological responses and the behaviour. It acts like other physical agents without the subject’s perception.

Drugs are interesting agents in relation to the intentionality of physiological and biological systems. For instance, many antibiotics mimic the features of
molecules that are important for the synthesis or division of bacteria, and hence fool the organisms into absorbing them. However they do not perform the usual function of such molecules and the biochemistry of the bacteria is disrupted. In other words they make use of intentional features to cause interruption.

Anxiety-reducing agents such as a beta-blocker use the same principle. The molecules of these drugs are similar to those of the receptors for the naturally occurring transmitters. Interestingly there is more than one receptor, and the effect of the transmitter differs depending on the nature of the receptor. The beta-blocker sits on beta receptors so that the apparatus is effectively 'blinded'. The effects of the sympathetic nervous system transmitters to stimulate nervous impulses and hence sympathetic activity that is a part of the anxiety response, are therefore decreased. Here then the blockade has an intentional component in that the beta-blocker mimics to some degree the transmitter, but lacks the features required to stimulate a response. It therefore acts to deceive the system. If the receptor only accepted the correct molecule, i.e., made finer discriminations, the blockade could not work. Function is disrupted because of the interruption of the intentional causal link. This is then observed and experienced as an interruption of the link between the bull and fear. That part of the link we call psychological has been interrupted and the effect of the drug does not entail psychological processes such as awareness and perception. Therefore in relation to psychological processes and the relevant information for them, there is a non-intentional causal effect. However inasmuch as sympathetic activity is also part of the intentional response to the bull, and the blockade requires mimicry at the receptor site, it performs the same function as that which a cardboard bull might if it were to deceive the man into being afraid.

A further case makes a different point. The man is in the field and there is no bull, or at least he hasn’t seen one. Nevertheless he feels anxious and has a tachycardia. The explanation is that he has not eaten for some time, and is hypoglycaemic (has low blood sugar). In this case his state has intentionality with respect to glucose metabolism, but not anxiety-provoking agents. There is then an intentional cause of his state, but not in relation to anxiety-provoking agents. Inasmuch as he is not anxious about anything the anxiety does not have an intentional cause. In this example we see the intrusion of the effect of intentional processes at one level (physiology) into another level, the psychological.

The purpose of these examples is to underline two rather contrasting points. The first is that the concept of levels of functioning is misleading if it obscures the extent to which responses with the same intentionality may occur
at multiple levels. Equally there are differences in levels of representation such that intentionality with respect to ‘dangerous bull’ has a different logic and degree of complexity than intentionality with respect to ‘lack of glucose’.

7.5 Medical disorder

We have, earlier in this chapter, considered the possibility that a medical condition might account for a disruption in the function of perceptions, emotional states, cognitions, or behaviours in response to the presence of a potentially dangerous animal. We turn now to the general description of illness or medical condition, before going on to psychiatric disorder. The definition of physical illness is not straightforward because, depending on the condition, different features such as pain, disability, or threat to life will be more or less prominent. However, frequently, abnormality of biochemistry of physiology will be crucial, and the concept of abnormality will refer to the elements of intentional causal processes outlined in Chapter 5. Conditions such as diabetes, renal (kidney) failure, high blood pressure, and various endocrine conditions such as Addisons disease or Cushings disease, entail the failure to regulate the relevant systems appropriately.

It is crucial to emphasize that frequently specification of the physical state of a system does not give the diagnosis. Take the example of a tachycardia (rapid pulse). This may have intentionality, for instance with respect to a decrease in atmospheric oxygen, or vigorous exercise. Thus if a physician were working in Cuzco (Peru) at a height of 12,000 ft, and a patient came to her with a pulse rate of 100, she would ask them how long they had been at this altitude. If the answer were ‘one day’ she might well look no further. This would be because she had made the judgement based on the normal functioning of a system that is able to detect a change of oxygen and respond with appropriate action. However, if this were a long-term resident of the town she might look for another explanation. One possibility might be that a disturbance in the conducting mechanism of the heart could have led to the tachycardia, and this would have taken place via non-intentional causal links. The tachycardia would not have intentionality with respect to the effective functioning of the cardiovascular system, and evidence of this disruption might be found in the form of an identifiable lesion.

In medical conditions non-intentional causality is seldom found in isolation from intentional causality. Indeed it is one of the most striking features of living organisms that they detect and respond to agents such as infections or injuries, which may present threats to their integrity. They have available compensatory (intentional) responses. Take the example of blood clot formation and the
healing of tissues in response to injury. Here the injury that occurs by a non-intentional mechanism, is detected and a response is elaborated that restores normal functioning. All of the criteria of intentional causality apply, but the stimulus is breakdown of functioning. In general although we can point to pathology or noxious agents as the cause of breakdown, it is rare that this is seen in the absence of compensatory mechanisms. In the examples of healing, it is usually clear which components arise from the disruptive agent, and which are part of the compensatory mechanism (although scar tissue can cause considerable damage), but in others they may be closely related. For instance a further explanation for a tachycardia might be that substantial blood loss has taken place, in which case the increased pulse rate forms part of an adaptive response to a fall in blood volume, which is designed to maintain blood pressure in the face of this reduced volume of circulating blood. In some susceptible individuals this tachycardia might lead to chest pain due to relatively insufficiency of oxygen of the heart, so that the clinical picture arises from a complex interplay of intentional and non-intentional causality. Where there is injury there also is compensation, and where there is threat there also is adaptation.

Another source of complexity arises from the fit between the organism and the environment. We noted in Chapter 5 that where intentional causality operates, there is a normal range of function that is defined in terms of fit between the system and the environment. Where this is the milieu interieur there is little scope for change, but where it is the external environment there is considerable scope. In general the environment relevant to the range of functioning will be that in which the animal evolved, ‘The Environment of Evolutionary Adaptiveness’ (Bowlby 1969). It is evident that in Westernized societies the physical and social environment is substantially different from that in which humans evolved. It seems also that the nutritional environment is different and that this has consequences for physical health. It is not within our scope to examine the evidence for and against such explanations, however the emerging role of diet in disease is illuminating. Research over the past 20 years has focused on the role of diet in the genesis of diseases of Western society such as large bowel cancer and coronary heart disease. Western diets differ from those of more traditional societies, in having less fibre and a higher proportion of animal fat. In some cases, such as those related to high transit times for low-fibre food through the gut, there may be a toxic effect; in other words a non-intentional cause. However in other cases such as that of raised blood cholesterol, with its associated increased risk of coronary heart disease, there may be a greater demand placed on the regulatory system than that for which it was designed (and in which it has evolved), or an alteration of the
setting of that mechanism. The mechanism would be that the intake of dietary animal fat is greater than that which can be metabolized without an increase of blood cholesterol, and the system is overloaded, or that there is in effect an adjustment of the normal level, that is to say of the one the system seeks to restore. In either case intentional processes are important. Once the cholesterol has persisted at an abnormal level it may in turn lead to other processes that proceed beyond their normal range of functioning, and hence lead to atheroma (fat deposits in the blood vessels) and coronary heart disease. Similarly the normal regulatory process for cholesterol may include exercise and in its absence the regulation may be impeded.

Mechanisms that entail functioning at the limits of the range of the intentional apparatus and alteration of setting can be illustrated through two further examples. Many individuals who live at high altitudes have a condition called polycythaemia in which there is an increased number of red cells in the blood. This is a response of the red cell manufacturing system to lack of oxygen at altitude and therefore mediated through intentional causal processes. However they also have an increased risk of stroke, a condition that arises from blockage of an artery to the brain consequent upon from the thickness of the blood, and secondary to the polycythaemia. The explanation of the stroke therefore includes intentional and non-intentional causality. A mechanism that is adaptive over some ranges of oxygen levels, may be maladaptive when humans live under conditions which are near the limits of their physiological design.

An alteration in the ‘setting’ of the system is seen in sufferers with chronic lung disease who often have a permanently raised level of carbon dioxide in their blood, to which their brain has become accustomed. When there is a worsening of the condition, usually because of chest infection, the carbon dioxide level rises and they become more breathless. Thus the intentional system continues to work, but over a different range. The aim of treatment is to return the patient to their previous state, including the previous carbon dioxide level in the blood and not to a more general normal level.

In summary we may say that medical illnesses are characterized by disruption of functioning that often entails an interplay between intentional and non-intentional causal processes. These processes are equally physiological but radically different. The intentional processes entail causal links in which there may be correct or incorrect responses, there is rule following, there is a detection apparatus with rules for the interpretation of events, there is a range of functioning, there is effective action, and there could be deception. Explanations such as those involving a blow to the head or laceration of a blood vessel are also physiological but do not entail any of these elements, and refer to the disruption of the integrity of the intentional system.
7.6 Psychiatric disorder

7.6.1 Classification and diagnosis

Over the past 20 years there has been a substantial international effort to create an effective classification of psychiatric and psychological disorder. The two principal systems, those of the World Health Organisation (1992) and the American Psychiatric Association (1994) have provided detailed criteria for disorder, and research questionnaires and interviews based on them have been developed. These have introduced substantial comparability among studies of psychiatric conditions. However a number of problems remain unresolved, and it is important to review these briefly before going on to the explanation of psychiatric disorder.

Firstly the definitions of psychiatric syndromes are in many respects arbitrary. For instance definitions of depression differ over the symptoms that are required, their duration, and whether they have to be associated with impaired functioning before a diagnosis is made. Secondly ‘comorbidity’ between psychiatric conditions is very common. People with one psychiatric condition often have two or more (Cloninger et al. 1990). For instance depression and panic disorder are classified separately but they occur together commonly (Andrade et al. 1994). Clearly this could deflect two or more conditions with a common cause, or that one condition confers vulnerability for another, or that there is a lack of distinctiveness between the hypothesized diagnostic categories. Thirdly, it is not clear that psychiatric disorders are best captured by a categorical model. This assumes that the subject either has a condition or he/she has not. Clearly this is appropriate where there is a definable pathology with a clear clause, which is the case for many medical conditions. However most psychiatric conditions may also be satisfactorily characterized by scores on dimension such as depression, anxiety, or aggression. Fourth, even when the syndrome definition may appear to be reasonably satisfactory, the condition may be heterogeneous. For instance it has been argued that schizophrenia may be heterogeneous, with genetic and environmental factors playing a role to different extents in different subgroups (Murray et al. 1985, 1991). Similar considerations apply to depression (Kendler et al. 2002). It may be that these several difficulties will prove so substantial that a quite different approach to classification of psychological disorder will be required, though it is more likely that the current classification system will be modified gradually.

We are interested here to understand what it has borrowed from medicine and what are the implied causal processes. Psychiatric diagnoses are generally characterized by a mixture of ‘abnormal’ beliefs, experiences, emotions,
or behaviours, and often include impaired social functioning as part of the definition. These features are referred to as symptoms, with the implication that they signify illness or disease. Thus psychiatry has borrowed from general medicine the concept of symptom constellations with clearly identifiable pathologies. This has been supported by medical findings of the early twentieth century, ‘… the clinical correlations between postmortem pathological findings and the behavioural sequelae of strokes, and the identification of the basis of general paresis (syphilis) filled the imagination of a generation of psychiatrists who believed that the application of such approaches would yield similar results for other psychiatric conditions.’ (Tsuang 1993). The conditions referred to here are clearly the result of a disruption of functioning by a physical agent. The explanation of a discrete condition could be provided by reference to a non-intentional cause, together with the functioning of the system in which there is a specification of the role of blood supply to, or neuronal circuits in, the brain.

Thus psychiatric diagnosis has borrowed the assumption that intentionality has run out, that there has been a disruption of functioning, and that a non-intentional causal process is responsible. Let us review the requirements that this is the case. There will be a disruption of the intentionality of states of mind or behaviours in relation to external stimuli, or in relation to previous behaviour, or both. There must be an identifiable disruptive agent that is absent in subjects who do not show this condition or and in those that do prior to its onset, and this agent should have identifiable physical properties such that a mechanism for the prediction of mental states or behaviours via bridge conditions can be envisaged. It will be evident as we consider a range of examples that these conditions are not met for any psychiatric diagnosis, but that some elements of the requirement may be present in some conditions.

The question whether and to what extent psychiatric ‘disorder’ involves intentionality, notwithstanding appearances, and interaction between intentional and lower-level non-intentional processes, is of course central from the point of view adopted in this essay. This particular focus is distinct from the task of defining ‘disorder’, as for example in Wakefield’s proposal that it implies dysfunction in an evolutionary theoretic sense, though arguments and examples on the matter of definition of disorder often do turn on the extent to which intentionality is involved (Wakefield 1992; Clark 1999; Bolton 2000, 2001).

7.6.2 **Intentionality in psychiatric disorder**

Our analysis starts with a further consideration of the intentionality of mental states and behaviour. In one sense the judgement about intentionality looks as
though it might be rather uncertain. After all an extensive analysis of the man in the field with the bull was based upon the judgement of the observer as to what might be expected. If that judgement is highly individual, then my analysis and yours may differ substantially, and our capacity to describe what is going on will be limited. However for most purposes our judgements of the expected behaviour of others is good, because we are good at guessing at their thoughts, attitudes and emotions. Indeed if it were not, our capacity to cope socially would be very limited as we would not be able to predict the behaviour of others, nor moderate our behaviours in relation to the expectations of others. We are generally good monitors of the intentionality of other people. (Some indication of the consequences of a deficit in this ability may be seen in conditions such as autism or Asperger’s Syndrome where the capacity to understand the rules of social interaction and the likely state of mind of others is limited. Sufferers make serious errors in social situations and require special educational and social supports. Many are of average or above average intelligence and so it seems that the capacity to understand the intentionality of others is distinctively different from that of a general problem-solving capacity (Hobson 1993)).

The judgement of the intentionality of possible psychiatric disorder, such as anxiety or depression may not be straightforward as that of the man in the field. Where symptoms follow a major loss such as the death of a close relative or friend the link will be clear. Suppose, however, that the depressed mood and associated difficulties such as poor concentration, poor sleep, and lack of appetite, come on apparently unexpectedly. From the perspective of the sufferer the episode has the characteristics of an illness, in which he/she is the passive recipient of a state that has intruded inexplicably into his/her life. One possibility is that the depression has intentionality in relation to recent events that was not immediately apparent to the person. George Brown and Tirril Harris and colleagues have made an explicit approach to this possibility through the investigation of life events and depression in women (Brown and Harris 1978; Brown 1989). In measuring life events they assumed that their meaning would be important, and they operationalized this in terms of the extent of contextual threat. Threat was taken to be comprised of a combination of the nature of the event and the circumstances of the person, so that the same event could have a different rating of threat depending on circumstances. In order to avoid the possible ‘colouring’ effect of depressed mood, their ratings were made by trained researchers who were given details of the event and the circumstances, but not whether the person had become depressed. These assessors made a rating based on what might be expected under those circumstances. Thus the method explicitly assumed that there
exist general sets of rules of perception and interpretation of events provided circumstances can be specified adequately. The prediction of depression was strongest where there was a combination of vulnerability factors such as lack of a confiding partner, and life events. Brown and Harris have not reported on the extent to which the women in their studies themselves believed these factors were important, however they showed that for a substantial group of women with depression there may be intentionality with respect to current adversities and circumstances. Considerable attention has been paid to the possibility that associations between life events and depression may arise from common genetic influences on both (McGuffin et al. 1988). Studies designed to take account of genetic contributions have indicated that life events do make an independent contribution, although it may be greater in individuals with a lower genetic risk for depression (Kendler et al. 2001). The intentionality of depression may relate also to more distant events. On the basis of studies using adults’ retrospective reports, a history of sexual abuse in childhood appears to be strongly associated with risk for depression in adult life (Fergusson and Mullen 1999; Hill et al. 2001), and genetic influences do not account for this association (Kendler et al. 2002).

If these findings endure will it mean that depression should not be considered a psychiatric condition? Clearly other factors such as the extent of distress or inability to function adequately will be relevant to that judgement. However they do indicate that in some cases the assumption of disrupted intentionality, which has been borrowed from the concept of illness may not be appropriate.

A second approach to the ascertainment of intentionality was that of Jaspers (1963) who sought to drive a wedge between meaningful and causal connections, and argued that meaningful connections are accessed for the self through introspection and in others through empathy. Our concept of intentional causality is much wider than that of Jaspers’ concept of meaningful connections, however our approach has much in common with his. He proposed that some beliefs, both normal and abnormal were understandable in the context of the person’s history and beliefs and current circumstances. These were to be contrasted with primary delusions that are direct, intrusive, unmediated by thought, and not understandable. Jaspers defined personality as, ‘the term we give to the individually differing and characteristic totality of understandable connections in any one psychic life’ (Jaspers 1963, p. 428), and against this background a primary delusion is one that intrudes into and distorts existing understandable connections (Walker 1991). Jaspers is here making two claims together: that the question of understandability is central, and that it can be resolved by reference to the form of the mental phenomenon. The latter claim remains uncertain. Schneider proposed that ‘first rank
symptoms’, ones which are least likely to be understandable, will demarcate schizophrenia from other psychotic disorders (Schneider 1959). These first rank symptoms are however found in association with other symptom constellation that are not typical of schizophrenia, and their utility is not proven. Nevertheless within Jaspers’ framework the use of understandability is clearly central to the determination of the intentionality of mental states and behaviours.

7.6.3 The search for non-intentional causal explanations
An alternative approach to the question of intentionality and disorder may be made from the other end of the hypothesized causal chain. If possible candidates for non-intentional causation of psychiatric disorder could be identified, then perhaps a non-intentional explanation would be supported. Depression provides us with an example of a condition in which a wide range of candidates for such an explanation has been identified. These have included neuroendocrine abnormalities in the regulation of thyroid and adrenal functioning. The results have however been rather inconsistent, and have not discriminated consistently between depressed and non-depressed adults. Let us suppose that further research provides firmer evidence for an association between endocrine abnormalities and depression. What would we require to convince us that they were playing a causal role? At least that the administration of the relevant hormone increased the risk of depression, that a reduction in the circulating hormone was associated with remission, and that where people became depressed the changes in hormone level preceded the mood changes.

Some supporting evidence comes from Cushing’s Syndrome. Here the pituitary gland at the base of the brain produces excess adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) that stimulates the adrenal gland to produce excess corticosteroids. There is a non-intentional cause of the increased steroids. Depression is seen in roughly half the cases of Cushing’s Syndrome and usually remits after treatment for the disease (Kelly et al. 1980). Thus increased corticosteroids may have a causal role in depression, but given that Cushing’s Syndrome is a very rare cause of depression, unless there exists a more covert form of the disease, it is not the usual explanation.

The idea that something analogous to Cushing’s Syndrome causes depression might be suggested by the numerous studies that have demonstrated an association between depression and abnormalities in the regulation of corticosteroids (Checkley 1992). Perhaps there is a more subtle endocrine condition that operates in the same way as Cushing’s Syndrome that has yet to be identified. However the demonstration of an association leaves us a long way from a causal story. Altered corticosteroid levels may be a consequence either
of other causally relevant factors or they may form part of the physiological component of the depressive syndrome. If either or both of these is the case then the association can be explained without proposing that altered corticosteroid regulation is a contributory cause of depression.

If altered corticosteroid regulation does have a causal role we still cannot assume that the causal pathway resembles that of Cushing’s Syndrome. The key issue is whether there may be intentional processes that give rise to altered corticosteroid regulation. It is well established that corticosteroid levels in the blood rise in response to stress, and the possibility of intentional causes of depression, mediated by alterations in corticosteroid regulation, has received support from recent studies of the relationship between childhood maltreatment and depression. Women with depression and a history of child maltreatment have greater increases in plasma cortisol and ACTH in response to stress, than either non-depressed controls or depressed women without a history of maltreatment (Heim et al. 2002). The increased cortisol production resulting from chronic stress is associated with inhibition of neurogenesis in the hippocampus and reduced hippocampal volumes. Vythilingam et al. (2002) found that hippocampal volumes in depressed subjects were smaller than those of controls, but only in the subgroup that had experienced severe and prolonged physical or sexual abuse in childhood. If these findings are replicated, one explanation could be that childhood stressors cause long-term alterations in corticosteroid regulation which in turn contribute to risk of depression. This would be an intentional causal pathway with neuroendocrine mediators. Note, however, that in both studies the non-abused depressed subjects did not have abnormalities suggestive of a neuroendocrine pathway. It is possible that there are quite different mechanisms in depression depending on whether or not there is a history of child maltreatment, and the relative roles of intentional and non-intentional processes in maltreated and non-maltreated individuals remain to be identified. This example underlines the point that establishing the roles of intentional and non-intentional causal processes in psychiatric disorder is not the same thing as determining whether or not there are psychological or biological causes. The key is the nature of the causal link.

Two further examples make the point. Patients with panic attacks have been shown using Positron Emission Tomography to have significant increases in cerebral blood flow in a number of regions of the brain during lactate (chemically) induced attacks. It would be tempting therefore to deduce that the altered cerebral blood flow represents a non-intentional cause of the panic attacks. However normal individuals during states of anticipatory anxiety (when awaiting an unpleasant stimulus) have also been shown to have significant
increases in cerebral blood flow in identical regions of the brain (Reiman et al. 1989). Here the altered cerebral blood flow was a consequence of the state of anxiety, or at least an integral part of it, and the mechanism entailed intentional causality. In the case of the patients the altered cerebral blood flow may have been a cause, consequence, or integral part of the anxiety state which was induced by a non-intentional causal route. One possible explanation could bring the findings together along the lines of: repeated episodes of anxiety for which there are intentional causal explanations, could lead to an altered sensitivity of cerebral blood vessels (in other words an altered setting of the cerebral blood vessels) to the blood chemistry, and that this instability might lead to the triggering of alterations of cerebral blood flow, possibly when the acidity of blood changed, giving rise to further episodes of panic. This explanation would invoke an intentional explanation with respect to anxiety leading to alterations of the physiology of cerebral blood vessels, with consequent panic episodes of non-intentional origin with respect to anxiety.

A similar mechanism may well operate in the association between levels of aggression and raised levels of male hormones in young men. In non-human primates, individuals who are dominant within a troop show a rise in androgen levels in response to a challenge, and socially dominant non-aggressive delinquent boys have higher rates of androgens in their blood than less dominant peers (Ehrenkranz et al. 1974). It seems then that androgen levels may reflect social position and behaviour, and there is an intentional causal explanation. However, delinquent aggressive boys have higher levels of androgens than either of the other two non-aggressive delinquent groups. These levels may simply reflect the aggression, or it may be that androgen levels were in the first place increased as a consequence of their social behaviour, and this in turn led to or contributed to, aggressive behaviour. This would mean that there was an intentional causal link for the raised androgens which in turn contributed to the level of aggression via a non-intentional causal route.

7.6.4 Interactions between intentional and non-intentional causal processes

We have seen so far that our investigation of intentional and non-intentional causal links will need to focus on mental states and behaviours and their relationship with preceding or concurrent events, and on the physiological accompaniments of these states and behaviours. Throughout, the analysis will be of the extent of, and possible disruption of, intentionality. We can illustrate this further by reference to the same mechanisms as those which we considered earlier in relation to physical conditions. First there was the role of compensation in response to non-intentional disruption. Such a mechanism might
operate in schizophrenia. Neuropsychological theories of schizophrenia have postulated that sufferers have difficulty in sorting out which features of a situation should be attended to, and which can be taken for granted or are irrelevant (Gray et al. 1991). They therefore have to deal with more uncertainty than most people. One possible explanation for the fixed ideas of delusions is that they create certainty, and that because testing or questioning these beliefs would open the person to substantial uncertainty, a better strategy is to insist on their truth. Support for the proposal that delusions have a value to individuals, comes from a study by Roberts (1991). He compared patients who were deluded with a group that had recovered from delusions, and comparison groups of psychiatric nurses and trainee priests. The deluded patients and those who had recovered showed marked contrasts. The deluded scored much higher than the recovered patients on a measure of meaning and purpose in life, and were less depressed with fewer suicidal ideas. In all the measures the deluded patients resembled closely the nurses and the trainee priests. This study suggests that symptoms may have intentionality with respect to difficulties, such as the cognitive deficits of schizophrenia. We will consider this in more detail in Chapter 9.

Next we reviewed mechanisms that entailed functioning beyond the normal range. ‘Normal’ here referred to the environment of evolutionary adaptiveness and the design features of the organism. A similar mechanism may be envisaged in the case of schizophrenia. Numerous studies have shown that individuals with schizophrenia are more likely to relapse if they are living in a family where there is a high level of expressed emotion, which is characterized by high levels of criticism, hostility, or overinvolvement. Cross-cultural studies have demonstrated that the level of expressed emotion is lower in non-Westernized societies such as that of rural India, and that schizophrenia runs a more benign course in these societies (Kuipers and Bebbington 1988). Putting the neuropsychological theory and these findings together, it may be that information processing which has been adaptive in environments experienced during evolution, is not adequate in the altered interpersonal climate of contemporary Western societies.

Finally we considered mechanisms that entail alterations in the ‘setting’ of the system. These may be considered alterations of the design features such that responses have intentionality, but over a different range. For instance there is good evidence that psychotic episodes are linked to life events as well as to high expressed emotion (Norman and Malla 1993). Equally only a minority of individuals who are exposed to these experiences develop psychotic episodes. It may be that the critical issue is the level of stress which can be handled, and that for some individuals the threshold is low and for others
high for responding with psychotic symptoms. Those with low threshold may have a design fault with non-intentional origins, but episodes are provoked via an intentional causal mechanism.

7.7 Genetics, ‘design’ and disorder

7.7.1 Introduction
We have referred in earlier chapters to ‘design fault’ as one type of origin of disorder. In doing this we have made use of the framework described in Chapter 1 and outlined by Dennett (1987). Thus far Dennett’s proposal on design and the chess-playing computer has served us well. We return to it at this point because, in the light of our discussion of intentional causality and development, it requires some additions and some modifications. The concept of ‘design’ provided a useful framework against which intentionality could be understood to have run out. Further, design stance explanations might seem to resemble genetic explanations. By analogy with the chess-playing computer it might be that in human psychological development the design would refer to genetically determined, ‘hard-wired’ constitutional factors. The match between these and the demands of the environment would then provide us with part of the description of function, and design faults with part of the explanation of disorder. However neither the application of the concept of design, nor the operation of genetic influences are so straightforward.

7.7.2 Dennett, development and design
In order to examine this we need to start by explicating the meaning of the term ‘design’. We will follow Dennett in considering a non-biological example, but one that is adapted to a rather more extensive range of conditions than the chess-playing computer, the aeroplane. The term ‘design’ refers to a number of features of construction and operation. Firstly it refers to the objective of the construction of the object, namely that it should be able to fly. Just as in the biological examples this leads immediately to criteria for normal or correct design and construction and to criteria for mistakes. Secondly it refers to the means by which this will be achieved, and therefore to the functioning served by components and their intentionality. Thirdly it provides a specification in relation to the environment. Here this might include temperature, wind speeds, height of flying, and length of runways. The physical construction can be judged only in relation to these environmental demands. Fourth, the design refers to what goes in at the outset, in the construction, and remains constant. It therefore provides a reference point against which any particular event can be judged. Fifth, it has a high degree of generality in that it covers most or all
of what the aeroplane is up to. We can see that in many respects this analysis conforms with that implied by Dennett’s chess-playing computer. Nevertheless the complexity of the computer may obscure the extent to which its functioning is defined very narrowly. Its relationship to the environment is defined by a keyboard input and by an agent that understands the rules of chess. This is in marked contrast to the range of environments that might be encountered by the aeroplane, or indeed by a biological organism. Dennett’s example does not contradict this, but it may obscure it, and it is crucial at this stage to bring out the relationship of ‘design’ to complex environments.

How might the concept of ‘design’ stand up in relation to human psychological functioning. We can examine this using the ‘method’ used so far in the book. We first require that it works in non-psychological biological examples on the grounds that it must work here if it is to succeed with psychological functioning, and then in relation to the observation that psychological functioning is subject to development during which there is a complex interplay between person and environment. This will lead to a consideration of design in relation to multiple sets of rules, and the generation of these within human functioning.

Taking examples from previous chapters, the term ‘design’ could be applied to the cardiovascular system, the genetics of protein synthesis, or the visual system. In each of these it would refer to the purpose of the system, and to the means by which it is achieved. The means would include the specification of the rules, and the convention and agreement within the signalling and control systems. As we have seen earlier the environments of the cardiovascular system and the DNA are the milieu intérieur which have further links with the external world, and that of the visual system is the external world. The example of haemoglobin and sickle cell disease provided an illustration of the intimate relationship between structure, function, and environment in the definition of ‘correct’ or ‘incorrect’, and these could all be taken to be aspects of ‘design’. As in the example of the aeroplane the ‘design’ of these biological examples will often refer to what is there from the start, and what remains constant, although in more complex perceptual systems this may not be the case. Finally the design can be taken to refer to the functioning of the system in general. It would seem then that the concept of ‘design’ will apply to many biological systems, and it is entirely compatible with our analysis of intentional causality.

The position is rather different when we come to development and multiple sets of rules. How are we to interpret the notion of what is ‘hard-wired’, stable and general? Take first the issue of wiring. In human development, in contrast to that of other organisms, the neuronal connections of the brain develop substantially after birth (Changeux 1985). Evidence from animal experiments,
where post-natal neuronal development is more limited, indicates that neuronal connections are influenced by experience. Hubel and Wiesel (1962) showed that cats or monkeys that have been reared with one eye sutured closed have no vision in that eye and there is shrinkage of the area of the lateral geniculate body devoted to that eye, with a corresponding diminution in the number of branches sent by the deprived cells to the cortex. At the cortex there is a shift in the number of connections from the deprived to the non-deprived eye. This effect is seen only following monocular deprivation in the first three months of life, and after that age, even extended periods of deprivation seem to have little effect. Furthermore the effect of environment on neurodevelopment can be quite specific. Blakemore and Cooper (1970) showed that kittens raised in environments in which there were only horizontal stripes are blind to other orientations, and this is reflected in the preferential responses of neurones in the visual cortex. Human infants show a loss of visual capacity in an eye that has been subject to ‘monocular deprivation’ for instance where there is a squint. It is probable this is accompanied by similar brain changes to those demonstrated in cats and monkeys. It seems therefore likely that given the greater level of post-natal development of neuronal connections in humans during the first years of life, there may be a similar process whereby connections that are required for a wide range of psychological functioning are influenced by environmental experiences. Wiesel (1982) wrote

‘Deprivation experiments demonstrate that neuronal connections can be modulated by environmental influences during a critical period of postnatal development. We have studied this process in detail in one set of functioning properties of the nervous system, but it may well be that other aspects of brain function, such as language, complex perceptual tasks, learning, memory, and personality, have different programmes of development. Such sensitivity of the nervous system to the effects of experience may represent the fundamental mechanism by which the organism adapts to its environment during the period of growth and development.’

This speculation has been amply supported by subsequent research. Studies of the effects of early post-natal separations on the regulation of cortisol in rodents have shown that persistent alterations in neuroendocrine can be caused by discrete periods of maternal separation (Sanchez et al. 2001). Furthermore these alterations are accompanied by behavioural changes. Huot et al. (2001) found that early post-natal separation was associated in rats with later preference for alcohol (ethanol) mediated via altered corticosteroid responses to stress. The mechanisms are complex and are likely to involve gene expression, and altered density of neurones in structures such as the hippocampus. It seems then that the wiring might be influenced by organism–environment interaction through a process that is similar to learning. If we are to
retain the concept of design, we will at least need to talk of a succession of
designs each related to but different from the previous one, and we will need
to understand the relationship between them, and the environment.

The question of stability brings us back to the generation sets of rules and
expectancies, and their role in providing the basis for action, and further test-
ing of the rules in development. Theories of the development of intimate
(attachment) relationships and of cognitive development have emphasized the
interplay between internal mental models or schemata, and experience,
whereby sometimes new evidence may be incorporated into existing schemata,
and at others may contribute to the development of new ones. The implica-
tion is that the internalized general models will be more or less stable depend-
ing on (a) the extent to which they are tested, (b) the extent to which experience
supports or undermines them, (c) the extent of the person’s need to hold on to
them for instance in order to maintain the basis for actions, and (d) their gen-
eral utility. We will refer to points (a), (b), and (c) extensively in the next chap-
ter as they provide an important basis for further considerations of disorder.
However we should note here, and will return to the point, that (d) has a
resemblance to that made by Polanyi (1958) and Popper (1969) in relation to
beliefs in the sciences. Theories or ‘laws’ will be held strongly and persist, even
in the light of contradictory evidence, if their wider utility is great and there is
nothing to replace them; indeed one might argue provided they are effective in
directing further action (see also Chapter 1.3.1 and 1.3.3). So that we can say
at this point that the candidates for the persistence of sets of rules or schema,
especially those with great generality, may relate to considerations other than
those of whether they are wired in.

The developmental story leads to further inroads into the straightforward
concept of ‘design’. Development clearly entails the generation of succeeding
sets of rules, schemata, cognitive-affective models, and ways of interpreting
and feeling. Developmentalists of diverse origins, including Freud, Klein,
Erikson, Piaget, Kagan, Bowlby, and Stern, have all postulated such succes-
sions. Each has striven to articulate the differences in general frameworks
within which children operate at different phases of development, and to pro-
vide an account of what links these. Whilst not opposing this proposal, Rutter
and Rutter (1992) have argued that in development the identification of what
constitutes a continuity or discontinuity is not straightforward. Thus the
emergence of a butterfly from a chrysalis preceded by a caterpillar is clearly in
many respects a discontinuity, but in that the information for the butterfly is
already present in the caterpillar this is a continuity. Indeed it must be
assumed that the design information for the butterfly is present in the caterpil-
lar. Similarly the child may take one set of expectancies from an environment.
in which they were appropriate to one in which they are not. What might be generated then is a different set of expectancies and behaviours, that can be understood best as the outcome of the interactions between the previous ways of seeing things and the current environment. Where then does this leave the concept of design? Either that it will have to be reserved for those aspects of psychological functioning that are not subject to such changes, or it will be necessary to talk of successive designs. Our analysis must however go further in relation to multiple sets of rules. The chess-playing computer is just that until a further design feature is built it. But what of the chess-playing human being? Strikingly he or she can perform that function for a relatively brief period, and simultaneously perform other functions, such as that of being a parent. Indeed, a feature of the behaviour of young children in play is the way they experiment with different ‘designs’. Clearly it would be possible to subsume this under the overall description of a ‘playful child’ that might then be referred to in terms of the design. However, clinical experience suggests that if such a child were to experience a major trauma his/her play might decrease quite dramatically. Would we then refer to a ‘new design’ or revise the design to be ‘playful child, sensitive to trauma’. The point is that in development and in maturity human psychological functioning operates under a range of sets of rules, schemas or assumptions, all of which have some of the features attributed to design in machines or non-psychological biological systems. However they vary in the extent of their generality and stability.

In summary it seems that the concept of ‘design’ can provide a useful shorthand, and we will use it, together with the caveats reviewed here, in relation to examples of disturbance. However the analysis presented earlier provides a different emphasis. It suggests that although rule-bound responses probably evolved in ways that have clear survival value, inherent in the use of rules there is a creative potential whereby goals and activities can have their own intrinsic value. In other words if it is possible to see the same thing in many different ways, then those different ways of seeing may become the focus of interest, for instance in play. This is not to propose a mechanism but to point out that the freeing of sets of rules, assumptions, or ways of seeing, and of the accompanying emotional states and behaviours from being hard-wired, has potential for the elaboration of goals that might not be essential to survival. Once psychological states are conceptualized in terms if rule-bound processes there is no prediction as to whether or not they are wired in, or to the extent to which they are the outcome of an interaction with the environment. Similarly there is no prediction as to their stability or generality. They may be hard-wired and stable in the case of physiological and some psychological processes, or patterned in ways that are open to change. They may have great generality, or they
may be quite specific. Thus it may be more valuable to talk of sets of rules govern-
ing internal models of relationships, beliefs, or patterns of emotional response, that have greater or lesser degrees of generality, are related to a greater or lesser extent to previous experiences, and are more or less stable.

7.7.3 Genetic influences

Genetic influences enter into our account in a fascinating and somewhat paradoxical way. This arises from the frequent contrast that is made between genetic and environmental influences, as if each were a separate commodity that taken together could explain outcome. As we shall see, this may fit some particular cases but does not work well in the general analysis.

Our argument will again start with non-psychological examples. The genetic code contains information about structure and function both of which have a close fit with the environment of the organism. Indeed the analysis of the principles of intentional causality when applied to the perceptual apparatus, specified that the system must anticipate and detect key aspects of the environment. The performance then is that of the ‘organism in the environment’. This means that what has to be understood is the process whereby structure and function relate to the environment, and in that sense the questions are not primarily or necessarily genetic.

We return to the example of sickle cell trait and sickle cell disease. Under some atmospheric conditions it will be apparent that the inheritance follows a straightforward recessive pattern, and it might be understood purely as a genetic condition. However in a country in which people lived at different altitudes it might emerge that the prevalence of the symptoms was substantially different in one area compared to another, thus indicating an important environmental effect. In one environment the contribution of the environment would be practically zero, but when comparing the two environments it would be substantial. Furthermore the environments could differ substantially in all respects other than that of the pressure of oxygen in the air and make no difference, and similarly the two altitudes might be indistinguishable in all respects except for atmospheric oxygen and still make a major difference. Thus the feature of the environment that matters is that which is specified in the structure and function of the system, which in this example is directly and simply related to genetic structure. The contribution of the genetic influence could be elucidated only in relation to that structure and function.

Just as we saw in Chapter 5 that the physical contribution of the haemoglobin molecule does not provide a definition of ‘fault’, so the definition of genetic fault is not given by the physical fact. This is seen particularly clearly in the example where in one area of the world the sickle cell trait confers resistance
to malaria and so is advantageous. Thus the same physical fact may be either a
deficit or an advantage depending on the relationship between the structure,
function, and environment. Differences can be destructive or creative! That
physical differences may have such contrasting consequences depending on the
relationship between the structure, function, and environment may introduce
some unwished for complexity, however if they did not we would be without a
theory of the way in which mutations can have survival value.

The extent to which genetic influences have consequences that are environ-
mentally sensitive varies. Some, it seems, are destructive of structure and func-
tion irrespective of environments; for instance those that give rise to cystic
fibrosis or Huntington’s disease. Others such as sickle cell disease cause symp-
toms and damage only under certain environmental conditions. When we
come to human psychological functioning there are extensive possibilities for
organism–environment interactions.

As we have seen the term ‘design’ describes well what is encoded genetically
for the haemoglobin molecule, and ‘design fault’ refers to a difference that is
stable and that interacts in a relatively straightforward manner with the envi-
ronment. Where studies show greater concordance for a condition among
those who are genetically more related than those who are genetically less similar,
this may be interpreted as reflecting a design fault.

The interpretation of such studies in relation to human psychological func-
tioning is not however so straightforward. To some extent this follows from
our previous examination of the concept of ‘design’ in the developing person.
In particular we saw that the brain develops substantially after birth and that
the interaction with the environment is probably very important. Most of the
evidence comes from experiments with the visual system of cats and monkeys,
in which the development of the brain is related in very specific ways to
environmental stimuli. It is possible that similar considerations apply to
social developments in some animals. Perhaps the strongest evidence for an
effect of experience on ‘wiring’ comes from studies of imprinting and critical
periods in birds and animals. Birds, such as geese will become imprinted on to
a moving object if they are exposed to it at a particular time early in develop-
ment (Lorenz 1965). These objects are, in the environment of evolutionary
adaptiveness, adult birds, but have included Konrad Lorenz and other humans,
and other animals. The young birds then follow the animal or object on
which they have been imprinted. Imprinting takes place only over a defined
(critical) period, and if exposure does not occur at this time, imprinting
does not take place. It seems likely that the critical period is determined by a
neurodevelopmental process, and that the identity of the object of the
imprinting is then similarly wired in. In lower animals the stimulus acts only
as a releaser of the imprinting and its qualities are relatively unimportant, however in higher animals such as monkeys the quality of the experience matters. Newborn monkeys exposed to punitive artificial 'maternal' figures show increased clinging behaviour (Harlow 1961). Monkeys reared in social isolation for the first 6 years of their life have been shown to display substantial and persistent abnormalities of social and sexual behaviour in adult life (Harlow and Harlow 1969). An effect of early social experience on brain development would be difficult to demonstrate in monkeys and probably impossible in humans. However it is possible that early social experiences may affect brain development. As we have seen, at about nine months the infant forms selective attachments and this is a phenomenon seen throughout a wide range of cultures. Assessment of the quality of attachments during this period have substantial predictive capability up to 10 years later (Sroufe et al. 1990) which suggests that a relatively enduring 'design' feature is established early in life. In a study of children who were in institutions for the first four years of their lives, and then adopted, Hodges and Tizard (1989) showed that, in adolescence these early institutionalized individuals still had interpersonal difficulties. This was in spite of the very advantageous circumstances of their adoptive homes. This does not demonstrate an effect of early experiences on the 'wiring' of the brain but is consistent with it.

Whatever the role of external environmental experiences in brain development, it is clear that the genetic code cannot specify the wiring of the brain. It is striking that only one percent of the human genome differs from that of the ape, which suggests that the enormous differences in intellectual, aesthetic, and interpersonal capabilities are encoded in a general strategy for brain development that unfolds in relation to experience (Ciaranello et al. 1995). There is substantial evidence that this proceeds via the creation of an internal environment in which a complex signalling process guides the formation of neuronal connections (Jones and Murray 1991, Hill 2001). It is possible that, as Wiesel proposed, this internal environment takes its cues from the external; after all the function of the brain is to mediate between beliefs, emotions, and actions and that world (Hundert 1988).

Now we turn to the interpretation of studies of genetic influences on development and disorder. Recently there has been a remarkable change in the way genetic influences are understood. An important and influential generation of studies, relying mainly on twin and adoption designs sought to identify the relative contributions of genetic and environmental influences to a wide range of behaviours and competences, and to psychopathology. These were based on the, more or less explicit, assumption that genetic influences accounted for the hard wiring of the nervous system and that they were
relatively constant over the lifespan. As we have seen already in our considera-
tion of central nervous system ‘designs’, early experiences can have long-term
effects on neuroendocrine functioning, with the implication that there
must be an interplay between genetic and environmental influences on brain
structures.

Increasingly it is becoming apparent that genetic influences are as changing
and as dynamic as environmental influences (Reiss and Neiderhiser 2000).
Genes do not exert a constant effect over the lifetime of an individual, rather
their effect varies depending on whether they are ‘expressed’. Gene expression
refers to the rate at which the DNA is transcribed into RNA and subsequent
protein synthesis. In other words, although a person’s genes do not change,
genetic effects can vary substantially over the lifespan. Furthermore, gene acti-
vation is regulated by both genetic and environmental influences. In animal
studies early experiences, both positive and negative, have been shown to alter
gene expression, with implications for the structure and function of the brain,
further undermining any possible static view of design in relation to the cen-
tral nervous system.

In the light of these findings, the analysis of intentionality in relation to
genetic influences in many respects resembles that of the previous section in
respect of early experiences, corticosteroid regulation, and depression.
Variations in genetic effects can arise from non-intentional causal agents such
as ionising radiation, and from intentional causal processes, for example link-
ing early experiences to gene expression.

The consideration of intentionality applied to biological systems in this and
previous chapters draws our attention to further issues. In the account of the
intentionality of behaviour there cannot be a specification of the environment
independently of the selective perceptions, needs and functioning of the
organism. By environment, we therefore mean not the general characteristics
of families and other important social influences, but only those that matter to
the condition. For instance, adoption studies of schizophrenia suggest that
there is a genetic effect but only where the adoptive parents show particular
characteristics (Tienari 1990). Given the care with which adoptive families are
generally chosen it is unlikely that this represents global dysfunction, but
rather specific features of relevance to the condition. Where such a specific
feature is influential, it may contribute to the creation of vulnerability early in
development, that is to say to a relatively persistent design difference, or where
vulnerability already exists, it may affect whether the condition is manifest.
The extent of specificity in the fit between organism and environmental fea-
tures means that genetic studies need to specify environments quite precisely
(Rutter 2000).
As we saw earlier in our discussion of the concept of design, a physical difference may have design implications, depending on function, and a design difference may under some conditions lead to a functional deficit and in others confer advantage. The difference between genetic fault useful mutation is not given by the physical fact but by the organism-environment fit. Thus the investigation of genetic vulnerability will not be straightforward. Let us suppose that the quality of 'sensitivity to others' is a genetically determined trait. This trait would include an awareness of the state of mind of others, and a concern about it, combined with a difficulty in ignoring other people. This is likely to be an asset in a family where there is mutual concern and respect, but a disadvantage where there is discord and violence. The trait might emerge as a valuable quality in a study of the normal range of family functioning, and an inherited ‘vulnerability’ in a study that included adverse family environments. Recent work by Dunn and colleagues supports this line of thinking. Generally, children’s capacity for social understanding underpins their social competence and confers resilience in the face of adversities. However, Cutting and Dunn (2002) found that children aged five years who showed good social understanding were more likely than their less ‘competent’ peers to be sensitive to teacher criticism.

The concept of range of function is also of relevance to our discussion. As we have seen, in some cases quite specific aspects of the environment may influence outcome. However, the environmental demands may be so great that avoidance of disorder requires an exceptional capacity to cope. This is likely to be the case where there is parental violence or physical or sexual abuse. Then genetic studies may find no apparent effect because genetic differences are overwhelmed by a level of adversity outside the range of normal psychological experience. The effects of such traumas will provide an important focus for the next chapter. Conversely there may be beneficial genetic effects that are evident only in the presence of severe adversity, that is to say, they confer resilience. The genetics of resilience may be different from the genetics of vulnerability.

7.8 ‘Biological’ psychiatry and psychology

In psychiatric research the field of biological psychiatry has expanded rapidly, and although the causal assumptions are rarely spelt out, ‘biological’ here is generally taken to refer to the disruptive effect of biochemical or neuroendocrine abnormalities on psychological functioning. Thus Scadding (1990) writes ‘I will take it that ‘biology’ is being used here to mean the study of living organisms directed towards explanation in physico-chemical terms...’ He goes on, ‘some disorders of behaviour can already be explained in this way, and it is
to be expected that with advances in knowledge, more and more of psychology and behavioural science will become biological’. These quotations come from an editorial in a leading psychiatric journal. The same journal contains an editorial by Guze (1989) entitled, ‘Biological Psychiatry: Is there any other kind?’ He emphasizes that human evolution has been substantially the evolution of the brain and its capacity for thought, language, and culture. He acknowledges the complex interaction between individuals and the environment. Guze argues that in relation to psychiatry

\[\text{[if]}\] ‘it could be asserted that few if any of the states or conditions that constitute the forms of psychiatry are the result of differences in the development or physiology of the brain, biology would be of only marginal interest. If it could be argued that all or most of our patients develop their disorders primarily, if not exclusively through normal learning processes, that are independent of human variability, the emphasis on biology might justifiably be seen as excessive and unjustifiable’.

He goes on to suggest that, ‘if environmental factors play a part in psychiatric conditions, these putative causes of psychiatric disorder seem to reflect only the normal range of human trouble that most people experience without becoming ill’. Later in the paper he writes, ‘the conclusion appears inescapable to me that what is called psychopathology is the manifestation of disordered processes in various brain systems that mediate psychological functioning. Psychopathology thus involves biology’.

Reference to these papers has been included in some detail in order to indicate the particular ways in which the term ‘biological’ is being used. How does it stand up in relation to the analysis presented here? Let us first take Scadding’s assertion, implied also by Guze, that ‘biology’ can be taken to refer to the study of living organisms ‘directed towards explanation in physico-chemical terms’. We have seen throughout that biology consists of the elucidation of the processes whereby environments are represented, functioning is regulated, and responses are elaborated. These processes have intentional properties, and a level of abstraction none of which is available in physico-chemical descriptions. The examples of DNA and protein synthesis were emphasized in order to highlight how the description in terms of molecules may distract us from paying proper attention to the information processing and representational processes.

Guze makes a central point of the explanation of disorder arising from differences in brain function. It should be pointed out that his assertion about the effects of environmental influences is incorrect. As we have seen earlier in the chapter, a considerable body of research has demonstrated the effects of childhood experiences on adult psychiatric functioning (Rutter et al. 1990; Hill et al. 2001; Kendler et al. 2002). However, no developmentalist would argue that individual differences do not matter. The central issue is: what is the
brain up to? The answer is it is crucially concerned with the elaboration of sets of rules, in the form of beliefs, wishes, fears and of internal models of relationships. These may be more or less wired in. The extent to which this is the case has nothing to do with ‘more or less biological’. In as much as the brain elaborates these intentional processes, and they influence behaviour, brain function has to be considered in relation to these processes. Just as the molecular mechanism that is employed to translate blood pressure into efferent impulses has to be described in terms of its successful transmission of the information, so the brain processes invoked in visual perception have to refer to the information transmitted to the visual cortex. According to the analysis presented earlier in Chapter 5, the biological view should not anticipate the relative importance of innate versus environmental processes, nor can it predict the source of variation among individuals. A third point concerns the distinction between function and dysfunction. Scadding appears to have assumed that because ‘some disorders of behaviour’ can already be explained in terms of physical agents, that ‘with advances in knowledge more and more psychological and behavioural science will become biological’. We see here a failure to distinguish function from dysfunction leading to an unjustified generalization from cases that involve breakdown to those that do not.

There is to be found in such analyses of ‘biological psychiatry and psychology’ an implicit reductionism or implicit dualism. Thus Scadding takes biology to refer to a study which will eventually yield physico-chemical descriptions, and Guze looks forward to a time when psychology and psychiatry will be replaced by neuroscience. However Guze, hinting perhaps that the enterprise might not work, argues that if learning turned out to be central to the origins of dysfunction, then psychiatry would have less need for neuroscience and more need for cultural anthropology, sociology, and social psychology. Presumably these are seen as ‘non-biological’ and therefore refer to aspects of brain function that are ‘non-biological’. Ingold (1990) a social anthropologist has argued that the effect of sociobiology has been to account for some phenomena as biological by reference ‘down’ to neurological structures, whilst explaining others with reference to culture, by implication of a phenomenon that is non-biological. Once it is clear that intentional processes pervade biological systems, then biological psychiatry will expect to refer to disciplines such as anthropology and social psychology without abandoning the biological stance.

7.9 Summary

We have now taken our account of intentional causal processes into the explanation of adult human behaviour. As was the case with non-psychological and
non-human examples, the description of normal or functional response is inseparable from that of abnormal or dysfunctional, and the key is the integrity of the intentional causal process. In human psychological functioning this is more complex but the principles are the same.

The definition of psychiatric disorder is essentially descriptive and probably refers to a heterogeneous set of phenomena, but the apparent disruption of intentionality is central to its identity. The explanation may entail further, previously unidentified, intentional contributions, or disruption arising from a non-intentional causal agent. In many respects psychiatric practice has borrowed from general medicine the assumption that in disorder intentionality has been interrupted, or run out, and in some instances this will be the case. In general even where there is a non-intentional cause of breakdown, both in psychological and non-psychological systems there are compensatory, intentional causal responses.

The interplay between intentional and non-intentional causal processes, and between developing individuals and specific environmental factors, are important in a consideration of genetic influences. The concept of genetically influenced ‘design fault’ is useful once it has been modified to take account of the developmental issues that we reviewed in Chapter 6. In the light of our analysis of causal processes, ‘biological psychiatry’ is seen to have made use of a restricted sense of the term ‘biological’. Further, where it has assumed that biological processes are reducible to physics and chemistry, it has departed from an intentional causal analysis that is needed both in biology and psychology.

References


Schneider (1959) *Clinical psychopathology* (transl, by M.W. Hamilton), New York: Grune and Stratton.


8.1 Two approaches: logic and biology

In psychological disorder we find apparent disruption at one or more stages in the intentional causal pathways linking stimulus, perception, thought, emotion, and behaviour. Another aspect of this point is that psychological disorder essentially involves disorder of (intentional) action (cf. Fulford 1989). Physical disruption will be a major candidate for the explanation along the lines discussed in Chapter 7. In this chapter we examine further the possibility that interruption of intentionality could have intentional-causal origins. In doing this we find ourselves considering questions and solutions formulated at the beginnings of the psychological theory of disorder. Freud can be regarded as starting from the same central question: could psychological phenomena that display the same qualities as those seen in unequivocal cases of physically caused conditions, of persistent, intrusive disruption of normal function, have their origins in psychological processes? This is to say, in the terms used here: could they have their origins in intentional causal processes? In his analysis of hysterical conversion syndromes Freud postulated disruption of normal function by states of mind deriving from early intolerable, traumatic experiences and impulses. Similar principles were being invoked at around the same time in an otherwise very different psychological theory of disorder, namely Watson’s account of phobias. In this account, the disorder was due to the inappropriate generalization of learnt fear, this learning having occurred in a one-trial traumatic experience. Thus at the beginnings of clinical psychological theory at the turn of the century, in the two early models which, it would be fair to say, gave rise to all rest, what we find is the fundamental idea that memories of traumas intrude into and hence disrupt normal function. The notion of trauma is fundamental to the explanation of breakdown of intentionality in terms of intentional processes, though broader concepts are also required.

We shall take two approaches to the problem. One draws on general logical and epistemological considerations of the sort discussed in the first chapter. In that chapter we in effect gave an outline definition of a family of concepts including representation, thought, and intentionality. The linkage to action,
and the organization into theory, were critical to the definition. In this chapter we show how from these very general considerations it is possible to derive conditions of psychological disorder with particular characteristics. This is done in Section 8.2.

The second approach takes further the account given in the previous chapter of disruption of function, which placed emphasis on the disruption of intentionality. Just as intentional causality was seen to operate throughout biological systems, both psychological and non-psychological, so disruption of intentionality was seen to be the hallmark of disorder throughout biological systems. The consideration of possible intentional origins of such disruption will draw on our consideration of intentional causality in biological systems given in Chapter 5 and of our proposition in Chapter 6 that the psychological development of the child may be seen to represent the exploitation of a potential inherent in the simplest biological processes. In particular the development of multiple internalized rules and representations with their immense potential for flexibility and creativity, will be seen also to entail substantial risks.

8.2 The logic and epistemology of disorder

8.2.1 Radical error, avoidance and re-enactment

We have defined representations as being involved essentially in the regulation of action, and we have remarked that they are typically hierarchically organized, in the way highlighted by post-empiricist theory of knowledge. From these assumptions it is possible to derive general features of psychological disorder and general principles for its explanation. We will be working towards defining a form of explanation of disorder in intentionality that is couched at the level of the intentional processes themselves. Such a form of explanation therefore has to derive from the definition of intentionality, in this sense from logic. It turns out that it has basically the following form: radical failures of intentionality arise in case intentional processes subvert their own nature, that is to say, their role in the planning of action. Post-empiricist epistemology provides the framework for elaborating this basic idea. The investigation will take us close to familiar psychological models of disorder, from conditioning models to those in the more cognitively elaborate psychoanalytic tradition.

We begin with a priori remarks on psychological disorder. Insofar as intentionality is the defining characteristic of mind, all mental disorder involves breakdown of intentionality. Intentionality is of course here a broad concept, concerning the representational (cognitive) capacities of mind. We may provisionally distinguish two ways in which representation may fail: it may fail to represent reality correctly, or it may fail to regulate action appropriately.
This distinction is blurred, however, insofar as misrepresentation leads to inappropriate action.

We make mistakes all of the time, however, and so far this has nothing to do with what we mean by ‘mental disorder’. To begin to capture this notion, we need some idea of radical misrepresentation. We may expect that the understanding of ‘radical’ here should follow from the nature of representation itself. Insofar as representation regulates action, and action is extended though time, it belongs to the nature of representation that error is subject to discovery and correction through time, in the course of action. This general idea underlies the definition of at least one kind of radical misrepresentation, namely, as being misrepresentation that fails to be corrected through time. In the phenomena of persistent error we begin to recognize something of what is meant by ‘mental disorder’.

Regulation of action may fail, however, even if representation of the environment is correct. The circumstances are simply those in which two or more representations are correct, but give rise to incompatible plans for action. In brief, the circumstances involve one or another kind of rule-conflict. As outlined in Chapter 6, human psychological functioning is characterized by a multiplicity of sets of rules, with the implication that there is ample scope for rule-conflict. While misrepresentation can in principle be due to lower-level disrupting causes, rule-conflict is generally unamenable to this type of explanation. This is to say, it arises generally in the context of normal psychological functioning. The representations and their regulation of action are individually in order, but in combination they are in disorder. Once again, as in the case of misrepresentation, it should be noted that rule-conflict is common, and has nothing to do yet with what is meant by ‘mental disorder’. Again as in the case of misrepresentation, we begin to capture this notion when we envisage persistence despite continuing failure of action. In other words, in persistent, unresolved rule-conflict, leading to persistent disarray in action, we begin to recognize signs of ‘mental disorder’.

What stands in need of explanation, then, is persistent misrepresentation, and persistent, unresolved rule-conflict. Various forms of explanation are possible a priori, of which our main interest in this chapter are those which run in terms of the intentional processes themselves, those which may be called ‘psychological’. As already remarked, in rule-conflict representations are in order, but only opposed, and there is typically no lower-level, reductive explanation. Persistent misrepresentation, on the other hand, may have an explanation in terms of physical disruption of information-processing systems, as when for example visual images are produced by electrical stimulation of the visual cortex. On the other hand, persistent misrepresentation may essentially involve
intentional processes, specifically the fulfilment of a wish, or the enactment of fear, as in the case of Don Quixote, who perceived windmills as knights after a day of vain searching, or Macbeth, who falsely perceived the image and ghost of his murderous action. Something like hallucination may occur for either kind of cause. In the framework of Dennett’s three explanatory stances (Section 1.2.2), persistent hallucination admits of explanation from the Physical and the Intentional Stances. Persistent error in representing the environment may be explained also from Dennett’s Design Stance, in the sense that it is innately determined. Consider for example the case of the frog’s fly-snapping behaviour discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.4. The frog may mistake an ambient non-fly black dot for a fly, this being a mistake at least from our point of view, and the mistaken representation is due to innate features of cognitive design, in particular to the absence of a mechanism for discriminating between flies and other fly-like objects.

Error in representing the environment is also an intrinsic risk during learning. The principle is relatively simple: representations acquired in and appropriate to one environment are wrongly applied to another, different environment, and the error naturally shows up in failure of action. For example, a rat learns its way through a complicated maze to the goal-box, and is then put in a more or less subtly different maze, where cues lead to unexpected results, e.g. dead-ends. Consequently action is thwarted, desires remain unsatisfied. Breakdown of function shows up in, e.g. frustration-behaviour, randomness, repetitiveness, or inertia.

However, the fact is that we are continuously exposed to new situations, more or less different from what we have experienced before, and we are not constantly falling into confusion. Normally we change the old rules, or learn new ones. What has to be explained in clinical psychology, as we have already noted, is precisely the persistence of maladaptive rules and representations, their failure to respond to new information.

Broadly speaking, the explanations of this failure invoke the fact that new information is avoided. Avoidance includes the straightforwardly behavioural variety, but may also include complex forms of mental denial and disqualification. But further, whatever type of avoidance is used, there is typically a kind of experience, after all, of what is being avoided, and this experience confirms the old rules and representations, even if they are, otherwise, quite invalid. This may be called re-enactment (or re-experiencing).

These points, in one form or another, are familiar in clinical psychological theory, and the main aim of this section is to explicate them from the more general, philosophical perspectives presented in the first part of this essay. Before embarking on this task, a sketch of some examples of what is to be explained, and the kinds of explanation in question, may be helpful.
Consider for example phobias, irrational fears and avoidance, regulated by the (persistent) representation of an object as extremely dangerous, when in fact it is not. A psychological explanation of the phobia, e.g. of enclosed spaces, would run as follows: in the past the person has been exposed to real danger in a situation from which escape was or was thought to be impossible, and this representation of enclosed space as dangerous has generalized to all other (similar) enclosed spaces. The question arises as to why the representation is not modified by subsequent exposure to safe enclosed spaces. This example is of the kind emphasized by conditioning or behavioural theories. Consider another example of the kind emphasized in psychoanalytic theory, with its characteristic concern with interpersonal relations: a person experiences persistent breakdown in intimate friendships. Examination reveals a pattern, one theme is that the person begins to act as if she were about to be rejected, in circumstances in which there is apparently no objective evidence for this expectation. An obvious psychological explanation of this theme, one which draws again on simple principles of learning, is that the person has experienced rejection in past intimate relationships, and the representation of them as involving rejection has generalized to all other (similar) intimate relationships. But again, the problem for theory is this: why has the representation not been modified by subsequent exposure to friendships that work?

Answers to the problem of persistence run in terms of avoidance. Phobias are characterized by behavioural avoidance, so one reason why a learnt fear of enclosed spaces would not be modified by subsequent contrary experience is simply that the person avoids enclosed spaces and therefore never experiences them as safe. By the same principle, someone who has experienced devastating rejection in past important relationships may subsequently avoid similar relationships, and hence the representation of them as involving rejection is never put to the test. On the other hand, in the second case as described we are supposing that the person continues to try, and still the earlier acquired representation persists. So explanation of persistence in terms of avoidance does not apply here. Implicit in the sketch of the case is that the person responds in accord with the earlier acquired representation. She selectively attends to (the slightest) signs of rejection, or interprets behaviour of her partner as signifying rejection, even though (we are supposing) no rejection is intended. The perception of rejection leads by psychologic to emotions of hurt and anger, hence to such as irritation and withdrawal, which in turn, we may surmise, prompts similar responses in her partner. In short, the relationship progresses into difficulties, and the outcome is one that readily lends itself to the interpretation by the person that she is being rejected. In this way the representation that is brought to the relationship from the beginning generates a pattern
and sequence of responses the outcome of which is confirmation of the representation. This kind of pathway to persistent misrepresentation is distinct from avoidance. The same principle can operate in phobia, in case the person does not avoid the feared situation completely. Here the representation of the situation as dangerous gives rise to anticipatory anxiety, which may intensify when in the situation to the extreme of panic. In this way the situation comes to be experienced after all as threatening and dangerous, even when objectively it is not. The expectation is fulfilled: the representation is confirmed.

The examples of persistent misrepresentation outlined above involve expectations that, in some way or other, action will not achieve desired goals. In the first case there is fear of physical danger, in the second fear of rejection by significant others. The proposed explanation of persistent misrepresentation turns on this feature. If the results of action are represented as threatening or useless then there will tend to be either avoidance, or generation of confirming experiences in situations which might otherwise be disconfirming.

We can on the other hand envisage something like inappropriate and uncorrected representations that involve expectations of success. For example, the child is likely to persist for a considerable time in the expectation that her parents or other adults in charge will take care of her, notwithstanding ample evidence to the contrary. But here we have a plausible case of an expectation, a hope, which is innately determined, and which therefore stands relatively firm no matter what experience is like. As remarked earlier, persistent error in representation arises in case of inadequate match between the design of the living being, between the reality for which it is designed, and the world into which it is born.

All the examples cited above involve conflict among representations. In phobic anxiety, the person (usually) also believes that the feared situations are safe, that the fear is irrational. Otherwise indeed there would be no disorder, at least not so far as the person was concerned. Similarly, we tend to persist in the expectation that action, for example in relation to others, can and should satisfy needs, notwithstanding evidence to the contrary. The conflict generally is between the need to act, the expectation that action can and must succeed, and the perception that in one way or another it does not work. The conflict is among the cognitive-affective representations, insofar as they are to be used in the regulation of action. Conflict may arise in various ways: if the same object is perceived as both desirable and undesirable; if two objects, which cannot both be achieved, are both desired; or if two objects, which cannot both be avoided, are both undesired. Normally such conflict can be resolved, but it stays unresolved, persistent, if there is an unpreparedness to tolerate negative consequences of action, these being either some kind of punishment,
or at least failure to achieve one of two desired ends. It may be inferred that from the point of view of the agent action is impossible: it would lead to intolerable danger, or to intolerable loss.

It is here that we return to the proposal made at the beginning of this subsection. Radical failure of intentionality arises in case intentional processes subvert their own nature, that is to say, their role in the planning of action. The point is that representation incompatible with action is in some sense also impossible. This is the origin of the paradox already implied in the juxtaposition of avoidance and re-enactment.

8.2.2 A priori threats to action and thought

The distinction between conditions which are conducive to the agent and those which are not, between ‘pleasure’ and ‘pain’, and the interaction between them, has a long history in attempts to understand and explain behaviour. Severe pain, or threat, appears typically under the name of ‘trauma’ in psychological theories of disorder. We shall make use of something like this notion, emphasizing, in accord with our approaches up to now, intentional and developmental perspectives.

The distinction between conditions favourable to action, and conditions which make action difficult to impossible, is relevant not only to psychology and clinical psychology, but also, given a certain assumption, to philosophy, specifically to the a priori theory of representation. The assumption in question is that representation essentially serves action. In terms of the cognitive-behavioural paradigm defined by this assumption there arises the prospect of profound paradox in case representation is of conditions in which action cannot proceed. The underlying logical problem is that there are conditions of reality that cannot be represented. It is possible to see from within logic the logical form or forms which psychological disorder can assume. The critical point is that thought is for the planning of action, and therefore it must represent the possibility of action: if it cannot do this it undermines itself. Thought goes on, but is impossible. This defines the central, paradoxical idea of psychological disorder. We will approach this idea in two ways: firstly via post-empiricist epistemology, and secondly via the idea of the limits of thought.

According to post-empiricist epistemology, as outlined in the first chapter (Sections 1.3.1 and 1.3.3), beliefs are hierarchically organized, in the form of a theory. The theory interprets experience and is used in the planning of action. It typically has a core of working assumptions, which define essential characteristics of reality and knowledge. These core assumptions are essential to the theory: without them the theory, the interpretation of experience, and the planning of action would fall into disarray. If the theory makes a prediction that turns
out to be false, it can be inferred that there is a mistake somewhere in the system, but not yet where. There is room for manoeuvre in the diagnosis of error. A sound methodological rule is to make as little adjustment as is necessary, though in the case of repeated, or serious failures of prediction, major revision in the theory may be indicated. In any case there has to be resistance to giving up core beliefs, which are fundamental to the whole enterprise. Thus apparent anomalies are deflected away from the core, to be handled in some way or other elsewhere. Occasionally in the sciences there are attempts to construct a so-called critical experiment, which has the aim of putting the core of a theory to the test. Generally, however, this can happen only when there is an alternative theory standing by to pick up the pieces: in the absence of a viable alternative theory which can handle the recalcitrant data, no experiment is likely to be regarded as critical (Lakatos 1970).

In the first chapter (Section 1.3.3) we applied post-empiricist epistemology to the theory of action. Action presupposes at least the following beliefs, or expectations: that the self is competent (enough) to act, that the world is predictable (enough), and that the world provides (enough) satisfaction of needs. Such expectations have to be preserved if activity is to continue. If they were to be abandoned, action would appear to be either impossible or pointless: there would be, so far, no reason to act. —We may ask, then, what would happen if fundamental convictions of these kinds were to be apparently challenged by experience. Suppose they were put to the test by apparently critical experiences, in the absence, moreover, or an alternative theory that could handle them? There would be major cognitive problems, in both representation and knowledge. From the point of view of the theory, particularly the core theory, apparent anomalies have a highly peculiar status. On the one hand, they represent an enormous threat, signifying the downfall of the theory and the end of action itself, and have maximum salience. But on the other hand, they cannot be true, or really true, according to the theory, and so should be only discounted. So the theory of action in relation to these apparently critical anomalies gets into a profound muddle.

The same idea can be approached by considering the idea that there are limits of thought. It is natural enough to presuppose that whatever exists, or at least whatever is known to the subject, can be represented. We find this assumption in the philosophical tradition, but alongside it we find also the recognition that there are limits to representation, deriving from the nature of representation itself. The most rigorous working out of this idea is by Wittgenstein in his *Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus* (1921). We considered the *Tractatus* account of representation already in the first chapter (Section 1.2.1) as a particularly clear expression of an idea which has a long history, namely, that representation is a
matter of resemblance between sign and the reality signified. In the *Tractatus* theory, thoughts and linguistic propositions are alike pictures, or combinations of pictures, of possible states of affairs. The general form of proposition is: This (the picture) is how things stand. This account implies limits to representation, namely: only what can be pictured can be represented in thought or in language.

However, the *Tractatus* account also implies that there are things that cannot be pictured. Pictures cannot represent, for example, that the relation between representation and reality is pictorial, nor that the world is the totality of facts, nor indeed any of the philosophical theory of the *Tractatus*. The paradoxical implication, which the young Wittgenstein was quite prepared to embrace, was that his book expressed what was inexpressible in thought and language, and was therefore itself nonsense. The appearance of paradox here is inevitable, however, because definition of the limits of thought requires that we think both sides of the limit. (The primary material referred to here includes mainly Wittgenstein 1921, 4.11’s, 4.12’s, 4.5’s, 5.1 to 6.1 and 6.1 to 7, the last proposition in the book. Unfamiliar readers would however be advised to consult commentaries, practically all of which address the major and integral theme of the ‘inexpressible’.)

As noted in the first chapter (Section 1.2.1), the *Tractatus* picture-theory has little directly to do with the theory of representation at work in the present essay. We explicate representation not in terms of pictures (or images) but rather primarily with reference to the regulation of action. We adopt in other words the axiom of cognitive psychology, and indeed of biology, that information processing generally is in the service of action. But just as the *Tractatus* theory recognizes that there are limits to what can be represented, limits which derive from the nature of representation itself, so too the present theory of representation implies corresponding limitations, and indeed also the paradoxes to which such limitations inevitably give rise.

The key here is the definition of representation as serving action. Suppose that there are circumstances in which action is, or is perceived to be, impossible. Suppose that these circumstances are represented as such. But then the representation cannot be used to facilitate (to regulate, to plan) action, which is, according to the representation, not possible. But insofar as the representation cannot be used in the service of action, insofar as it is incompatible with action, it is not a possible representation. The paradox here can be expressed by saying that the reality in question has to be both represented and not represented.

These considerations and the preceding ones invoking post-empiricist theory of knowledge are closely connected and in the end come to the same. Definition of the limits of thought, in terms of thought itself, and its paradoxical
consequences are of the general form clarified in the *Tractatus* account. But in order to apply these insights to the theory of representation adopted here, we leave behind the *Tractatus* idea of passive pictures, and consider representation in the form of action. This takes us to post-empiricism. Post-empiricism, like the empiricism that it replaced, is as much a theory of representation as a theory of knowledge. As a theory of representation it emphasizes the active nature of cognition, in a variety of senses. These include that beliefs are flexible in relation to experience, organized in a theory, and also that beliefs are used to plan action. We considered above what happens in case such a theory, such a vehicle of representation, comes up against what it defines as its limits, which involves acknowledging the other side, the possibility of critical experiences which would refute the core of the theory.

We have invoked the notion of experiences which constitute major threat to the conditions of action, and which lead to radical disorder in cognition. The concept in clinical psychology and psychiatry that comes closest to this idea, sketched so far in a purely *a priori* way, is the concept of (psychological) *trauma*. The concept of trauma is a broad one, and is invoked in whole or partial explanation of many kinds of psychological disorder. It is of relevance, however, not only to clinical psychology and psychiatry but also to logic, the *a priori* theory of representation, provided that logic defines representation essentially as serving in the regulation of action. The underlying problem, logical and psychological, is that representation of reality in which action is impossible or pointless subverts itself: it makes itself impossible, or pointless.

The most apparent traumas are experiences that threaten life itself, as in war, fires and other disasters, and serious physical attacks on the person. The most immediate effect is terror; fear of death or damage. It is clear that the traumatic events are experienced and represented; otherwise there would be no (psychological) problem. Indeed, typically they are persistently re-experienced, in one way or another. On the other hand in some sense (or senses) the trauma is not and cannot be represented. For example, there may be amnesia for critical periods in the sequence of events, or the events are remembered, but not the terror; or the events are recalled with a third-person perspective, as though observed from the outside rather than experienced from within them; or the memory images have an unreal, dream-like quality. These points will be discussed further in the next chapter under the heading of Post Traumatic Stress Disorder (Section 9.3.3).

The points made so far in this section apply to manifest traumas such as involvement in disasters. It has to be emphasized, however, that ‘trauma’ in the sense at work in this section, namely, experience which radically subverts the conditions of intentionality, is not confined to such cases of obvious
‘psychological shock’. In a developmental context particularly a broader notion is required. The development of action and cognition requires certain forms of experience, and is inhibited in their absence. Children have to learn how to relate, how to act, how to think, and how to speak. Children are no doubt biologically designed for these tasks, but they require the right kind of help from adults. They need for example a secure space for action (for play), encouragement and help in planning and in achieving goals, and in finding right descriptions of, predictive patterns for, reality. Parent–child interaction which include patterns such as neglect, excessive prohibition on or rejection of the child’s spontaneous attempts to act and speak, excessive (for example age-inappropriate) demands, confused or contradictory communications, may be expected, on a priori grounds alone, to inhibit or distort development of the child’s capacity to act and to think. As in the case of manifest disaster, the result will tend to be experience of a world in which action is perceived as impossible, or pointless, or both. This broader notion of what subverts conditions of intentionality, based in developmental considerations, will be explored in more detail in the next section (Section 8.3).

8.2.3 Higher-order intentionality: further possibilities of disorder

The appearance of higher-order intentional states, particularly the representation of mental states in a theory of mind, typically expressed in language, facilitates the organization of mental states and processes, but it also creates further possibilities of disorder. Failure to recognize mental states between individuals jeopardizes mutual understanding and cooperation. Failure to recognize what mental states are regulating one’s own behaviour leads to various kinds of disarray in one’s own actions. It is no surprise to find that problems of self-knowledge or self-understanding are typically—though not universally—disrupted in cases of what we call psychological or psychiatric disorder. A person experiences a strong emotion, or finds herself engaged in some course of action, but has no idea of the reason why. Typically the person feels ignorant, perplexed, and overwhelmed. Another kind of case is that in which the person has an account, but it is ‘irrational’, in the opinion of others, and perhaps even in his or her own. Of course ignorance, or an irrational account of the beliefs and desires regulating one’s action, is not sufficient for ‘disorder’. There are many aspects of daily action of which we have no account: we simply act, respond in the way we do, without preoccupation as to the reasons. Or again, we may have a whimsical account, bordering on the eccentric. However, insofar as an activity or mood is salient for us, especially if it is disruptive or distressing in frequency and/or intensity, then generally we do seek
a valid understanding of why it is occurring, at least so that it becomes pre-
dictable, and perhaps manageable. Apart from problems of clinical severity, we
are all more or less familiar with difficulties in making sense of problematic
patterns of behaviour and feeling, such as in personal relations, or in attitudes to
work. Disruption in self-knowledge is thus involved in psychological difficulties
of clinical severity, and in ‘problems of living’, to adopt Szasz’ (1961) phrase.

Having an account of the mental states underlying one’s own behaviour has
been discussed previously, in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2), and in Chapter 6
(Section 6.5.3). It has been noted that where second-order representation of
first-order states is correct (more or less correct), there is an integrity of
action, but where the second-order representations are incorrect, then never-
theless the second-order representation generates activity, emotional and
behavioural responses congruent with it, resulting in confusion and conflict.

From the developmental point of view it is plausible to suppose that theory
of mind, in terms of content, is acquired in significant degree in the family,
and in this process partiality and error are occupational hazards. In the clinic
can be seen examples, often of course extreme, of what happens in general:
children being taught inadequate or plainly wrong accounts of (mental) life.
No connection is made for the child between, say, withdrawal and feeling
angry, or depressed, or between the experience of loss and sadness. Or false
theories are proposed, such as: father never gets angry (so his withdrawal can-
not be a sign of anger), we are a happy family (so whatever misgivings you
may have are illegitimate), crying is wrong (so is not an appropriate response
to loss); whatever mother does, she is beyond criticism (or beyond praise);
mother loves you totally (so whatever else you are suffering from, it isn’t lack
of love). Such theories, or lack of theory, are passed on to the child and adher-
ence to them is ensured by positive and negative feedback to the child’s contri-
butions. Often, as is the case with other types of theory, they are the product of
more than one generation (cf. the family therapy literature on ‘family myths’,
e.g. Byng-Hall 1973). In these ways, the child acquires no good theory as to the
relation between experience, cognitive and affective states, and behaviour.

Regardless of whether a psychological theory acquired in education, and in
the family specifically, is adequate, once acquired (‘internalized’), it generates
behaviour appropriate to it. In the case of error, as emphasized earlier, the
problem is not just that the child has the wrong theory; it is rather that she
tries to live according to rules which run counter to her natural inclinations.
For example, the child may ignore—or believe he should be able to ignore—a
significant loss, so he might not cry, or otherwise grieve. Or again, a child will
generally tend to feel miserable, even despairing, if left alone (for too long),
but it may be a rule in the family, implicit and explicit, that everyone should be,
providing they are normal, happy. Following this rule, as well as her natural inclinations, the child will be both miserable and happy at the same time, or in succession. Either way the emotions, and the actions to which they would give rise, are inhibited.

In this simple example can be seen the characteristic point that one of the conflicting mental states is not given the right name. Happiness is correctly named, but misery is given no name, or is misnamed. The ‘right’ name here means: use of the name leads to expectations that are fulfilled. As generally, the use of intentional language is justified by its success in prediction. The child learns that happiness is associated with feelings such as of satisfaction and gratitude, and with the natural expressions of these feelings. But if the word is applied in cases in which the child is neglected, then so far she is unprepared for her feelings and inclinations; they make no sense. So far the child does not know what she is believing, feeling, or inclined to do.

Psychological disorder can result from acquisition of a false or inadequate theory of mind. The shortcomings in theory which we have been considering have to do with the *content* of mental states and the relations between contents, as opposed to their *form*. Let us explore the contrast here further. Folk psychology has a form, defined by attribution of intentional states and connections between them, of increasing theoretical complexity. It is plausible to say that this form is relatively constant across cultures, perhaps that it is innately conditioned rather than learnt, and that disorder in the capacity to use this form of theory is likely to be drastic. On this last point, it has been hypothesized that failure in development of the theory of mind, of certain of its formal features beyond a certain level of complexity, is implicated in one of the major developmental psychological disorders, autism (e.g. Baron-Cohen et al. 1993). The failures of theory considered in this subsection concern content rather than form in this sense. Content, in contrast to form, is relatively culture-sensitive, and, a connected point, is presumably learnt rather than innately determined. Given that a child is prepared to develop a complex theory of cognitive-affective states in application to others and to the self, she relies on adults to teach her the content of such states in particular cases, and here there is room for error. The more serious the error, the more it has to do with conditions fundamental to action, the more serious would be the confusion and conflict to which it gives rise.

The intimate link between failure of self-knowledge and psychological disorder is evident in the fact that some of the major pioneering work of dismantling the Cartesian theory of introspection, hence in effect the Cartesian concept of mind, has been in the area of psychological disorder, specifically by Freud. The view of self-knowledge sketched in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2) and used
here re-affirms the close connection between ignorance about ourselves and disorder, but in other general respects it apparently differs markedly from Freudian theory. Firstly, Freud viewed the processes involved in self-knowledge and ignorance as intra-psychic, whereas the view outlined here emphasizes their interpersonal nature. Secondly, one of Freud’s crucial observations was that failure of self-knowledge typically serves a defensive function, protecting the self from intolerable intentional states, such as beliefs, memories, feelings or impulses. By contrast, in the account given so far here nothing has been said about failure of self-knowledge having a defensive function; ignorance appears so far as no more than a failure of education. These differences may be more superficial than deep, however. As suggested in various places, the intra-psychic and the interpersonal, though distinguishable, are interwoven (e.g. Sections 3.3, 6.3, 6.4); as are ignorance, distortion of reality, and defence (Sections 1.3.3 and 8.2.4).

The points made so far in this subsection regarding possibilities of disorder created by second-order intentionality may also be linked to the considerations in the previous subsection on threats to core beliefs. We considered then primarily threats to core beliefs in the theory of action that have to do with apparently disconfirming experience. There are other kinds of threat, however, involving apparently opposed second-order representations acquired socially rather than by experience. Children may be taught beliefs that are hardly compatible with the assumptions required for action to be viable. A child may be taught in words as well as in practice that he or she is too demanding, or is incompetent, or is perfect, or that the world is too dangerous, or unsatisfying; and so on. Thus we can envisage threats to the core assumptions underlying action arising not only from acute or chronic traumatic experiences, but from conflicting propositions which come with the force of parental authority. In these circumstances there is a similar adverse and paradoxical effect on the capacity for thought: the assertions assault what has to be believed if action is to continue, and hence they have to be both taken seriously and ignored. —Wherever there is threat to what is fundamental to action, whether in the form of obvious or hidden disasters, or breakdown in the conditions of child development, including perverse instruction, the assault has to be dealt with in some way if action is to carry on. Protection is needed.

8.2.4 Psychic defences: behavioural strategies, mental analogues and elaborations

In previous subsection we considered threats to the core of the theory presupposed by action, to assumptions or expectations of safety, competence, and satisfaction of needs, for example. Such attacks require defensive manoeuvres. At their simplest, these are behavioural. Living beings respond to threats to
their integrity by escape or fighting. And if the environment fails to provide for needs, alternative sources of satisfaction are sought. Insofar as living beings have the capacity for representation, however, there are alternatives to these real actions: they can create analogues within the realm of representation itself. Threats can be denied representation, or they can be attacked and destroyed in thought. Satisfaction of needs can likewise be thought, even if not really achieved. Such strategies operate within the mind as opposed to reality: they are acts of the imagination, and they involve departure from, or distortion of reality.

Pursuing this line of thought rapidly leads to points of a kind familiar in psychoanalytic theory. However, our aim in this section is not to explicate or endorse specific psychoanalytic models of particular psychic defences, but is rather to sketch some principles for understanding the concept that belongs with proposals made so far in this essay. The reason that we come across here points familiar in psychoanalytic theory is just that Freud was the first to see clearly the problem-space in question. Its definition required various conceptual assumptions which contradicted and superceded what was envisaged by mainstream scientific psychology until fairly recently. These assumptions included the following, all of which were discussed in the first chapter: preparedness to use the Intentional Stance, the language of intentional states, in psychological explanation and prediction, as in common sense, folk psychology; but departure from common sense (Cartesian common sense) by not restricting intentionality to what is available to consciousness and expressed in self-report; the post-empiricist recognition that some intentional states constitute the core of belief, to be protected from counter-evidence, and the inevitable conclusion then that while such protection averts perceived catastrophe, it involves at least distortion of reality, and perhaps manifest disorder.

As indicated above there is a model for intra-psychic defences in the post-empiricist conception of scientific theories discussed in the first chapter (Section 1.3.3). In scientific theories, unlike the unconscious mind, cognitive manoeuvres to protect the core of theory are open to view. The defensive strategies have been well documented by Lakatos in his seminal paper (1970) and discussed in Sections 1.3.1 and 1.3.3. They include simple denial of the anomalies, which works well until replication, and degenerating theory changes, such as ad hoc elaborations that involve restriction of scope. We should note also an extreme reaction to pressure within theory, namely, the splitting of the scientific community, where one side takes the old theory and all its evidence, ignoring, disqualifying the new, and the new school envisages only its domain of evidence. In these circumstances there can be little (genuine) communication between the two schools of thought. An example would be the splitting of
psychoanalytic and scientific paradigms in psychology under the weight of the dichotomy between meaningful and causal connections. All these sorts of manoeuvre under radical pressure, which are familiar in science—denial, theory-restriction, and splitting—have intra-psychic analogues.

Simple denial in the face of unwanted or inexplicable phenomena is common enough. It is likely to be unsustainable, however, in any form, in the face of trauma, whether a single catastrophe, or chronic adverse experience. One way of responding to undeniable conflict involves what may be called splitting: the traumatic experiences and in particular their apparent meaning are kept isolated from the convictions presupposed by action. Cognitive responses to gross and subtle trauma may include that the trauma is represented, indeed persistently re-experienced and re-enacted, but it is split off from the representation of reality as one in which it is possible to live. This splitting off is a form of denial, of not allowing the trauma to access basic, necessary beliefs. Splitting, and the dissociation which it implies, thus present as relatively simple ways of protecting fundamental assumptions. The precise nature and modelling of these and related psychic mechanisms has been and remains a subject of debate (e.g. Breuer and Freud 1895; Klein 1946; Hilgard 1977/1986; Power and Brewin 1991; Gardner 1993).

Denial and splitting can be readily identified within a post-empiricist philosophy of mind as possible defensive manoeuvres. The possibility of dissociation belongs with the idea explored in detail in Chapter 6, that human cognition is characterized by multiple sets of rules, concerning subsystems of cognitive-affective-behavioural states. Coherence and integrity among these subsystems are not a given but has to be achieved, and this process can be threatened, as will be discussed in more detail in the next section. Also, however, dissociation can be conscripted into use as a defence. As generally with cognitive phenomena, even otherwise maladaptive mechanisms can be made use of, including as defences, a point which will recur through the remainder of this section.

Other types of defence familiar in psychoanalytic theory have a more complicated, though still strong, relation to the kind of assumptions we have been using in this essay. Consider for example projection (or projective identification), one of the main primitive defences posited in Kleinian theory (Klein 1946; Sandler 1988). To understand projection from the standpoint of the considerations adduced so far in this chapter, we need to elaborate on the view of the self which is essential for action. It includes competence, or power. However, if the self is seen as too powerful further problems arise, in particular in case the self is perceived as capable of destroying the source of needs, and is inclined to because that source is not sufficiently satisfying. The idea of an
‘impossible reality’ is then complicated by the idea of an ‘impossible self’, that is to say, a self that is inclined to attack and destroy the source of satisfaction of its needs. Destructive attack is a familiar, effective response to threat. It is however a particularly problematic response in the specific case of frustration of needs. In early development, it would appear as destructive impulses, anger or rage, against the carer, prompted by perceived deprivation. In general, and at any developmental stage, intolerable destructive impulses would include those directed at any outside object, or any aspect of the self, which is valued. Such impulses are bound to create conflict. One solution to the conflict is to project the destructive impulses into the source of needs. Projection then appears as a primitive defence against such impulses, by ascribing them not to the self, but to the outside world, either to a natural object, or to another subject. In this way projection presents as a radical misuse of the ‘theory of mind’. As in the case of all defences there is a cost. In this case the cost is that the self is stripped of power, and confronts a frightening reality.

So far we have considered the defences of denial, splitting, and projection. More positive strategies include self-gratification. If the real world fails as a source of satisfaction of needs, such as for comfort and affirmation, it is possible to create an imaginative world in which the self can please itself. Pleasure in this state of mind may include sexual self-satisfaction as an expression of power to elicit comfort and love. At another level, there may be dreams of praise and acclaim. Reality is given up as a source or object of love, and the self is substituted. Such are the procedures involved in the so-called narcissistic defence (Freud 1914). On the surface is the thought that the world is inferior and unworthy of love; beneath is the fear that it is the self which has these awful qualities. As with other defences, there is dissociation, with more or less rapid switching between contrary states of mind.

The above psychic defences may be considered developmentally primitive, without any essential dependence on language. The issues, here as elsewhere, become complicated by the use of a theory about one’s own mental states. More sophisticated, ‘rational’ forms of denial of unacceptable states of mind become available, including such as re-construal, intellectualizing, and explaining away. These defences are typically added to the repertoire with the theorizing that makes them possible during adolescence (Freud 1936, see also Chapter 6, Section 6.5.3). These intellectual responses to intolerable mental states are akin to the defensive, degenerating strategies used in scientific theory when it is faced with anomalies. As in scientific theory, the cost is typically restriction of scope and predictive power, but what is secured is at least certainty within the restricted domain. Once there is an explicit, working theory of mind, moreover, primitive defensive strategies such as straightforward
denial, splitting, projection, and narcissism, can all be elevated into theoretical form. The theory of the self and others can be conscripted into the service of defence, by selective attention to, and distortions of, the phenomena.

We described self-knowledge in the first chapter (Section 1.3.2) as having the form of a theory. The account belongs with post-empiricist epistemology, and stands opposed basically to the Cartesian idea of introspection. We noted that failure of self-knowledge leads to confusion and rule-conflict, endorsing the long recognized close connection between failure of self-knowledge and psychological problems (Section 8.2.3). On the other hand, we did not in the earlier discussion refer to the defensive function of failure of self-knowledge, a further point emphasized by Freud and subsequent psychoanalytic theorists. We noted that the theory of mind, applied to the self as well as to others, is, like all theories, acquired in education, which thus appears as a major source of error. Hence this new model of self-knowledge apparently differs from the psychoanalytic view in implicating education rather than defensive function in the production of error. And to this we may add another apparent difference, that Freud viewed the processes involved in self-knowledge and ignorance as intra-psychic, whereas the account endorsed here emphasizes their interpersonal nature. On the other hand, while it is true that psychoanalytic theory has emphasized the intra-psychic nature of processes involved in self-knowledge and its failure, the contrast with interpersonal accounts is not that sharp. Psychoanalytic theory has always been concerned with interpersonal relations, whether internalized in the mind of the individual or played out in reality. This is connected with the fact that there is no tension between Freud’s insight that failure of self-knowledge typically serves a defensive function, and the view of self-knowledge and its failures as originating in social and family life. It has been emphasized by family therapists working within a psychoanalytic framework that the blind spots and error intrinsic to the family’s psychological theory typically have a defensive function (e.g. Byng-Hall 1973). The theory includes rules, explicit or implicit, which systematically promote ignoring, disqualification or distortion of certain beliefs and desires. Moreover, among the methods for achieving this result are the developmentally primitive defence mechanisms described in psychoanalytic theory. These mechanisms may be called ‘intra-psychic’, and they may indeed be subjective in origin, but in any case they are also modelled, selectively reinforced and maintained, by family function. Children have ample opportunity to learn from parents the use of various forms of denial, such as splitting and projection.

We have been exploring the idea that certain core assumptions have to be preserved if action is to be possible. They concern a view of the self as competent, of the world as safe and predictable, and sufficiently gratifying. If this view is
threatened in some way, the first response is to act so as to remove the threat. But of course special problems arise in case intervention is impossible or unsuccessful, when the circumstances for some reason cannot be altered. The living being is then obliged to remain in a situation in which action is either impossible or pointless or both. In this condition the tendency will be for action to become random, or irrelevant, or it may cease altogether. Such are the signs in behaviour. As to cognition, it may be inferred *a priori* that there are similarly radical disorders: thought may cease altogether, or may become random, or it frees itself from reality.

The risks involved in abandoning core beliefs testifies to their necessity, to the importance of defending them at practically any cost. The consequences of giving them up, in more or less circumscribed areas of life, include the two most common themes in psychological disorder: profound anxiety, and depression. The anxious person lives in fear of danger, and has to restrict his or her sphere of activity more or less drastically. In depression the view of action is hopeless: the self is powerless, the world provides no pleasure, and there is no prospect of change. To the extent that the depressed person sees no point in it, she does not act. The extreme is suicide, the act which brings action to an end.

Anxious or depressed beliefs signify the failure of attempts at defence, the failure to preserve convictions that action can carry on. As discussed earlier in this section, they may arise from traumatic experience of some kind, or they may have been acquired from parental instruction, or both.

Depressed and anxious beliefs are maladaptive in the sense that they inhibit action. But there is another possibility here, that maladaptive beliefs may themselves function as defences, as protection of something considered necessary to carry on. This complicated and paradoxical possibility is consistent with the general assumption used in this essay, that the fundamental direction of mental phenomena is to ensure the continuation of action. The methodological assumption is that this continues to be true even in, and indeed plausibly *especially* in, the most difficult bio-psychological circumstances. This implies that ‘symptoms’ may well be serving functions, an idea which has always been central to psychoanalytic theory and its derivatives.

Consider for example one of the well-known psychoanalytic models of depression, as being aggression towards the carer, as a response to perceived neglect or abuse, turned against the self. The view of the self as weak and useless may serve as a defence against the view that the self is too powerful, and in particular inclined to assault the one who should be helping. Further, helplessness may be expected to elicit care. The point here is that maladaptiveness, like threat, admits of degrees, and is hierarchically organized. Certain assumptions
will be given up, even valued ones, in order to preserve what is still more important.

The psychic defences serve to protect core assumptions perceived as necessary for action. If these assumptions are abandoned, in the light of experience or parental instruction, the result is that action is perceived as in some way impossible, or pointless. Further, some basic assumptions may be given up in order to preserve others perceived as even more essential. Whatever the origin of the maladaptive cognitions, they likewise assume the status of rules for the interpretation of experience, to be held with certainty, and protected from apparent counter-evidence.

The psychic defences are self-perpetuating; their aim is to preserve the status quo. This means: core beliefs are to be maintained, contrary experience is to be kept at a distance by forms of denial and distortion. It is reality itself which is being denied and distorted. But reality being what it is, that in experience and action which is independent of the will, it continues to have its effects, to make itself known. What is feared is continually re-experienced and re-enacted. In anxiety states, reality is avoided, but is still represented and feared; in depression, inaction fails to elicit enough care and maintains absence of reward; the narcissistic personality acts so as to extinguish love from others; in delusion, the person may seem to make sense to himself, but communication with others fails drastically. The psychic defences have the benefit of protection of the view of the world and the self as tolerable. The costs involve distortion of the phenomena, restriction of theory and consequently life-style, and re-experiencing (re-enactment) of the original threat, typically without comprehension.

It was remarked as the beginning of this section that radical failure of intentionality has two connected forms: persistent misrepresentation and persistent rule-conflict. These are what is to be explained. We went on to note, in Section 8.2.2, that the explanation invokes the notion of trauma, broadly conceived. Persistent misrepresentation and persistent rule-conflict appear as the re-experiencing, or re-enactment, of the original threats to the integrity of action. We then went on, in the present subsection, to consider psychic defences, and we have arrived at the conclusion that these defences characteristically involve persistent misrepresentation and persistent rule-conflict, these being, again, the re-experiencing, or re-enactment, of the original traumatic experience. The solution to the problem plays out the problem. The disorder is an attempt to preserve order by the repetition of disorder. The position here is thus a matter of complex identities and paradoxes, inevitably, since we are considering the undermining of cognition by cognition.

There are adaptive ways of reconstruction, however, which move on from repetition of disorder. Traumatic experience, broadly conceived, undermines
conditions of action. The conflict may be resolvable, depending on many factors and circumstances. Resolution requires a single frame of reference in which, firstly, danger and safety are acknowledged, and secondly, the world is construed as on balance safe enough. As already discussed, in the absence of such a meta-frame, there remains a split between two conflicting systems of representation, affect and behaviour. The two systems run in parallel, without communication between them. In particular, the fear that the world is as experienced in the trauma remains split off from the expectation and evidence to the contrary. In this way the fear persists, notwithstanding subsequent experience which may contradict it. Change in these circumstances is, needless to say, not easy to achieve. It is necessary to distinguish between kinds of change. As implied throughout this discussion, we characteristically find in psychological disorder conflicting systems of cognition, affect and behaviour. The conflict is generally between what is tolerable and what is intolerable. Shifts between these states of mind, more or less rapid, constitute what may be called first-order change. Second-order change, by contrast, requires integration, and is more difficult to achieve. It requires dismantling of defences, whether these be simple avoidance, or more subtle mental strategies. With this dismantling, the feared outcome is realized, namely, threat to core assumptions about the self and its relation to reality. These core assumptions have to be adjusted to take account of, to make sense of and predict, what before was denied or distorted. A new and better theory is required. The kind of change required here is akin to what occurs in scientific theory, when under the weight of anomalies, and on condition that a more powerful theory can be constructed, it shifts from one paradigm to another.

8.3 Intentional causality and disorder

8.3.1 Introduction: threats to the integrity of intentional causality

In the previous section possible intentional origins of psychological disorder were considered in relation to representation, cognition, motivation, and action. Our method was essentially philosophical and psychological. We pursue now the same issues taking our discussion of Chapters 5, 6, and 7 as a starting point. We will in effect press our account of intentional causality and show that it leads to similar proposals as those of the previous section, and further supports the convergence of accounts from epistemology and philosophy of mind on the one hand, and biology and development on the other.

It was evident in our earlier discussion that where intentional causal processes are hard-wired then elements are likely to be harmoniously linked. Provided the environment remains roughly that in which the organism
evolved, representation and action will be possible. Humans are physiologically adapted to a narrow range of environmental conditions, but they possess the capacity to devise a wide range of strategies for action, and hence are able to live in very varied environments. The possession of multiple and acquired internalized rules for action, which may be matched to contrasting environmental demands has therefore been of considerable survival value. However, with the capacity to acquire rules of perception, thought and action, there has arisen the possibility that the operation of intentional causal processes will not be smooth. In contrast to non-intentional causality the elements of intentional causal processes that we specified in Chapter 5 do not necessarily work in harmony. This point may be obscured where the process is biochemical or physiological, because the elements are not acquired or multiple. There is also a dramatic difference in the time periods over which the intentional processes of biochemistry and physiology, and those of the child, develop. If we assume that the efficient function of an intentional causal sequence in a physiological system has evolved over several million years, then the learning of new rules for perceptions and actions over hours, days, months, or even a few years, may seem to be a precarious truncation of the process!

In the next sections we examine some of the ways in which the elements of intentional causality might not be in harmony, and hence give rise to psychological disorder. Our discussion is derived directly from that of Chapter 5. We need only take the features of intentional causality as seen in biological processes generally and ask what will happen if these are inappropriate, contradictory or in competition.

First there are those conditions in which accurate representation and action are incompatible. We ask what will be the consequences when accurate representation does not create the grounds for action, and what are the consequences if accuracy of perception must be sacrificed for action to take place? Just as when we took a philosophical starting point, we are interested in coping and psychological survival in the face of severe adversity and trauma. Secondly, there are risks arising from the requirement that internalized sets of rules should be both sufficiently general that they may inform action in different circumstances, and sufficiently differentiated that they can distinguish among different environmental demands. Thirdly, acquired internalized rules require stability if they are to inform action, and need to be available to revision in the light of experience. Threats to the integrity of representation and action will arise where either there is insufficient stability or there are conditions under which testing is not possible. Finally intentional processes may be threatened where the monitoring and meta-representational capacity is undermined. Each of the first three types of threat may be so persistent and pervasive that
this more radical breakdown occurs, or there may be a direct assault on the basic sense of self and the experience of the external world.

8.3.2 Incompatibility between representation and action

Take first the requirement that representation is in the service of action. This is unlikely to contain a contradiction provided that accurate perceptions and effective actions, have evolved together in harmony with the needs of the organism. As we have seen problems arise where events in the outside world do not fall within the range of representations that an organism is able to link to action; for instance where a threat is so great that neither fight or flight are possible. Then the alternatives are either that the animal reprocesses the threat as falling within the usual scope of representation and action, or that action is not possible. A further possibility arises where the individual is capable of generating multiple representations. This is seen in animals, especially non-human primates, but to a much greater extent in humans, and we have reviewed in Chapter 7 the flexible and creative potential of such a capability in activities such as play. There exists then in human development the possibility that this capacity for multiple representations will provide a means of coping with trauma and other circumstances under which action is not possible. The child may cope by generating two representations, one which omits reference to the threat but is compatible with action, and the other which includes the threat and the accompanying thoughts and emotions and is split off in the mind so that it does not underpin action. There is then the scope for an inaccurate representation which is compatible with action, and an accurate representation that is incompatible with action. Having considered this possibility in detail earlier in relation to post-empiricist theory of knowledge we encounter it now as a risk pursuant on the freeing up of elements of intentional causality in human development. The evolutionary perspective enables us to see clearly how dangerous this could be. For children, psychological and physical survival depends upon the capacity to act in relation to caregivers. Actions will need to preserve close contact with those who might provide for the child, and this will be straightforward if the representations of the behaviours of the caregivers are compatible with these actions. But suppose they are not. Suppose the perceptions of the child are of neglect, hostility or physical or sexual abuse. How is the child to act and still retain the link with caregivers? The child has a need to be looked after, and to find a reasonably tolerable emotional state, but accurate perception reveals something different.

Then there is the possibility of an undermining of the flow of intentional causal sequences with a consequent inability to act, or incoherence of action. We have referred already to the possibility that this may contribute to some
clinical pictures, but it is also evident in development. The study of infants with their caregivers in the Strange Situation Test (Ainsworth *et al.* 1978) has indicated that most have a strategy in their relating; that is to say they act in ways that are related systematically to the behaviours of their parents. A minority, comprised predominantly of those who come from families at risk for mental health or parenting problems, show a different pattern. Their behaviours with their parents are characterized by sudden cessation of actions, freezing, and actions that are contradictory either together or in sequence. The behaviours of the parents of these infants have been described as unpredictable or frightening (Main and Hesse 1990). The context is that the infant is with the person who above all others should be a source of protection and care, but who is also frightening. The consequence of the preservation of accuracy of perception is an undermining of the conditions of action.

It seems from the evidence so far that this ‘disorganized’ attachment pattern does not generally persist beyond infancy, and is replaced by others in which actions are possible. The evidence from non-human primates is that in a competition between accuracy of perception, and the need for care, the latter will prevail. Baby monkeys will cling to surrogate ‘mothers’ that punish them (Harlow 1961) and children have often been observed to continue to seek comfort and care from parents who reject them (Bowlby 1969). If we assume that representations of some kind are required for these actions to take place, then they must omit whatever information is incompatible with the actions. It might be argued that this information could simply be forgotten, but the act of forgetting some specific items of information is likely also to entail their representation. Not only that, but there will be required the mental effort of making sure that this information is not used in the regulation of action. Put simply the forgetting of painful and frightening information is probably not an option. Thus in effect there is established two different sets of internalized rules, one that preserves accuracy but does not meet the needs of the individual, and one that sacrifices accuracy but allows those needs to be met, both in terms of personal comfort and the survival of the relationship with key caregivers. It is likely that the one that meets some needs will prevail, whilst the other is predominantly non-operative. The non-operative perceptions, affects, and cognitions, will then be unconscious, untested, and in contradiction to those that underpin actions. It will be evident that where this mechanism applies, the task of the overarching agency, of the self, or representor of representations, will be made particularly complex because of the contradictions between the schemata. Contradictions between representations, especially partial representations, will provide important examples of possible sources of disruption of functioning.
We return, then, to an analysis which is similar to that of the previous section, albeit via a somewhat different route. We find ourselves again, in some respects, in agreement with Melanie Klein’s view that the child may separate representations which broadly speaking may be ‘good’ or ‘bad’; whilst not espousing her particular developmental account. Here the inactivation of a representation of some aspects of the environment, in order to permit action, arises as a prediction from the operation of intentional causal processes.

How might such inactivated representations operate? Suppose the accurate perception is ‘I am being abused’ with many associated perceptions such as ‘I am in pain’, ‘I am angry’, ‘I am helpless’. If the relationships of the child demand that these are not acknowledged, then they cannot provide the basis for action, and it is likely that they will be maintained out of consciousness, and will not be available for testing that might establish their truth and their range of applicability. It is then possible that such a constellation of beliefs and emotions may be activated later, perhaps by events or people that in some way resemble the original, and then they may intrude into the life of the individual. The extent of generalization, the lack of relationship with the severity of the precipitating event, and the subjective experience of intrusion will arise from the extent to which this state of mind has been kept separate and untested. Pain, hopelessness, and helplessness erupting in this way might lead to an episodic disorder such as depression. This proposal assumes that the observing capacity of the self remains relatively intact. That is to say the individual reports the intrusion into the continuity of his/her life. Often in depression the state of mind is experienced as different from his/her usual self, unwanted, something that is suffered. Those elements of self, of the identification with, and commitment to, the depressed state of mind are lacking. The observing capacity retains its contact with that prior to the episode, and encounters a state of mind which is experienced as unfamiliar.

Repetition of traumatic experiences, especially in childhood might lead to a rather different state of affairs that may have implications for the integrity of the self. We saw in Chapter 6 that the self probably develops out of a combination of innate capabilities and the repetition and generalization of emotional states, perceptions, and actions across situations and over time. This in turn allows for a benign diversity of states of mind and behaviours that may vary considerably but do not contradict or undermine each other. If however the young child’s experiences require a repeated splitting of perceptions, thoughts and emotional states, then what is split off may become a representational framework with so great a generality and commitment that it resembles that of the self. Nevertheless it will remain split off from the ‘day to day’ self. Here then is a possible mechanism for intrusions into the activity of the self which
are not apparent from the individual’s perspective because there is a different observing agent. Those close to the individual often refer to ‘Jekyll and Hyde’ or to ‘two people’, and for the individual one state of mind and accompanying behaviours is strikingly inaccessible from the other. Here the commitment to, and conviction of the rightness of, each is very strong. Examples might include outbursts of relatively unprovoked violence, the rapid changes of state of mind of ‘borderline’ functioning (Chapter 9) and some types of psychotic episodes.

8.3.3 The generalization and differentiation of representations

Our second possible mechanism is derived from a consideration of the extent of generalization and differentiation of rules of perception, thought and action. As we have seen this changes with development. The young infant is responsive to human faces in general, but at around nine months he/she makes a very sharp distinction between familiar adults (attachment figures) and strangers. This is not however rigid, and the infant acquires new attachment figures through interaction and familiarity. The recognition of the difference between relating to special people and others underpins relationships throughout life. Similarly the ability to judge the different interpersonal requirements of settings such as parties, job interviews, or funerals is crucial to effective social functioning. This requires sets of rules of sufficient generality that they may provide a guide for action under these different conditions, and sufficient differentiation that they are able to support appropriate behaviour. Difficulties may arise where there is either too restricted a range, or over-generalization of the representations.

Clearly over-generalization may simply arise from faulty learning. Fear or salivation may be elicited by association with conditioned stimuli that are in themselves not either threatening or nutritious. Such conditions should be open to relatively straightforward corrective action. Equally, over-generalization may appear as a strategy in order to cope with difficult circumstances. Take the dilemma of the child for whom accuracy and need are in conflict, in relation to parents. If the representation which has to do with emotional needs is widened to include other adults then potentially some further needs may be met. This is seen in some children who are insecurely attached, and in particular in children who have been in institutions where there have been multiple caretakers (Hodges and Tizard 1989; O’Connor et al. 2003). Here the over-generalization may be linked clearly to survival, and may not be open to such ready revision. Such an over-generalization may have consequences for the accurate perception of the differences between different relationships, and varied social circumstances.
Sets of rules, or schemata that are too narrow may also have implications for the development of the self and the meta-representational systems. As we have seen, generalization of a sense of agency, and of affects, are likely to be crucial mechanisms in the development of the self. In the case of affects this will require a reciprocal process. Joy is experienced with different people in relation to different joint frameworks but is the same experience, thus supporting the continuity of the sense of self (Stern 1985). Experiences of sorrow may be linked in similar fashion. However, crucially, there will also be required the sense of self that is capable either of joy or of sorrow. This may be provided by other indicators of continuity such as continuity of a sense of agency and memory. However where the child’s experiences are predominantly of a narrow range of affective states, and where only these affective states are reinforced or permitted in the family, then these may generalize to the point where the self and its narrow range of emotional states are closely identified. If we assume that a priority for the self is ensuring the conditions for action, problems may arise if these have been clearly identified with a particular restricted constellation of affective states. Circumstances that have implications for emotional states outside this range, such as bereavement, may lead to representations that undermine these conditions, and hence helplessness and possibly depression.

8.3.4 The stability and testing of representations

A further, third, source of disruption of intentional causality may arise if the conditions that sets of rules should both be testable but also relatively enduring are threatened. If they are not testable they are likely to become inappropriate to the demands of the environment. If they are open continuously to revision, then they will cease to provide a map or model in relation to which testing can take place. As we have seen the interplay between relatively enduring and general hypotheses, and testability is prominent in many theories including those of Piaget in relation to cognitive development, and Lakatos in relation to the development of scientific paradigms. In each of these cases the hypotheses not only provide the bridge with reality, but also the conditions for thought, and for action. During development, children continually test internalized sets of rules concerning beliefs, fears, wishes, and motives. The test may concern the truth of a belief, for instance about the cause of an event. It is common for children to blame themselves for events which have in fact been accidents, or have been brought about by adults. Expression of that belief through talking about it, or through play will be important if it is to be examined. Where a child faces harsh or critical parents the truth of her beliefs may be particularly difficult to establish. For instance a child may blame herself for the abuse that a sibling has received. If she is to locate the harm as coming from a parent,
this may need to be identified by a trusted adult, however she will take a risk in seeking to check that perception with the perpetrator, or the other parent. So she may continue to blame herself. Similarly for the abused child there is often a requirement that the acts be kept secret, so it may be impossible for the child to test the belief ‘I am being abused’. Then an important truth may not be available to the child. We will return to this issue in the next chapter.

A need for constant revision of expectations is likely to be necessary where the behaviours of parents or other caregivers are inconsistent and unpredictable. Inconsistencies of parenting are common in the families of children with behaviour problems (Patterson 1982). Plans for effective action are then likely to be difficult to establish, and this may be reflected in the high frequency of impulsive and aggressive responses of the children.

### 8.3.5 The integrity of the meta-representational system

So far, we have traced possible mechanisms for the disruption of function from contradictions among the elements of intentional causality in human psychological functioning. It seems that the more repeated and generalized these are, the greater the scope for a more radical malfunction of the meta-representational and organizational agency. However, it is possible that there are routes to disruption that primarily affect this organizing process.

Take first the processes described by Stern in relation to the development of the self after around six months of age. At this stage the infant refers to the parent for guidance as to which set of rules applies, for instance regarding the visual cliff. But what do the infant and mother have to achieve? They have to establish their joint frame of reference, along the lines of ‘I (the infant) am asking you a question and need guidance’. And then the content of that communication has to be applied to the task. Of course the infant cannot check with the parent whether they do have that joint frame of reference because the checking would require that framework. In other words interactions require an organizing principle that frames them, and establishes their rules, just as do individual states of mind. These are established by metacommunications, which convey what are the rules of social exchange. It is interesting to note that the *a priori* nature of the statement of the rules often is provided by the explicit or implicit rules of institution, dress, titles, or architecture. These are especially useful where the individuals do not know each other well. Where they do, the metacommunications are likely to be more particular to the relationships.

There will normally be a reciprocal support between the metacommunications and the content of the communications. Thus to take an everyday example, the child stands on the table and checks with the parent whether this is permissible. The parent answers ‘no’ using the metacommunication (through posture,
facial expression, and tone of voice), ‘this is serious and I mean it’. The child continues, falls off and discovers both that the content was correct, and that he had read correctly the rules underpinning his relationship with the parent. Now suppose the parent does not indicate unequivocally that she is serious, perhaps by smiling, or walking out of the room whilst saying ‘no’. Then the child ignores the content but follows the metamessage ‘I am not serious’ and falls of the table. If he is blamed then either he has to point out that there was another component to the message (i.e. ‘you did not appear to mean it’), or accept what the parent says and deny that component. If the metacommunication has been experienced along the lines of ‘I don’t care whether you fall off the table’ it will remain an unacknowledged hostile element in the relationship. The general point is the same as that considered earlier in relation to split off aspects of individual representations. The child has to find a basis for action in the relationship. If the content and the metacommunication are in conflict, he must choose which to follow, otherwise he has to tolerate contradictory elements in the intentional causal processes, and this will preclude action. It is likely, with the parent, that he will choose the route that least threatens the relationship, and in this case it is hypothesized to be the one that does not mention a possible lack of care or of hostility. Where the majority of exchanges do not contain such contradictions, and where it is clear that angry or hostile emotions can be acknowledged, such interactions are not likely to have a major impact. Where they are repeated then the child may develop split off states of mind of the form ‘I hate my mother’ which are not accessible or testable.

A second source of disruption to the observing and overarching representational agent may arise from a direct assault. It is likely that this high-invariant agent, or self, contains some general and some core assumptions. These, as our discussion of Stern’s work has indicated, are related to the sense of self as having continuity, and to a differentiation of the continuity of the self from that of the external world. In other words the predictability of the physical world, the world of other people, and of the individual, with their different rhythms promotes the differentiation into the distinctive sense of self. Crucially, a central assumption is that action is possible. Where elements of intentional causal processes are contradictory, and hence do not provide the basis for action, elements of that contradiction may be ignored in the service of action. Suppose however, that action is not possible. Severe trauma may pose a threat to the self because of the break in the continuity of experience, and by creating conditions in which action is not possible. Disasters such as those seen in football stadia or on ships, entail a breakdown of the predictability of the physical world, of the individual’s relationship to it, and of the conditions for action.
There has then occurred a break in the basic condition for intentionality. For some individuals a solution may be found in denial that would create or recreate conditions for action, but for many the representation is so powerful that it persists and includes the representation that action was not possible. As we have seen such a paradoxical representation may provide the basis for the repetitive intrusive thoughts in reaction to trauma. These phenomena are seen also after sustained childhood sexual abuse in which action has not been possible, and following bereavement when at least in relation to at least one person, action is not possible.

8.4 Psychological models of disorder and treatment

8.4.1 Introduction

We are now in a position to explore similarities and differences between the analysis proposed so far in this chapter and current theories of psychological disorder. Our account has not emphasized a particular theoretical framework in psychology and psychiatry. It is not our purpose to do so, nor to attempt to elaborate a new theory. Rather we have been examining the kind of account of order and disorder which follows from bringing together considerations in the philosophy of mind and knowledge, and in the theory of causal processes in biological systems. Nevertheless this has led us to a point where it is possible to be quite specific about mechanisms, and the question arises as to the relation of this account to the available theoretical frameworks, of which we consider six briefly below. There is no attempt to do justice to the models, but only to indicate links with the proposals made so far in this chapter.

8.4.2 Conditioning theory

The principles of classical and operant conditioning supported models of various kinds of psychological disorder. Among the most elaborated and important was the formulation of phobic anxiety as a conditioned fear response. Conditioning theories of phobic anxiety invoked intentional processes of the kind described so far in this section, including hypothesized origin in traumatic experience (or in at least repeated, adverse, sub-traumatic experiences), inappropriate generalization of fear, avoidance which precludes unlearning, and/or re-experiencing of the original fear in similar situations (e.g. Eysenck 1979).

Conditioning models, and particularly the behavioural therapies to which they gave rise, remain important, but generally they have been superceded by more sophisticated theories within the cognitive psychological paradigm outlined in the first chapter (Section 1.2.1).
8.4.3 Social learning theory

Social learning theory extends conditioning theory by acknowledging social influences on learning, including the acquisition of behaviours by observation of others, and by recognizing cognitive processes in behaviour including the regulating role of verbally expressed rules (Bandura 1977; and e.g. Hodgson 1984).

One of the main applications of social learning theory has been to severe and persistent aggressive and disruptive behaviours in children. There is ample evidence that behaviour problems in children often occur against a background of inconsistent parental discipline, a high level of instructions, frequent criticisms or hostility, inadvertent reinforcement of aggressive behaviours, and a lack of explanation of the reason for instructions or reprimands (Patterson 1982). This may lead to a set of internalized rules in which the actions of others are readily construed as aggressive and aggressive responses are seen appropriate. In studies that made use of video tapes of cartoon characters, young children who had been physically abused and showed high levels of aggressive behaviour, when compared with non-abused non-aggressive children, construed the actions of the participants as more aggressive, and were more likely to indicate that aggressive solutions to interpersonal encounters were preferable (Dodge et al. 1990). This would indicate that the children had stable coherent representations and action plans that were inappropriate. Equally it is possible that inconsistency of experiences will not provide the setting for consistent internalized sets of rules, in which case contradictory schemata might be established along lines described earlier. This process may be more likely where, as Patterson has shown for some parents, discipline is determined by the mood of the parent, rather than the objective characteristics of the behaviour. This will make it difficult for the child to identify under which sets of rules the parental injunction falls. Is it to be understood as a function of the parent’s mood, and therefore requiring a response that falls within a general strategy for dealing with mood changes, or is it to be construed as linked to the child’s behaviour? In opting for one the child may leave the other unexpressed, untested and unexplored.

Interventions based on the teaching of new skills to parents, and thereby creating a setting in which children may acquire new internalized rules for behaviour, have had significant success (Kazdin 2001). These techniques focus also on effective action. It is characteristic of children with aggressive and disruptive behaviours that though they ‘act’ frequently, they provoke aversive responses from, or frustration by, others. Thus their experience of effective action is low. Parent training techniques place considerable emphasis on the creation by the parents of situations where the child has more control, and
hence is able to act effectively; for instance in periods of play in which the parent is encouraged to follow the child’s requests. A further way in which the child’s experience of being able to act effectively is undermined arises where interactions have become so negative that her helpful or competent behaviours are no longer noticed by the parents. They are not acknowledged to be making an effective contribution to the relationships. The therapeutic approaches help the parents to notice, and then to praise prosocial behaviours. Through the reinforcement of such behaviours they become effective agents of social (inter)action. For some children the restoration in this way of a sense of agency may have important consequences for the recovery of the experience of a coherent self.

8.4.4 Cognitive therapy

Cognitive therapy is based on the assumption that cognition, in the form of beliefs and expectations, has a causal role in the generation of affect and behaviour. This proposal has been applied particularly in models of depression and anxiety (Beck 1976; Beck et al. 1986; Clark and Beck 1999), but have recently been extended to other conditions including schizophrenia (Garety et al. 2001). Cognitions said to be implicated in the generation of depression include such as: ‘I will be ineffective at this task, I am generally ineffective’, ‘Other people are better at doing things than I am’, or ‘I did not do that well, I don’t do things well’. Cognitive therapy was developed partly to add value to behaviour therapy. Behaviour therapy confronts cognition with experience: irrational (inappropriate) fear is treated by safe, contained exposure to feared stimuli; depression by promoting activity which may bring satisfaction. Such experiences serve to disconfirm anxious or depressed views of the world, and also as evidence, despite expectations to the contrary, that the person can cope. On the other hand, behavioural methods can fail if person uses theory to re-construe the relevant experiences. If a person is convinced that he and the world are hopeless, then any experience which seems to contradict this assumption is at risk for being avoided, denied, reconstrued, or rationalized away. Such cognitive manoeuvres fall outside the scope of behavioural intervention, but they are precisely what can be addressed and questioned in Cognitive Therapy. On the other hand, a possible weakness of cognitive therapeutic intervention at the level of verbally expressed beliefs alone is that it may fail to engage with, make a difference to, the underlying cognitive-affective states. For these sorts of reason, a combination of the two kinds of approach, under the name of cognitive-behavioural therapy, is commonly indicated. Recently an extension of this idea has been recommended, on the basis of a complex model, in the direction of using active, ‘experiential’ therapeutic methods, such as those usually associated with Gestalt therapy (Teasdale 1993).
Cognitive therapy focuses on the person’s theory of his or her own mental states, though attempting to make explicit underlying assumptions and rules, at first unavailable for self-report. Beck (1976) writes:

These (cognitive schemata) will operate without the person’s being aware of his rulebook. He screens selectively, integrates, and sorts the flow of stimuli and forms his own responses without articulating to himself the rules and concepts that dictate his interpretations and action.

How do these internalized sets of rules explain the disruption of functioning which occurs with the onset of a depressive episode? The theory is that the cognitions have developed prior to the episode and often are unconscious. At some point these sets of rules or schemata are then triggered into action, where they become the predominant set of rules that determine mood and behaviour resulting in depression. A central assumption in the treatment is that these sets of rules of interpretation of events and other people may not have been tested, and the therapist examines the basis for them jointly with the patient. Therefore in cognitive therapy an explicit link is made between the monitoring and observing capacity of the individual and the therapist. On the basis of the thesis discussed earlier (Section 8.3.2), it might be expected to be effective only where that observing agency appears to be intact. This is a prediction that remains to be tested.

Cognitive therapy has generally been concerned more with the role of maladaptive cognitions in maintaining psychological distress than with the origins of the cognitions, though it is presumably likely that in some cases they have an understandable connection to previous experience. There is similarly relatively little attention to the other aspect of the intentionality of maladaptive cognitions, namely, that they may in some cases serve a function. As remarked above (Section 8.2.4), maladaptive cognitions, for example in depression, may serve as protection from some greater threat, such as assault on a valued other.

Increasingly the models used in cognitive therapy have emphasized the role of the person’s second-order cognitive-affective evaluations of psychological processes in exacerbating or maintaining distress. For example current cognitive theory of post-traumatic stress proposes that persistent negative evaluation such as self-criticism of stress reactions to trauma inhibits recovery (Ehlers and Clark 1999). Similarly cognitive models of obsessive-compulsive disorder propose that self-criticism as well as exaggerated sense of responsibility in response to what may be common negative thoughts increase the likelihood of persistence and intrusion (Salkovskis 1999). The construal of anomalous experiences that are part of the psychotic prodrome as being externally caused has been implicated in some recent cognitive approaches to schizophrenia (Garety et al. 2001).
Psychoanalytic theories

Freud’s early career was as a physician, working with neurological disorders which had clear, non-intentional, organic origins (Glymour 1991). He found himself attempting to explain apparently identical conditions for which no organic pathology could be identified. In his therapy of women with hysterical conversion syndromes Freud sought to establish whether an intentional account might be found for a disruption of functioning, which to the person and to an observer, appeared intrusive and lacking in intentionality. He concluded that the activity of unconscious wishes, which for much of the individual’s life had been maintained inactive, could provide an explanation (Izenberg 1991). Furthermore, the conflict between the conscious representation, and the separate unconscious representations created the conditions in which action was not possible, and hence paralysis.

The general principles underlying this proposal include ones that we have considered earlier in this chapter, such as the preparedness to invoke intentional states in explanation of disorder, departure from (Cartesian) common sense by not restricting intentionality to what is available to consciousness and expressed in self-report, and recognition that some intentional states constitute the core of belief to be protected from counter-evidence at any cost, including sacrifice of perceptions of reality or aspects of the self.

Psychoanalytic theories, and especially that of Freud, have been criticized for using a nineteenth-century hydraulic model of the effect of unconscious processes. This is seen to attribute qualities of force and energy inappropriately to brain states which might be better understood in terms of information processing. Whilst it is quite evident that information processing is going on, intentionality entails also the registering of what matters to the organism, especially in its emotional charge, and action in avoiding or countering threat, or achieving a goal. The concepts of force and energy capture graphically what it is that energizes the response of the organism, whether animal or person. Furthermore they provide pointers to the implications of conditions under which these states of mind and actions are disallowed. When we consider that the disallowing or splitting off of representations, together with their very powerful emotions, may have arisen in the context of painful, frightening and immobilizing experiences, then their psychological impact when they are reactivated may be best described in the language of force and energy. Such an activation of a set of unconscious, untested, unintegrated beliefs, wishes, and fears is likely to be experienced as intrusive, uncontrollable, and not understandable in the same way as a physical (non-intentional) disruption of functioning. It seems then that Freud saw how intentional processes could, while...
remaining intentional, lead to causal pathways that produce phenomena with the same form as those arising from non-intentional origins, and hence apparently share their force, energy, and lack of intentionality.

The importance of early interpersonal experiences in psychological development was argued for by Melanie Klein (1946), and subsequent object-relations theorists. Klein’s proposition that representations may be split into good and bad, and that if these are not in contact with each other there is a price to be paid, is a form of explanation that is highly compatible with a consideration of the consequences of threats to intentionality. However, and with hindsight perhaps surprisingly, Klein assumes that this is the basic universal human condition in early infancy which is ‘cured’ by good parenting. The evidence, which we reviewed briefly in Chapter 6, would suggest that infants possess substantial integrative capabilities from birth, and that disorder is more likely to arise from threats to the integrity of intentionality. Notwithstanding this difference, both analyses lead to the conclusion that parents, or other committed caregivers, are important to the developmental processes whereby a child comes to represent reasonably accurately key aspects of the external world, and his/her own internal world, and to elaborate appropriate and effective actions. In the absence of such development there arise the risks of inaccurate or partial representations, for instance where aspects of reality are split off, resulting in an unintegrated and therefore more unpredictable and frightening mental life. This explicit linking of accuracy of representation of the external world and integration of mental life is clearly consistent with our previous considerations of epistemology and intentional causal processes.

Winnicott (1971) also belonged to the object relations school of psychoanalytic theory and his writings continue to exert a powerful influence on psychoanalytic theory. We find in them glimpses of ideas rather than an explicit and overarching framework. Two particular aspects of his work illuminate a consideration of function and dysfunction. He proposed, using extremely confusing terminology, that the infant needs to make the move in development from ‘relating to’ an object to ‘using’ an object. Roughly speaking, this means that the child ceases to need to control the other person, normally the parent, and to be able to have a more mature multifaceted connection that is intimate but not controlling. The route is via an attack on the person, that he/she survives. Although Winnicott does not use the same language, he is referring to the testing of internalized schemata of the form ‘I fear that my aggression is too dangerous for you’, ‘I will be rejected if I show aggression’, ‘I fear you will retaliate if I show aggression’. The survival of the parents, the lack of retaliation, and the absence of rejection provide containment for the child through the creation of a sense of safety. In addition they may be seen to serve the function of
contributing to the frame in which multiple, and often anxiety provoking representations may be explored. They have the quality of commitment, and stating ‘here are the boundaries’, that are needed in order to promote the development of the meta-representational system, the self. Put another way the parent is a source of certainty and of what has to be to some extent just asserted, in order to provide a framework in which uncertainty and multiple rules of interpretation and action can be explored. The containment offered by parents has both an emotional and an epistemological function.

Winnicott’s emphasis on the role of play has similar implications. He refers to play as taking place in a ‘transitional space’, that is to say in a domain of experience that is neither subjective and therefore unconnected to reality, nor objective and therefore representational of reality. In play crucial issues are explored with intensity and in detail, but without the consequences that would occur in the real world. These issues concern sex, loss, death, aggression, fears, wishes, and adult roles. Here the representations and their implications for action can be given life within the containing boundary of the ‘this is play’ metacognitions and communications. One side of a conflict, such as that concerning love and hate for a parent, may be worked out to the point of action, in the knowledge that the consequences may be enacted but will not actually ensue. This might entail an benign form of splitting in order to explore the consequence of the actions, but within a containing frame. Thus in Winnicott’s theory play provides another epistemological and emotional container for the development, explanation and testing of sets of rules and representations.

8.4.6 Family systems theories

The theories that we have considered thus far take as their starting point that disruption of function has taken place, and that this is the individual’s problem. Family therapy has in some respects proposed that this is a case of mistaken identity. We say ‘in some respects’ because currently there is a wide diversity of emphases in family therapy and some will not be captured in this brief overview.

A major influence on the analysis of psychological problems has come from systems theory and the work of Gregory Bateson (1971). It is agreed that disruption of function is a key issue, but that the disruption is only apparent. By analogy with the physician who may ascribe a tachycardia to the effects of altitude, systems theory and family therapy have led therapists to examine further sources of intentionality within a person’s context. For instance a person may suffer from depression and there may be no apparent precipitants in the form of life events that involve loss or threat. We may then look for an agent that might have disrupted function, or for the intrusion of affective/cognitive
representations along the lines described earlier. A family systems approach might lead to an interview with the family, in which the pattern of relationships prior to the depression and after its onset provide the focus for investigation. Take the example of a woman in her thirties who is married with children. It might be that her own mother had been widowed and that the depression provided a focus for the maternal grandmother’s care for the patient, and hence brought them closer, without overtly challenging the marriage between the patient and her spouse. This would not provide an explanation of the intentionality of the origin of the depression, but would suggest that its maintenance was linked to the family relationships. The depression that had been seen previously as malfunction would then be ‘reframed’ as forming an important component of the family functioning. The behaviour is therefore seen to come under a different set of rules from that which the patient and the family first envisaged. Previously these rules, approximating to ‘she is ill’ placed the action in the hands of the physician, whilst under the new sets of rules, which include the question of how to care for the mother and preserve the marriage, the possible actions are in the hands of the family members. The family systems model can be widened in order to emphasize, that, before it is assumed that intentionality has run out, many contexts will need to be examined. However the application of systems theory to therapy has a major difference from the analysis presented in this chapter in that it does not have a theory of breakdown. It is claimed that all apparent disorder may be analysed in terms of context. Whether this is the case is an empirical issue; however at this stage it seems unlikely that such a position will be tenable. Serious individual psychological dysfunction can be substantial and seen across many contexts, each of which no doubt creates the setting for the disturbed behaviour, but also to which that individual contributes significantly.

Whilst family therapy has generally stopped short of an attempt to understand the implications of family functioning for the individual, different schools of family therapy have focused on some of the features of intentional causality that we have described. Much early interest centred on the origins of schizophrenia and the role of double-bind communications (Bateson et al. 1956). Bateson argued that communication has a content and a frame (meta-communication) and if the recipient is not to be confused, these must be congruent. Where they are contradictory and there is an implied prohibition on accurately reading one of the elements of the contradiction, then the participants will be confused. Bateson suggested that some symptoms of schizophrenia might represent attempts to bring order to the confusion, for instance through the generation of a clear fixed delusional belief, and others might reflect the confusion, for instance in the disturbed logic of formal thought disorder.
This is close to our discussion of the possible impact on the developing child of confusing and contradictory communications, with implications for the integration of states of mind and the self (Section 8.3.5; cf. also the discussion at the end of Section 1.4.3). However, Bateson’s theory was expressed in terms of an attempted solution to current relationship difficulties, rather than a developmental process. His theory of schizophrenia is almost certainly incorrect. However subsequent family systems approaches especially those of the ‘Milan School’ have analysed family functioning in terms of communication deviance (Palazzoli et al. 1978), and have derived interventions that have been designed to lead to clarity.

Another ‘school’ has placed emphasis on the organization of the family (Minuchin 1974; Minuchin and Fishman 1981). Presenting problems are analysed in terms of current relationships, and are postulated to arise where the patient occupies a position that is inappropriate to his/her developmental stage and that of the family. For instance in the example of the depressed woman, her role as mother of young children might have been taken over by the grandmother, leaving the mother functioning more like one of the children than a parent. The maintenance of the depression might then be seen to be related to this position in the family, and the solution might be for the mother to regain some of her role. This approach emphasizes the importance of family structure for children, and therefore addresses containment in development in a way that has points of contact with psychoanalytic and social learning theory-based approaches.

Other developments in family therapy have included the system of the family and therapist in the analysis (McNamee and Gergen 1992). This has therefore moved away from a description of the intentionality of the presenting problem, to one that addresses behaviours seen in therapy. This is clearly related to an issue that arises in all psychotherapeutic approaches, namely one of the identity of the metaframe. As an observer I may be able to identify the frame and set of rules within which a person is functioning; however when I engage in the therapeutic relationship a joint frame must be established. This after all will provide the container in which different representations of actions may be explored. In doing this, however, the therapist enters the frame that he/she is attempting to understand. Family therapists have for a long time made use of one way screens and teams of observers in an attempt to commentate from the outside, but of course at the point where such groupings also participate in the therapeutic process the same considerations will apply. While it is the case that in order to understand the intentionality of behaviour within therapy it will be important to include the metarules of that engagement, including the role of therapist variables such as age gender and professional identity, our analysis
would predict that behaviours seen in therapy can also be understood in relation to individual and family biography. The therapeutic task then is one of determining which sets of rules, representations, and actions are most relevant.

8.4.7 Attachment theory

Attachment theory differs from those discussed so far in that it has not developed in relation to psychological treatments. However some of the research findings are of direct relevance to the issue of the intentional explanation of disorder. Infants who have been assessed as ‘secure’, and those who have displayed behaviour that may be classified ‘insecure avoidant’ and ‘insecure ambivalent’ appear to have a coherent strategy with respect to attachment. It is not clear whether the insecure patterns have implications for subsequent disorder. On the one hand they do not appear to be adaptive ways of dealing with distress and it is possible that with repetition, lack of containment and splitting, along the lines that we have outlined, might occur. Equally there may be sufficient flexibility for change. A third ‘disorganized’ insecure category may represent already at 12 months of age an organization of internalized representations which has the intrusive and unpredictable qualities that we have associated with disorder. Infants in this group are described as showing sequential displays of contradictory behaviour patterns especially on reunion with the parent. Examples include ‘immediately following strong proximity seeking and a bright full greeting with raised arms, the infant moves to the wall or into the centre of the room and stills or freezes with a ‘dazed’ expression’ (Main and Solomon 1990). Disorganized infants are described as also showing simultaneous display of contradictory behaviour patterns. An infant approaches her mother ‘by moving backward towards on her stomach, face averted’. It seems that either in sequence, or simultaneously these infants show behaviours that reflect incompatible, intrusive representations. Each may separately preserve the conditions for action, but they are contradictory and do not amount to a coherent strategy. In other instances infants exhibit ‘freezing’ or ‘dazed expressions’ lasting for 20 seconds or more, even whilst being held by a parent, suggesting that the conditions of any kind of action are undermined, are common. The category ‘disorganized’ is rare in samples that are not considered to be at risk, but common in high-risk groups especially where there has been maltreatment (Main and Hesse 1990). Main and Hesse propose that attachment disorganization develops in response to frightening or frightened behaviours by a parent, which act by facing the infant with an impossible dilemma. In the case of frightening behaviours the parent is simultaneously the source of fear and the person to whom the infant expects to turn for comfort. Frightened behaviours by a parent create anxiety while at the same time
undermining the infant’s confidence in the parent as a source of comfort. Thus events that imply conflicting representations, lead to an attempt to maintain contradictory actions, or to no action.

Disorganized attachment may also arise from parental behaviours that threaten the integrity of the metarepresentational system. Lyons-Ruth et al. (1999) assessed a group of behaviours that she termed ‘disrupted affective communication between mother and infant’. These included misidentification of the emotional signals of the infant, and simultaneously eliciting and rejecting emotions associated with attachment needs. Disrupted maternal affective communication was associated with disorganized attachment after the effects of frightened/frightening behaviours had been taken into account. We discussed earlier in the chapter the likely effect of communications that confuse the child as to what kind of interaction is taking place. Lack of clarity of these metacommunications may affect the child’s capacity to monitor which set of rules applies, hence undermining the very basis of intentional processes, and, crucially, social action.

The developmental path of disorganized infants is of great interest to the account proposed here in that often it is replaced at four or five years of age by a ‘controlling’ pattern (Lyons-Ruth and Jacobvitz 1999). This is characterized by taking control of interactions with the parent through bossing her about, insulting her, or controlling through caregiving (Cassidy and Marvin 1991). In some respects this may simply be an attempt to control parental behaviours that are frightening and confusing. They may also reflect an attempted ‘resolution’ of the threats to intentionality that we have discussed earlier. We suggested that in the face of experiences that require conflicting representations, and hence may lead to contradictory actions, one solution is to opt for one unified representation, that omits information that is incompatible with those actions. This provides a basis for coherent action, but at the price of accurate representation of previous and current experiences. Similarly, controlling behaviour may provide a solution to the problem of establishing a shared metarepresentational frame with a parent. Instead of having to monitor the confusing metarepresentational cues provided by the parent, such as those assessed by Lyons-Ruth as confusing affective communications, the child imposes one overarching frame.

Although attachment research has recently started to address the implications of confusing communications regarding metarepresentational frames, there has not yet been an explicit approach to the issue. This may in part be because the available measures present unequivocal attachment stressors, such as separation from a parent at one year, and observe how the subject handles it. However in close relationships, for example in families, many of the interactions
are not about attachment. Rather there are several major arenas of interaction including discipline/family organization, safety, play, and companionship, in addition to attachment (Hill et al. 2003). This means that it is crucial that family members are able to establish jointly which arena, or domain they are in, before they know how to proceed. Establishing the domain involves clarifying the underlying rules of relating, or what Bugental has called ‘the algorithms of social life’ (Bugental 2000). For example a child’s crying may signify distress resulting from a perceived threat, or from frustration over being thwarted. In the first instance there is an attachment need, and the crying is a cue for the participants to enter attachment domain. Once this has happened the participants interpret each others’ actions in the light of their shared knowledge of the rules. Actions are based both on the specific instances of behaviour interpreted in that way, and on a more general awareness of a child’s need to be comforted when distressed. The parent interprets the child’s moment to moment expression of emotions within an expectation that he/she will be helped by emotional warmth and physical comfort, and may be further worried by evidence that the threat has not been removed. By contrast if the crying is interpreted as a cue for the discipline domain none of these interpretations will apply, and there will be an expectation that a quite different range of actions will resolve the problem. A parent may for example respond with anger or by ignoring the child. More generally there is a dynamic interplay between domains in family life, making demands on the capacity of the members to create clear, shared interpretative frames (Hill et al. 2003). Confusion may arise through misidentification of domains, unsynchronized entry into domains, incomplete or ineffective action within a domain, or premature closure of domain-specific action. For example, if family members interpret the attachment-related distress of a child as a disciplinary issue, they may respond in a way that increases the distress. Equally the introduction of attachment concerns into a disciplinary process may lead to ineffective responses.

Working both within a psychoanalytic and attachment framework, Fonagy and colleagues (e.g. Fonagy and Target 1997) have argued that the extent to which a child is able to use the ‘intentional stance’ in social interactions is central to development. This decentres the analysis from one in which the focus is the child’s intentionality, to one concerned with the child’s appreciation of another’s intentionality. While accepting that there are neurodevelopmental contributions to acquiring the capacity to understand other people’s behaviours in terms of mental states, such as beliefs, desires, and fears, Fonagy and Target see the quality of the child’s early social experiences as crucial. The early attachment relationships are the setting in which the child has the experience (or not) of having behaviours and emotions linked to intentional states such
as wishes or fears by a caregiver, and so comes to see him or her self in this way, developing what Fonagy and Target refer to as reflective function. In turn the child interprets the behaviours of the caregiver in terms of intentional states, provided these are experienced as predominantly benign. In the face of maltreatment the child may inhibit reflective processes, in an attempt to deal with the possibility that the mental state of a parent includes hatred, cruelty or indifference. This has implications for the child’s understanding of his/her own emotions and behaviours, and those of other people.

### 8.5 Summary

In this chapter we have considered explanation of psychological disorder in terms of intentional processes. We approached the problem in two ways, firstly, in Section 8.2, as it were top-down, via consideration of the logic of representation, and secondly, in Section 8.3, as it were bottom-up, by considering conditions of intentionality in biological systems. We noted in Section 8.2.1 that radical error in intentionality is a matter of persistent misrepresentation or persistent rule-conflict, and that these admit of psychological explanation in terms of avoidance and re-enactment of unacceptable outcomes. The broad notion of trauma and the cognitive paradoxes to which it gives rise was approached from the direction of post-empiricist epistemology, and via Wittgenstein’s early work on the limits of thought, in Section 8.2.2. Reference was made to post-traumatic stress reactions in the following subsection, to be taken up in the next chapter. Possibilities of disorder created by higher-order intentional processes were considered in Section 8.2.3. Along with the notion of threat to psychic integrity comes the notion of psychic defences, and this was explored in Section 8.2.4, using two quite different sources. Firstly, analogy with threats to scientific theory, relatively open to view and well-understood. And secondly, with reference to psychoanalytic theory, where the psychic defences have been first identified and explained. Several defences were alluded to, including simple denial, splitting, projection, and narcissism. More intellectualized defences, and intellectualization of the primitive defences, become possible in the context of an explicit theory of mind. Defences typically entail costs as well as benefits, and in the special case of psychic defences these costs involve perpetual movement between avoidance and re-enactment. In this paradoxical sense the problem coincides with the solution.

From a biological perspective it was evident that where rules of interpretation are hard-wired or there is limited scope for the acquisition of new representations, events that fall outside the range of the rules that are able to underpin action are not recognized as such, or lead to disorganized action or inaction. The position is
different where multiple sets of rules of intentional processes can be generated. The elaboration of these intentional processes in psychological and social development, seen most dramatically in childhood, provides the basis for flexible, intelligent, and creative development. The integrity of intentional processes is however no longer guaranteed. The child may cope with trauma and other threats in development through the creation of contradictory representations, some that are accurate but cannot underpin action, and others that are inaccurate but lead to action, and especially action that retains crucial relationships with adults (Section 8.3.2). This creates the possibility of internal disruptions of the integrity of intentional processes and hence intentional origins of psychological disorder. Further mechanisms include the generation of mental representations that are either insufficiently differentiated or too narrow (Section 8.3.3), representations that are either lacking in sufficient stability or unavailable for testing and revision (Section 8.3.4), and a metarepresentational system that is unable to monitor and integrate individual and interpersonal processes (Section 8.3.5).

In Section 8.4 the nature of explanations of disorder in a range of theoretical, research, and therapeutic frameworks was discussed in the light of the operation and disruption of intentional processes.

References


This page intentionally left blank
9.1 Introduction

We are now in a position to take further our consideration of causal processes in biology and psychology in relation to disorder. The purpose of this is to outline the way in which these causal processes might operate. Emphasis will be on causal routes for which there is good evidence. Where the evidence does not point strongly in any particular direction, we shall rely on theory and some speculation. After all if this enterprise to be useful or valid, it should be capable of going beyond the evidence. We shall consider three kinds of syndrome, schizophrenia, anxiety disorders, mainly obsessive-compulsion and post-traumatic stress disorder, and personality disorder. We have selected these, obviously not with any aim of covering all of psychopathology, but because they illustrate various kinds of issues in the explanation of disorder. Schizophrenia has been addressed by all or most orientations in psychiatry and clinical psychology, with theories about it from practically every point of view, invoking non-intentional and intentional causal pathways of various kinds. The task is set, therefore, of assessing which are valid and how they hang together. Obsessive-compulsive disorder has the special interest of suggesting alternative aetiological models, one of which emphasizes intentionality while the other posits non-intentional causal pathways. Post-traumatic stress disorder is included because of the clarity of its intentionality, its relation to environmental stressors, which is indeed (unusually) built into the definition of the disorder. The relatively transparent nature of post-traumatic stress reactions may serve as a partial model for more obscure problems, as will be discussed. Personality disorder represents both a problem and an opportunity for research and clinical practice. The problem arises from the attempt to encompass the complexity of personality functioning in diagnostic categories, and the opportunity from the recognition of the role of the person in our understanding of psychiatric disturbance. This demands an analysis that is developmental, and that attends to the interplay between intentional and non-intentional processes.

In what follows we use diagnostic terms because they will orient the reader and provide general pointers to boundaries between conditions. However this
does not imply a commitment either to the assumption that each is unitary, or that explanations might not cross their boundaries.

9.2 **Schizophrenia**

9.2.1 **Introduction: syndromes**

Schizophrenia has a central place in the practice, theory, and research endeavours of psychiatry and clinical psychology. The term probably covers a range of conditions with different aetiologies, although their separation has not been achieved with any certainty. A distinction that has had substantial utility is that between Type 1 and Type 2 syndromes (Crowe 1980; Tsuang 1993). The Type 1 syndrome refers typically to the symptoms of acute episodes characterized by delusions (firmly held, culturally inappropriate erroneous beliefs) hallucinations (perceptual experiences without basis in the external world) and disorders of thinking. The Type 2 syndrome comprises the so-called negative symptoms of restriction of emotional range, poverty of thought and speech, decreased motor activity, apathy, lack of spontaneity, and diminished interpersonal interactions. These syndromes are not distinct and the same individuals often show signs of both. However there is some evidence that the inheritance of each may be distinctive and that there may therefore be differences in aetiology. In this consideration of schizophrenia (and this caveat will become familiar throughout this chapter) we cannot assume that our review of possible causal explanations will apply equally across all cases. Nevertheless studies to which reference is made have used a standardized definition of schizophrenia, either that of the World Health Organisation or the American Psychiatric Association so that in general the clinical picture presented by subjects in the investigations will be broadly comparable.

9.2.2 **Biochemical contributions**

Some of the earliest ‘biological’ explanations of schizophrenia provided examples of non-intentional causal accounts. The ‘dopamine hypothesis’ contained the following propositions. Amphetamines can lead in normal individuals to a disturbed state that closely resembles that seen in sufferers with schizophrenia. Amphetamines increase the level of dopamine in the relevant parts of the brain (see later) and drugs that are effective in episodes of schizophrenia also block the effects of dopamine at receptor sites. It is therefore possible that an episode of schizophrenia is the result of excess dopamine. The explanation is that the level of the dopamine in the system will be outside the normal range, or that there is deception of the system with levels of dopamine that might be expected in the presence of certain sensory stimuli, but occurring in their absence.
With respect to this biochemical system then there would be an intentional explanation (e.g. deception), but with respect to stimuli that are relevant to the intentionality of beliefs or experiences then there is an intrusion and a non-intentional explanation. Episodes might be precipitated by psychological factors if for instance these led to increased arousal, that was associated with a consequent alteration of dopamine levels. Then there would be an intentional explanation for the altered dopamine level, and a non-intentional explanation of the altered state of mind and behaviour. The origin of this susceptibility to altered dopamine might be genetic. Evidence from twin and adoption studies indicates a substantial heritability for schizophrenia, although the nature of the genetic contribution is unclear (Roberts 1991).

9.2.3 **Neuropathology and neuropsychology**

Evidence for a neuropathological deficit in schizophrenia is increasing. The area of the brain that is most consistently identified is the parahippocampal gyrus on the median side of the temporal lobe (Jakob and Beckman 1986; Falkai et al. 1988). How might this contribute to the development of schizophrenia? Medial temporal lobe structures are believed to have a crucial role in the integration and processing of the inputs from a wide range of areas of the brain. They act as a kind of ‘gate’ for information, selecting only certain items for further processing (Frith and Done 1988; Gray et al. 1991). It is possible, then, that at least some patients with schizophrenia have deficits in information processing. Gray et al. (1991) have proposed that a central deficit in the functioning of the schizophrenic patient is found in a problem in the linking of stored memories to current stimuli. As we saw in Chapter 6 the ability to do this is present in very young infants. Repeated stimuli are of great interest provided they are accompanied by variations. Clearly variations may be detected only by comparison with previous, remembered stimuli. This theory suggests that for the schizophrenic patient each stimulus appears as if new. The authors cite in support of this, findings that schizophrenic patients show deficits in experimental conditions that test the influence of stored memories of regularities of previous input on current perception. It is hypothesized that in the acute schizophrenic state the individual is unable to determine which aspects of sensory stimuli are familiar and which are novel, and so attends to incidental stimuli. Those aspects of monitoring the surroundings and the self that are usually carried out unconsciously have to be done consciously and the individual is overloaded by the task. This leads to disorientation of thought and speech. This theory is linked to the dopamine hypothesis via results of experiments on learning in rats. Rats, like other animals, including humans, can be trained to respond to a conditioned stimulus when it is paired to an
unconditioned stimulus. Famously, Pavlov’s dogs learned to salivate to the sound of a bell, after the bell had been paired with the sight of food. However if rats have been exposed to the conditioned stimulus in the absence of the unconditioned stimulus prior to the pairing of the two, they take longer to link the conditioned to the unconditioned stimulus. In other words their previous experience of the conditioned stimulus has taught them that it is not linked to a reward (such as food) and so they take longer to adopt a different ‘interpretation’. In the language of our previous discussion they have one internalized set of rules for the interpretation of the stimulus, and take time to replace it with another. This phenomenon of latent inhibition can be abolished with amphetamine and restored by the administration of a drug that blocks the effect of dopamine; a drug of the same type as that used in the treatment of schizophrenia.

Gray and colleagues (1991) have argued that these deficits arise from an interruption of the brain’s capacity to integrate sensory inputs with a person’s current motor state and stored memories, which is required in order to make judgements about current circumstances and the possible need for action. They propose that this deficit is caused by excess dopamine activity and so they postulate a non-intentional origin for the limited information-processing capacity of the brain. This reduces the ability of the individual to generate internalized sets of rules, and to use them in perception and the regulation of action. Under certain conditions, say those where the perceptual demands are high, the task may be too great and thoughts and behaviour become disorganized. Thus against this background, any particular episode may have intentional origins in the extent of sensory overload. As we saw in Chapter 7 the concept of ‘design’ is derived from a consideration of organism and environment. This model postulates a combination of the two in the generation of the psychotic (schizophrenic) breakdown. Whether environmental factors appear to be important will depend upon the critical range over which they make a difference. It is possible that at least for some individuals the limitation of information processing is so profound that all or most levels of environmental demand will be sufficient to lead to psychosis, and for others that it is of an order that some commonly encountered environmental requirements can be accommodated whilst others cannot. Then differences in environment will be seen to be critical to the incidence of psychosis. Clearly the earlier non-intentional account and this one may be combined. For instance a deficit in the regulation of dopamine might lead to an increase in its level, thus impeding the information-processing capability of the individual and hence precipitating psychosis.

What then of the origins of the hypothesized deficit? We return to the neuropathology of schizophrenia. One possibility is that neuronal damage occurs
shortly prior to the onset of the first psychotic episode, so that the episode is an immediate consequence of the development of the lesion. This would suggest a degenerative brain condition, however the evidence does not support this (Murray et al. 1988). It is more likely that there is a disturbance in brain development, either before birth, or in the first few months of life. Here we enter an area of some controversy. The case has been made that environmental factors such as viral infection or perinatal injury, may contribute to the neurodevelopmental deficit (Jones and Murray 1991), and conversely that the deficit generally arises from genetic influences (Roberts 1991).

9.2.4 Neurodevelopment and psychological development

The proposition that schizophrenia may arise from a neurodevelopmental deficit takes us back to our consideration of development, design, and intentional causal processes. If the deficit is present at an early stage, what might be the consequences in childhood? Further neuropsychological hypotheses are of great interest in this respect. Frith (1992) has argued that the deficit in schizophrenia is in the link between willed intentions and the monitoring of actions. There are similarities between Frith’s model and that of Gray et al. (1991) in that both imply disruptions to the sense of self (Hemsley 1998). Under experimental conditions schizophrenic patients have been shown to be poorer than other individuals at correcting their actions when they are unable to see their effects, which suggests that their central monitoring is poorer (Mlakar et al. 1994).

A consequence of such a deficit is likely to be that the schizophrenic sufferer does not recognize that he is the cause of his own actions, and this may form the basis of the experience of having ones actions controlled by another agent, and by analogy with action, the experience of thoughts being controlled. There is a failure of (meta)representation of the individual’s own mental activities. Frith has also emphasized that a problem for many schizophrenics is to understand context. In human communication it is necessary to understand the meaning of the words, and also the way in which they are being used in a particular context, and schizophrenics tend to be bad at this. In other words they have difficulties in identifying metacommunications accurately. If these hypotheses are correct, and at this stage they must be viewed as informed speculations, the person with schizophrenia suffers from deficits in processes which in infancy appear to be crucial to the development of the self, and its metarepresentational capabilities. The linking of memory to event provides a sense of continuity over time, the sense of agency repeated over time and place creates continuity, and the accurate identification of context links self to different circumstances.

If it is hypothesized that the neurodevelopmental deficit is present in infancy, is it possible that analogous psychological deficits might be present also early in
development? If so what would be the implications for the infant’s experience of the caregiver, and the caregiver’s experience of the infant? We do not know the answer to these questions, but our speculations will focus on information processing and the development of the self. We may guess that the infant whose capacity to generate internalized regularities and to detect and enjoy novelty is impaired might appear rather puzzled and unresponsive, which might impede the development of pleasurable, rhythmic, face to face interactions which are so characteristic of the first months of life, and appear to form the basis of subsequent forms of communication and relating. Difficulties in understanding interpersonal context might have similar consequences. We do not know whether the hypothesized deficit might be overcome, at least in part, by the use of appropriate strategies. Clearly the generation of expectations and departures from them arises both from the capacity of the infant, and the nature of the stimuli, provided predominantly in infancy by a caregiver. Might some parents be more able than others to provide sufficient scaffolding on which to create such internalized rules, perhaps through substantial repetition, or more marked variations against such a background? Conversely might some parents give up the task of close sustained interactions in the face of an apparently uncomprehending infant? Such ideas suppose that limitations in generating expectancies, and in selecting salient cues are present in the child from an early age, and the role of parents is to find ways of compensating for them. However, we have reviewed in the last chapter mechanisms whereby early experience may undermine the metarepresentational system. We argued that where caregivers create confusion as to what kind of rules apply in interactions, the infant may have difficulty organizing representations of experience into coherent domains of social interaction, hence undermining effective social action. We suggested also that some infants and young children may achieve a ‘solution’ to this problem through simplified metarepresentational systems, such as those underpinning controlling attachment. However if such a resolution is not achieved, and especially if the child is exposed to persistent disrupted communications, a chronic deficit in the capacity to understand social contexts may arise. This possibility has not been tested directly, however recent studies of risk factors for psychosis suggest there may be routes that involve severe childhood adversities such as loss or trauma (Agid et al. 1999; Garety et al. 2001). Consideration of such possibilities highlights the way in which the development of representations and metarepresentations might be impeded or facilitated. They entail variants of the design stance explanation, in the sense outlined in Chapter 7. The common strand is the acquisition of the rules for the interpretation of events. The extent to which these are hard-wired, how pervasive they are, and extent to which they are open to modification is not prejudged.
We should be clear that there are other possibilities. For instance it could be argued that the neurodevelopmental deficit, whilst present from early childhood, is not expressed until the time when schizophrenia is commonly first seen, in adolescence, perhaps as a result of neuronal maturation at that age. Then our analysis might not apply. It seems, however, that at least a significant number of children who are at risk for schizophrenia do show differences from other children. Studies of the children of parents with schizophrenia have shown that they have more attentional deficits, and that these are associated with subsequent social insensitivity, social indifference, and social isolation (Cornblatt et al. 1992). Clearly studies such as this are complicated by the presence of parents with schizophrenia who might have the same or similar hypothesized deficits as their children, however they provide some preliminary evidence that deficits may be present in childhood which could disrupt early parent–child interactions, with implications for subsequent development.

In our discussion of the design stance it was emphasized that even where intentional causal processes are hard-wired, in humans the ‘wiring’ may be influenced by experience. If the development of the visual system is influenced by visual experience then why not information processing? In rats the phenomenon of latent inhibition is not seen if they have not been handled during the first days of life (Weiner et al. 1987) which suggests that early experiences may have long-term structural implications. This does not lead us away from the role of genetic influences, but rather to an interactive theory in which the information-processing capacity is central and the origins are in genetically determined variability and contributions from early intentional causal processes.

Further indirect support comes from studies where both inheritance and environment have been assessed. In the Finnish Adoption Study the rate of schizophrenia or schizophrenic spectrum disorders in the adopted children of schizophrenic parents was 30% compared with 15% in a control group. However these differences were apparent only in a comparison of adopting families which were rated (without knowledge of the adopted children’s mental health) as disturbed (Tienari 1990). In the context of a developmental interactional account the capacity for multiple representational systems may be important to outcome. Thus the infant with the hypothesized deficit may as a result of a parent’s ability to compensate, develop a secure attachment relationship, which will increase the chances of instrumental and interpersonal competence. This may act as a protective factor in relation to a persistent deficit and the risk of psychosis. Conversely the development of insecure attachment may increase the risk. Children who as infants have been classified as ‘insecure’, later in life elicit fewer supportive responses from their teachers than those rated ‘secure’. If a similar effect applies between parents and children,
and if the vulnerability of infants makes it more difficult for parents to establish a secure attachment relationship, then these parents might later be less supportive and more critical of their children.

If the developmental processes of the kind described here are important then schizophrenia may appear after many years of mismatched and unsatisfactory interactions. There is ample evidence that the emotional atmosphere in the home, and especially the level of criticism, hostility, and over involvement, (which together are termed ‘expressed emotion’) influences the course of schizophrenia (Bebbington and Kuipers 1994; Butzlaff and Hooley 1998). Mueser et al. (1998) found high rates of traumatic events in patients with schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, and Garety et al. (2001) reported that severe trauma was associated with psychotic symptoms unresponsive to medication. The mechanism is unclear, but probably entail interactional processes with mutual influences between parental and (adult) child behaviours.

9.2.5 **Psychosis, certainty and action**

Is it possible to take further the account of the formation of psychotic symptoms, especially those of the acute phase, delusions and hallucinations? The simplest dopamine hypothesis would predict that the symptoms are the consequence of over stimulation of neurones; a non-intentional explanation. However it may be that the origin and nature of these abnormal beliefs and experiences is not qualitatively different from those of individuals who are not psychotic. The diagnostic classifications and research instruments create a sharp distinction but in practice it is not clear-cut (Strauss 1992). If we put this together with the neuropsychological theories of schizophrenia we may emerge with a different formulation. The theory provides an explanation of disordered, chaotic, overwhelmed, and unpredictable thoughts and behaviours. Delusions and hallucinations are by contrast, clear, unambiguous, and relatively or absolutely uninfluenced by evidence. Consider further contrasts. The experience of self predicted by the neuropsychological theory is fragmented and discontinuous in time; the experience of self in relation to delusions and hallucinations is likely to be coherent, and to have continuity. The experience of external reality where stimuli require constant reassessment, and where context is indecipherable is likely to be one of uncertainty in which high vigilance is required. The experience of external reality through delusions and hallucinations is likely to contain substantial predictability. The neuropsychological theory predicts a deficit in information processing which renders action impossible or at best fragmented and inconsistent; delusions and hallucinations will often have clear implications for action. For these reasons the symptoms at
least of some sufferers may be seen as the outcome of coping strategies which restore coherence to representations, and provide a basis for action. They are possible attempts to restore the integrity of intentional causal processes. Evidence in support of this proposition comes from several sources.

Studies of the attributional style of deluded and hallucinated patients have shown that, compared with non-psychotic individuals, they make use of less evidence in coming to conclusions, and when making causal inferences they ascribe more global, stable, and external origins to events (Bentall et al. 1991; Garety and Freeman 1999). This is evident in relation to tasks that have nothing to do with their abnormal beliefs. It seems possible therefore that they are using a particular strategy for making inferences; that they have a characteristic set of internalized rules for the interpretation of events. This is a style that restricts attention to incoming stimuli and creates certainty. The attributions have much in common with depressive (global, stable) cognitions but favour externality over internality. It could be argued that such external (paranoid) attributions provide a better basis for action than the depressive.

Roberts (1991) compared currently deluded patients, with patients who had recovered from delusions, and with psychiatric nurses and Anglican Ordinands, on measures of purpose in life and depression. The groups with the highest purpose in life scores were the deluded and the ordinands, with the nurses slightly lower, and those who had recovered from delusions substantially (and statistically significantly) lower than all other groups. The recovered patients were also the most depressed. The explanation could be in part that the content of more of those with persistent delusions was grandiose or erotic, although persecutory delusions were equally common in both groups. It seems then that the delusions whilst in some respects maladaptive, also provided coherence and meaning. Strauss (1992) has similarly described contrasting examples from a major follow-up study of schizophrenic patients. ‘At the two year follow-up, a woman who was still very delusional was functioning socially in a way better than many ‘normal’ people. She was working, looking after her child, and taking care of her house on a relatively limited income, all while frequently being psychotic. Another patient I saw, a woman whose symptoms had essentially disappeared, was sitting in darkened room in her house, and had not worked or had contact with friends for most of the time since I had seen her at the initial evaluation, two years before.’ This does not demonstrate that the delusions were important to effective functioning and action, but it is consistent with that proposition. However a patient from the study of Roberts, who had recovered from delusions expressed himself directly on the issue, ‘I always felt everything I said was worthless, but as Jesus everything
I said was important—it came from God... I just want to hide away, I don’t feel able to cope with people... I always feel lonely, I don’t know what to say.’

In these examples we see the operation of compensatory mechanisms, comparable to those of the increase in heart rate in response to blood loss. However there is the added element that we described in the previous chapter. Intentionality in psychological processes entails the experience of continuity, coherence, and efficacy. Where the environment is reasonably benign and decipherable, and where action is possible and effective, these experiences are supported. Threats arising either internally or externally or in combination, may be countered via mechanisms that entail sacrifice in order to restore meaning and action. The sacrifice of accuracy of perception in the pursuit of clarity and action may be a particular (but not exclusive) schizophrenic strategy.

9.3 Anxiety disorders

9.3.1 Intentionality, development and content

Central to the anxiety disorders is excessive or unrealistic anxiety. Various kinds of anxiety disorder may be distinguished according to the object of the fear and the behavioural and physiological responses. The main kinds of anxiety disorder defined by DSM-IV (American Psychiatric Association 1994) include phobias, characterized by avoidance, obsessive-compulsion, in which anxiety is relieved by compulsive neutralizing rituals, generalized anxiety disorder, involving persistent worrying, panic disorder, comprising unexpected anxiety attacks, and post-traumatic stress disorder, involving persistent re-experiencing of the trauma, avoidance and emotional numbing.

In this section we consider anxiety disorders using the approach to psychological function and dysfunction proposed in previous chapters. The approach to psychological function takes intentionality, embedded in developmental processes, to be fundamental. Underpinning this core assumption is the very general idea that it is principles of intentionality which are going to deliver causal explanations of biopsychological phenomena. Without this background philosophical assumption, intentionality, involving meaningful connections between the contents of intentional states and processes, will tend to be neglected or regarded as secondary, and in particular will not be put to work in the explanation of psychological disorder, where meaning seems in any case to have run out.

In the case of anxiety disorders, unlike some other kinds of psychopathology, we can begin with a good grasp of the relevant ‘normal’ function and its intentionality. As discussed under the heading of functional semantics in Chapter 4 (Section 4.4), ‘normal’ is most readily understood in this sort of context in terms
of evolutionary biology: the normal function of a biological or biopsychological system is that which it was selected in evolution to serve (Millikan 1984, 1986). The normal function of anxiety is relatively easy to define in broad terms, as involving detection of danger to the living being. Thus, e.g. Eysenck (1992, p. 4):

In considering the potential value of a cognitive approach to anxiety, it is important to consider anxiety from the evolutionary perspective. Anxiety is an unpleasant and aversive state, and it is perhaps not immediately obvious what (if any) biological significance it might have. However, it is clear that rapid detection of the early warning signs of danger possesses considerable survival value. … The key purpose or function of anxiety is probably to facilitate the detection of danger or threat in potentially threatening environments.

Given the function of detection of danger, anxiety typically involves intensification of and selection in various pre-attentional and attentional processes, including hypervigilance towards and mental preoccupation with danger, and danger and safety signals (e.g. Gray 1982; Oatley and Johnson-Laird 1987; Eysenck 1992).

It has been assumed throughout this essay that psychological functions generally are dedicated to action. In the case of anxiety this means generating solutions to the problem of the perceived danger. Once detected, threat has to be appropriately responded to. Relatively primitive (from the evolutionary point of view) ways of doing this include behavioural avoidance and physical destruction of the source of danger. Avoidance and destruction have in common that they get rid of the danger: they get the living being out of harm’s way, or vice versa. A different kind of coping strategy can be called ‘problem-solving’, as opposed to problem avoidance or problem destruction. It involves interacting with the source of danger in such an adaptive way that after all it does no harm to the agent.

It is also relatively easy to see ways in which the function of anxiety is elaborated in phylogenesis and ontogenesis. Danger comes to include not only assaults on physical integrity and deprivation of biological necessities, but also, e.g. in social beings, threat to status in the group, and in human beings, threat to various aspects of ‘self-esteem’. Development also elaborates the response side of anxiety. Increased cognitive resources create more possibilities of problem-solving. Specifically, the behavioural coping skills of avoidance and attack find mental analogues (analogues in mental representations) in living beings with the requisite cognitive capacity. This means, roughly, that some possible dangers need not be thought about at all, or if at all, that they can be disqualified in the imagination. There are also problem-solving analogues within the realm of mental representations, which involve making plans as to how to cope with the difficult situation if and when it arises.
The detection of danger and the solving of the perceived problem are intimately linked. This implies that along with detection of danger, appraisal of coping skills is fundamental to anxiety (Lazarus and Averill 1972; Eysenck 1992). Hence perceived absence of being able to cope, in the form of perceived unpredictability or uncontrollability of significant events, is critical in the generation of anxiety, in animals (Mineka and Kihlstrom 1978) and in human beings (Olah et al. 1984; Edwards 1988; Endler and Parker 1990). If, in the face of threat, no coping skills can be found which work, the result tends to be runaway anxiety (panic).

According to the approach taken here, principles of intentionality and development of the kind sketched above make up the foundations of the theory of anxiety. They constitute the core of theory in the sense of post-empiricist epistemology (Section 1.3.1). Core assumptions, it may be recalled, are less concerned with particular facts established by particular methods, and more concerned with defining the nature and aetiology of the phenomena, and formulating critical questions about them. They are at work in the selection and interpretation of data, and they typically drive research programmes.

The assumptions about anxiety sketched so far are intended to be relatively uncontroversial in the sense that they are supported by a great deal of empirical data and are compatible with many other relevant, well-supported approaches. The question concerns rather what is at the core of the theory. We have begun with intentionality in the context of development, but there are certainly other places for the theory of anxiety to start. For example Gray (1982) takes as his main problem the question as to what brain systems serve anxiety, and approaches this by studying the operation and effects of anxiolytic pharmacological agents. Eysenck (1992) applies another paradigm to anxiety, namely the explanation of individual differences in terms of personality traits. Another approach is study of what are inevitable side-effects of the normal function of anxiety, such as lowered interest in (lowered concentration on, and motivation for) other situations and tasks (e.g. Williams et al. 1992).

Important though all these models and accompanying methodologies are, they are designed to focus on issues other than the intentionality of anxiety and its developmental complexities. While such differences in emphasis and direction are already in the models of normal anxiety, they are perhaps most apparent in application to the problem of disorder.

When applied to disorder, the model proposed here defines the primary problems as being in the area of intentional and non-intentional processes and possible interactions between them. Critical questions include: to what extent are biologically normal, intentional processes operating in cases of anxiety disorder? At what point if any are they disrupted by non-intentional causal processes?
The assumption that the anxiety system functions to facilitate detection of and response to threat is a methodological principle rather than an empirical generalization (a distinction discussed in Section 4.5). It defines the ‘normal’ case, and by implication the ‘abnormal’, this distinction being most readily understood in this sort of context in terms of evolutionary biology, as already indicated. The methodological principle envisages that normal function can break down. This is to say, the anxiety system may run free of the detection of danger. In this case the system is functioning abnormally, i.e., it is not serving the function for which it was selected. Abnormal function can be caused in various ways, but all are variations on abnormalities in the physiological structures and functions which realize the anxiety system, such that this system operates in the absence of appropriate (in the sense of evolutionary theory) information processing.

At this point of course we encounter squarely the problems posed by anxiety disorder. Commonly the person will say what his or her anxiety is about, will describe the intentional object of the fear, but the anxiety is inappropriate to this object, being either excessive or unrealistic in relation to it. It may be inferred that in such cases the anxiety system is operating in a biologically abnormal way, in the absence of appropriate (in the sense of evolutionary theory) information processing, in which case it would be appropriate to look for neurological or cognitive ‘design flaws’ (cf. Gray 1982; Eysenck 1992; Williams et al. 1992).

On the other hand, it would be agreed that the person’s self-report is no infallible guide here. Absence of an account of perceived real threat by the person so far hardly counts against there being one. The cognitive processing which permeates anxiety is not necessarily conscious, in the sense of conscious awareness or verbal report (Tyrer et al. 1978; Dixon 1981; Kemp-Wheeler and Hill 1987). The assumption that anxiety has intentionality, specifically perception of threat, is thus independent of whether or not the person is aware of, or can say, what the perceived danger is. In general, the information-processing which mediates between perception and action (affective responses and behaviour) may be unconscious, in the sense of being unavailable for, and perhaps misrepresented by, self-report (Sections 1.2.2, 1.3.2).

The question arises, therefore, as to how we get a hold on the intentional objects of psychological states without reliance on self-report. Earlier discussions of the epistemology of mind and meaning (Sections 1.3.2, 3.2, 4.5) focused on three closely interwoven methods: observation of intentional behaviour, application of a theory of mind, and perhaps mental simulation (thought-experiments) in one’s own case. A fourth source of information is of course other relevant self-reports which may be assumed to be reliable.
Consider for example the case of a child presenting with excessive and unrealistic fear about his own health. Assessment of such a case, described in more detail in, e.g. Bolton (1994), would involve gaining information about events in the family, the child’s patterns of intentional behaviour, application of theory about the kind of thing that would make a child really afraid, perhaps supplemented by use of empathy, and information about the child’s relevant beliefs and views, and all of these in combination could lead to an hypothesis about the real object of the child’s fear, for example, in the context of medical anxieties in the family, that the father is in danger of having a heart attack.

In general, not only is there no reason to assume that the self-report of the intentional object of fear (what it is about) is accurate, but there is reason positively to doubt it. This is just because real causes of anxiety have to be dealt with, and one great way is avoidance, including in its mental form, denial. As indicated earlier, gaps and error in the theory of mind are frequently in the service of defence, in the individual and in the family (Section 8.2.4).

The approach proposed here is based simply on the methodological assumption that normal biopsychological function is persistent. And normal function has of course to do with detection of real danger, not imagined. The evolutionary hypothesis is that the anxiety system would not have been selected had it not served the function of detecting danger, but it makes no sense to interpret ‘danger’ in this context as things which really represent no threat at all. The search is for something which really matters to a human being of such-and-such a kind. If a toddler, for example, seems to get into something like a panic state when a toy is taken from him, it is plausible to suppose that the appropriate intensional description of the event is one which brings out its highly threatening nature for the child, so that it means to him, e.g. the collapse of plans and the disintegration of action, or his powerlessness. A second choice hypothesis in this case is that the child’s anxiety is excessive or unrealistic, that the anxiety system, the detection of significant threat, is functioning abnormally due to some design fault.

This is not to say, of course, that the anxiety system, or any other biopsychological system, cannot go wrong. As already discussed, the methodological assumption of normal function may have to be given up in particular cases or kinds of case. There may be direct evidence of non-intentional causation of activity of the autonomic nervous system, and in this case hypotheses about intentional causation would be discounted, or there may be interactions between the two kinds of causal pathway. Otherwise the reason for abandoning the assumption of normal function is likely to be the negative one, that is, failing to find any plausible hypotheses about real threats to the person which the expressed intentional object means. What guides the search for meaning
here is primarily bio-psychological theory, in which developmental issues are fundamental.

Threat is of course readily understandable in the form of, for example, a predatory animal, as is the response of fleeing or attacking. For social beings, particularly slowly maturing ones like ourselves, the role of carers is equally a matter of life and death. For the infant avoidance or attack by carers constitute major, life-threatening, dangers. Given the vulnerability of infants, it is plausible to envisage no lower limit to the age at which patterns of anxiety and its management are generated. Psychoanalytic theory has emphasized that these patterns belong from the beginning to the mother–infant interaction, and the first critical type of coping task is attributed naturally enough to mother. Mother has to contain the infant’s anxiety, which means, briefly, that her task is to not, out of her own anxiety, avoid or panic in the face of the child’s, but is rather to stay with the baby, physically and mentally, holding him calm (cf. Winnicott 1971; see also Section 8.4.5). This kind of task and its vagaries become apparent enough as the child grows older. The theme of dependence on adults runs through all the variety in the child’s developmental and life-tasks, and the evolving child–carer relationship therefore remains closely implicated in fear and coping.

A related approach to the objects and causes of anxiety concerns the development of self. The general principle is that perceived threats to self-preservation generate high anxiety (Oatley and Johnson-Laird 1987). What that amounts to depends on what is essential to, or perceived as essential to, the self, and this is a complicated matter for human beings. As discussed in Chapter 6 (Sections 6.4.3, 6.5.2), the foundations of various aspects of the sense of self are established early in life (Stern 1985), and these are developed and elaborated at least through childhood and adolescence (Erikson 1963). Formation of the sense, (or senses) of the self depends on the accomplishment of a wide and complex variety of tasks, including physical actions, affective responding, interpersonal relating, speech, education, and so on. Tasks generate anxiety, and solutions require effective coping skills.

Psychological theory here moves into social theory. It is impossible to know what is essential to the sense of self in human beings, and therefore what signifies major threat to them, without understanding culture. Superficially the same event may have very different meanings between societies. A certain kind of practice may be innocent according to one set of values, but sin in another, and so on. If an event generates high anxiety it can and should be construed in a way which brings out its highly dangerous significance. Failure of a child at school, to take another kind of example, may signify to an immigrant family loss of hope of improvement for generations.
The issues in meaningful explanation encountered here have been discussed in previous chapters. The meanings available in culture and which guide human activity are diverse and cannot be circumscribed, exceeding what is visible from the point of view of evolutionary biology (Sections 2.6, 3.4, 4.5). It is possible to make generalizations about meaningful connections, but they are achieved by abstraction from specific cases, with loss of information and explanatory/predictive power concerning specific cases (Section 4.5). The generalizations are less like summaries of the data and more like methodological principles for the investigation of cases. Thus we can say in very general terms that anxiety involves detection of threat, but what this comes to in particular cases stands in need of further investigation. The specifics are differentiated in phylogenesis and ontogenesis. Some things, such as physical assault and deprivation of nutrition, are dangerous to us as to all living beings. More specific dangers arise for us as social beings. Also different dangers can arise for women as opposed to men, and vice versa, for one kind of social group rather than another, and so on. Meaningful explanations can be made progressively more particular, referring eventually to a particular person (Section 4.5).

Another aspect of the investigation and definition of meaning lies on the borderline between psychological theory and epistemology. Empiricism envisaged several ways in which one event may signify another, according to principles of resemblance and learned association. As discussed in Section 1.3.1, post-empiricism makes this picture much more complicated. The perception of events is theory-laden, as is the perceived connection between events. Appreciation of the meaning that events have for a person requires study of his or her system of beliefs. These points may be applied to the methodological assumption that unrealistic content in anxiety disorder may stand for something realistic. Empiricist conditioning principles may do some work here. Simple phobias may be caused by one or more really threatening, traumatic experiences of the feared object. In post-traumatic stress disorder the over-generalization of realistic fear, the over-inclusiveness of resemblance, is manifest. In other cases the link may be less evident in content, due to contiguity in time and place only, as when a person fears a particular smell, for example, because of its previous coincidence with real danger. The \textit{meaning} in such a case is just an association, in the context of a particular conditioning history. Alongside such cases, emphasized in the conditioning theory/behavioural paradigm, are those involving more complex symbolism and theory as for example fear of contamination meaning guilt. These are familiar more in psychoanalytic theory, which has always worked with characteristic post-empiricist principles, including specifically the idea that there are core features of self that the person seeks to preserve (Section 8.2.4). However, all these various types of cases encountered
in the anxiety disorders involve meaning and intentionality. All can be brought under the heading: the person is anxious about something which means to him or her something really threatening. Intentional causal pathways are involved, and clinicians of diverse psychological persuasions are alike engaged in trying to track them.

We have been discussing the search for meaning in the case of anxiety and the anxiety disorders. Biological, psychological, and social theory guide the search for real threats which the person is perceiving. They include involvement in gross disasters such as serious accidents or war. Real threats include also the more subtle developmentally defined traumas discussed in the previous chapter (Sections 8.2.2 and 8.2.3). In general terms these developmental traumas involve deprivation of what the growing child needs in order to be able to learn how to act. Of specific relevance in the present context, the child may fail to learn adequate, effective coping skills. These considerations suggest that life in the family is likely to be critical in the generation and maintenance of anxiety in various ways.

The child begins with practically no coping skills, so starts off, according to our working definitions of anxiety, highly prone to anxiety, being dependent more or less entirely on adults to get things to work. To the extent that the adults have poor coping skills, the child has no experience, no modelling, of adaptive problem-solving. At a more complex level, including theory explicit in language, carers’ appraisal of the child’s attempts at problem-solving is likely to influence the child’s self-appraisal of his coping skills. Pessimism, worry, disqualification, criticism of the child’s attempts to work out solutions (e.g. in making friends, or learning to read) are all bound, other things being equal, to make or keep the child anxious.

Another aspect is learning from parental modelling. Two main kinds of cases come under this general heading: learning excessive anxiety reactions, and failing to learn appropriate coping strategies to carry into adult life. As emphasized above, failure to cope with anxiety-provoking situations is an important aspect of anxiety, but it has particularly strong relevance under the plausible assumption that many childhood fears are innate, or least an inevitable theme in bio-psychological maturation. For in this case what stands in need of explanation in the case of disorder is not so much the appearance of anxiety but failure to handle it and the situations which give rise to it. This learning process like most others is highly sensitive to parental example and instruction.

A further, major way in which family function may be causally linked to childhood anxiety disorder concerns the content of the anxiety. Family life may be a source of major stressors, including death or serious illness within
the family, parental mental illness, chronic marital conflict, and of course sexual abuse.

The hypothesis that family function plays a major role in the aetiology of anxiety disorders, both in childhood and in continuations into adulthood, is well-supported. Evidence from a wide range of studies, using a variety of designs, support the general conclusion that anxiety disorders, and related difficulties such as depression, tend to run in families. A high proportion of the mothers of children with anxiety disorders themselves have a lifetime history of anxiety disorder (Last et al. 1987), and children of anxious parents are at increased risk for anxiety disorder (Turner et al. 1987; Sylvester et al. 1987). There is raised incidence of anxiety disorders and other types of psychopathology in the relatives of individuals with anxiety disorders (Carey and Gottesman 1981; Harris et al. 1983), and there are relationships between anxiety and depression and familial patterns of psychopathology (Leckman et al. 1983; Weissman et al. 1984; Livingston et al. 1985; Bernstein and Garfinkel 1988; Bernstein et al. 1990). Evidence of genetic contribution to anxiety disorders is relatively weak, though the story may be different for different anxiety disorders. Where physiological signs dominate, there may be a constitutional, genetically based, low threshold for functioning of the anxiety system. There is evidence of more genetic contribution to panic disorder than to generalized anxiety disorder (Torgersen 1990), where the evidence so far is for purely environmental familial transmission (Eysenck 1992). Adult patients with generalized anxiety disorder reported more trauma in the family as children than patients with panic disorder (Torgersen 1986).

The methodological assumption that even in excessive or unrealistic cases anxiety may still be fulfilling its normal biological function, applies not only to the detection of significant threat but also to the generation of solutions. This implies that the symptoms of anxiety disorder are unsuccessful attempts to solve real problems. The anxiety presents as a persistent perception of danger, and the cognitive and behavioural symptoms are the accompanying persistent, attempts to find a solution. Coping strategies include avoidance, destruction of the problem, and problem-solving. Such strategies may work in given circumstances, but if the perceived threat cannot be managed satisfactorily, they tend in one way or another to get out of hand, leading to the exaggerated and persistent combinations of avoidance, perhaps destructive acts, at least in the imagination, vain attempts at problem-solving, and panic, which are the anxiety disorders. Over-reliance on coping with anxiety by avoidance, physical and mental, tends to alternate with surprise panic, as in panic disorder. Physical avoidance is an efficient strategy for keeping safe and therefore calm, but is maladaptive in case the feared situation is also desired for some reason,
as usually in agoraphobia, or social phobia. The worry characteristic of generalized anxiety disorder, verging on panic, endless and fruitless, appears as a form of cognitive avoidance, in adults (Borkovec et al. 1991), and in children, once they develop the pre-requisite cognitive capacities (Vasey 1993). Avoidance is mandatory when situations are seen as really dangerous, as life-threatening, but for the very same reason they demand attention and vigilance: paradoxical attempts to do both at the same time, in reality and in the imagination, are seen most clearly in post-traumatic stress disorder. Obsessive-compulsive disorder may represent a pre-rational coping style getting out of hand, exhibiting the characteristic, paradoxical combinations of coping and not coping, being in and out of control, and panic. The fundamental fear is being out of control where coping is essential, and this leads to excessive, out of control coping. In general, the problem and the solution become timelessly muddled, this being characteristic of intentional processes in disorder (Section 8.2).

In this opening subsection we have considered in general terms intentional-causal models of anxiety disorder, based in assumptions about the biologically normal function of anxiety. In what follows we consider the points raised in more detail in relation to two particular anxiety disorders, obsessive-compulsion and post-traumatic stress. In the first of these, intentional and non-intentional theories are both plausible in the current state of research, and the form of solution to this inter-theoretic tension is unclear. By contrast an intentional causal model is clearly appropriate for post-traumatic stress disorder, and may have application to other kinds of mental state involving recurring, intrusive, distressing cognition.

### 9.3.2 Obsessive compulsive disorder

It is very plausible to view obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD) as an anxiety disorder, and it is so classified in the standard nosologies. Anxiety is typically involved in the phenomenology: the person has preoccupying, anxiety-provoking thoughts, usually about some unrealistic danger, and compulsively attempts to neutralize these thoughts and to relieve the anxiety they engender by activities such as counting, cleaning or checking, carried out in stereotyped or ritualized ways. Anxiety is apparently implicated also in normal, non-clinical phenomena which may be akin to obsessive-compulsion phenomena, in children’s magical thinking and actions, and in adult life, particularly in people with so-called obsessional traits.

Broadly speaking, the classification of OCD as a kind of anxiety disorder goes along with emphasizing its intentionality. Obsessional fears are typically quite irrational, but it may be hypothesized that they have meaning, along the lines discussed in the previous subsection. Profound fear of losing control,
perhaps specifically with destructive results, is a plausible candidate for a general theme in many cases of obsessional anxiety. The obsessive-compulsive rituals have obvious intentionality so far as the person is concerned: they are about preventing feared catastrophe. At a more symbolic level, it may be that rituals serve to produce the feeling of control in otherwise senseless activities, in response to the perception of being out of control in a realistic area sphere of life. This function of ritualistic behaviour was noted by Freud (1913) and by later theorists (e.g. Rachman and Hodgson 1980; Leonard 1989). Psychoanalytic theory also emphasizes the developmentally early fear that the self may become uncontrollably aggressive, making mess, or chaos (Freud, A. 1966). More recent theorizing in the cognitive-behavioural tradition has retained the assumption of intentionality while emphasizing the person’s appraisal of the thoughts concerned. It has been hypothesized that fantastic thoughts, e.g. of causing great harm, are found also in the non-clinical population, but an abnormally exaggerated sense of responsibility for these otherwise ordinary thoughts, negative evaluation of the self for having them, can give rise to recurring distressing thoughts and attempts to neutralize them (Salkovskis 1985, 1999; Rachman 1993).

All these psychological theories characteristically point to continuities between the clinical and the non-clinical phenomena, between the abnormal and the normal case. This hangs together with accepting the intentionality of obsessive-compulsive phenomena, in which case the search is for meaning in the otherwise apparently meaningless. The ‘meaning’ of the obsessional thoughts for the person may be with being out of control is some suitably profound sense, or, or as well, it may be that they signify a negative evaluation of the self.

So far, so understandable. On the other hand, there has been over the past few decades an accumulation of evidence which suggests that intentional causal connections of such kinds can hardly be the whole story about OCD. Evidence has accumulated of neurological soft signs and neuropsychological deficits in OCD (Cox et al. 1989; Denckla 1989; Head et al. 1989; Hollander et al. 1990, 1993; Hymas et al. 1991; Christensen et al. 1992; Bolton et al. 1998). More direct evidence of neurological structural abnormalities have been detected using C.T. and M.R.I. derived measures (Luxenberg et al. 1988, Scarone et al. 1992; Rauch 2000). There are also associations between OC phenomena and known kinds of neurological disorder, including post-encephalitic Parkinson’s disease (von Economo 1931), Sydenham’s chorea (Swedo et al. 1989), and brain injury (McKeon et al. 1984), and some response to psychosurgery (Chiocca and Martuza 1990). The range of evidence indicated above has been plausibly cited in support of the hypothesis that OCD has an abnormal
neurological basis, probably specifically in the basal ganglia (Wise and Rapoport 1989; Rapoport 1990). This model is complex in various ways, comprising both neurological and psychological hypotheses. It proposes that the basal ganglia serves sensory and cognitive, as well as motor functions, and that specified neurological dysfunctions cause psychological dysfunctions characteristic of OCD. Specifically the model regards OC symptoms as *displacement activities* (in the ethological sense) ‘run wild’, triggered in the absence of, or in any case unregulated by, normal processing of external stimuli.

Wise and Rapoport introduce the notion of displacement activities as follows (1989, p. 336–7):

(Our hypothesis) is based on a simple model of an innate releasing mechanism in the basal ganglia: a detection mechanism for recognizing specific aspects of stimuli (key or sign stimuli) and a releasing mechanism for the species-typical behavioral response (sometimes known as a fixed-action pattern). Usually detection of the key stimulus causes release (i.e. execution) of the appropriate behaviour. But two sorts of behaviour can occur in the absence of a key stimulus. Vacuum behaviours..., for example, are often actions which would be appropriately directed toward a specific object but when the object is not present. A bird may snap at insects absent and go through the motions of preparing the non-existent bugs for its meal ... Similarly, displacement behaviours are released when there are “conflicts between two strongly activated antagonistic drives”, or “when the normal outlet for a certain motivation is blocked”.

The authors go on to remark that displacement activity is of particular relevance in the case of OCD, and quote the following passage from Lorentz (1981, p. 251):

A vast majority of motor patterns appearing as displacement activities are common “everyday” activities … the so-called comfort activities of birds and mammals, such as scratching, preening, shaking, furnish the most common examples of displacement activities; when embarrassed, even humans tend to scratch behind the ear—and in other places.

Wise and Rapoport proceed on the basis of neuroanatomical considerations to conjecture that in OCD hyperactivity in the cingulate cortex causes execution of displacement activities in the absence of the appropriate sensory input and in the absence of motivation to perform them (Wise and Rapoport 1989, p. 338).

It may be seen that the ethological strand in this model of OCD is compatible with a psychological story invoking intentional causality. Strong drive conflict or blocking may trigger ‘easy’, innate behaviour patterns with a low performance threshold, but such behaviours would then acquire the function of reducing the high anxiety generated by the drive frustration (Stein *et al.* 1992). The processes involved here would be biologically normal, and indeed suggestive of the psychological models of obsessive-compulsion already discussed.
The assumption would be that displacement activities acquired anxiety-reducing functions as just outlined, and this relatively simple biological beginning was elaborated in development into something like a coping strategy in salient situations perceived as uncontrollable: other senseless routines would serve at least to create the ‘illusion of control.’ Obsessive-compulsive disorder in intentionality would thus come about within the intentional processes themselves, in the way described in general terms in the previous chapter.

So far, then, there is nothing in the ethological approach to OCD incompatible with the psychological, and there may indeed be developmental connections between the two. In the ethological model, as in the psychological, there is so far nothing to do with neurological deficit. The further step proposed in Wise and Rapoport’s model, is the claim that displacement activities are not being triggered by intentional causal processes, but by lower-level, non-intentional, interference with normal information processing. This shift in the model from intentional to non-intentional causal explanation has the consequence that it says nothing about compulsive behaviour having functional, specifically anxiety-reducing, properties.

There are anomalies for the basal ganglia hypothesis, acknowledged by its proponents, including less than perfect fit between known basal ganglia damage and OCD, and also anomalies for the general hypothesis of neurological deficit: the course of OCD (sometimes late onset, sometimes episodic), cognitive-behavioural specificity in the disorder (certain thoughts and actions only), and the efficacy of behaviour therapy, including anxiety-reduction techniques (Wise and Rapoport 1989).

The position in the current state of OCD research is thus that we have two apparently conflicting types of aetiological model of OCD: one type invokes only intentional causal mechanisms, the other only or mainly non-intentional causal mechanisms. Apparently they are each consistent with different sorts of evidence. The psychological models with their emphasis on anxiety and anxiety reduction are plainly consistent with the typical phenomenology of OCD, and with the efficacy of behaviour therapy. The neurological deficit model is more consistent with a variety of evidence of neurological impairment as listed above. What is evidence for the one, is anomalous for the other. Thus efficacy of behaviour therapy is at least superficially anomalous for hypothesis of neurological deficit, while there is apparently no way that the psychological models (in their current form at least) predict neurological impairment. The fact that there are differential predictions here shows that the conflict between the two kinds of model is a genuine one. It is not that the two sorts of model ‘say the same thing in two ways,’ in neurological and psychological language. This reflects the general point, made back in the first chapter (Section 1.2.2),
that Intentional Stance explanation of breakdown of function is distinct from Physical Stance explanation of breakdown: they invoke quite different sorts of causal pathway, and point to different sorts of remedy.

The complexity and apparently contradictory nature of the evidence relating to OCD have encouraged vigorous attempts, generally not yet fully validated, to identify sub-types of the disorder which would warrant distinctive models, including different emphases on intentional/non-intentional causal pathways (Bolton 1996; Blanes and McGuire 1997; Leckman et al. 1997; Geller et al. 1998; Rosenberg and Keshavan 1998; Swedo et al. 1998).

9.3.3 Post-traumatic stress disorder and other cases of recurring, intrusive, distressing thoughts

Trauma is a most fertile ground for psychological theory, and it is no accident that right at the start of clinical psychology it figured prominently in the two paradigms which were to set the scene for the century to come: Freud’s and Watson’s. Irrational fear lends itself to the simple explanation of inappropriate generalization. This model is at its simplest in Watson, and at its most complex in Freud, complicated by cognitive and developmental processes. Of course backwards trauma hunting has been problematic in both traditions: Freud didn’t know whether he had found real or fantasized trauma, and the behaviourists often failed to find the hypothesized one-trial learning in the history of patients with irrational fears. In trying to model Post Traumatic Stress Disorder we do not have this sort of problem, because generally matters are much more open to view. In the paradigm case envisaged by the standard diagnostic systems, such as DSM to be discussed below, the traumatic shock is clear in time and in broad outlines in nature. It is generally speaking clear enough whether a person has experienced trauma, when, and of what kind.

Post-traumatic over-generalization of fear, with physiological arousal and behavioural avoidance, can be explained relatively straightforwardly in conditioning theory. Trauma also affects more complex cognition. We have already considered (in Section 9.3.1) the effects of anxiety on information-processing. The main function of the anxiety system is detection of and response to danger, and hence involves intensification of and selection in various pre-attentional and attentional processes, including hypervigilance towards and mental preoccupation with danger, and danger and safety signals. Inevitable side effects of anxiety then include lowered interest in (lowered concentration on, and motivation for) other situations and tasks. All of this is plausibly a natural response to a major, life-threatening experience. The development of core post-traumatic stress symptoms following major trauma appears as
biologically normal. The problem is not so much understanding why they develop, but is rather explaining why they are so persistent, sometimes over many, many years.

We consider these sorts of issues in what follows, bringing to bear proposals from previous chapters. To begin with it may be helpful to readers unfamiliar with post-traumatic stress disorder to see a summary of standard diagnostic criteria.


The person experienced, witnessed, or was confronted with an event or events that involved actual or threatened death or serious injury, or a threat to the physical integrity of self or others .. (and) the person's response involved intense fear, helplessness, or horror.

**Note:** In children this may be expressed instead by disorganized or agitated behaviour.

The core of PTSD is then persistent re-experiencing of the traumatic event, in one or more of the following ways (loc. cit.):

- recurrent and intrusive distressing recollections of the event including images, thoughts, or perceptions. **Note:** In young children, repetitive play may occur in which themes or aspects of the trauma are expressed.
- recurrent distressing dreams of the event. **Note:** in children there may be frightening dreams without recognizable content.
- acting or feeling as if the traumatic event were recurring (includes a sense of reliving the experience, illusions, hallucinations, and dissociative flashback episodes, including those that occur on wakening or when intoxicated). **Note:** In young children trauma-specific re-enactment may occur.
- intense psychological distress at exposure to internal or external cue that symbolize or resemble an aspect of the traumatic event.
- physiological reactivity upon exposure to internal or external cues that symbolize or resemble an aspect of the traumatic event

A second group of symptoms has to do with persistent avoidance of stimuli associated with the trauma or numbing of general responsiveness, at least three of which are required for diagnosis, as follows:

- efforts to avoid thoughts, feelings or conversations associated with the trauma.
- efforts to avoid activities, places, or people that arouse recollections of the trauma
- inability to recall an important aspect of the trauma
- markedly diminished interest or participation in significant activities
- feeling of detachment or estrangement from others
- restricted range of affect (e.g., unable to have loving feelings)
- sense of a foreshortened future, e.g., does not expect to have a career, marriage, or children, or a normal life span
A further diagnostic criterion is persistent symptoms of increased arousal, as indicated by at least two of the following:

- difficulty falling or staying asleep
- irritability or outbursts of temper
- difficulty concentrating
- hypervigilance
- exaggerated startle response

What is described here as the main diagnostic criteria for PTSD are responses to trauma which are for the most part readily understandable from a bio-psychological point of view. It would be difficult to imagine contrary responses to trauma as being normal. Any living being which narrowly escaped death and, as it were, shrugged it off, would so far be taking chances, would be at risk for being less lucky the next time. If a person experiences severe threat then she should be anxious about what may have happened, what she could have done, if anything, to avoid or escape the danger, and whether it may happen again. In other words cognitive resources would be focused on the trauma and its possible recurrence. In effect this comprises the cognitive symptoms in the first group, persistent re-experiencing, and the consequent symptoms of physiological arousal in the third group. Symptoms in the second group, significantly, pull the other way: traumatic experience, as well as demanding constant attention, also, and for the same reason, makes us want to avoid it like anything. The avoidance of trauma-like memories, feelings and situations can generalize, so as to cover practically any stresses, including otherwise normal demands, such as interpersonal relationships, and future planning.

Before considering approach-avoidance conflict further, we may note in passing the signs of tension here between bio-psychological normality and the notion of disorder. Emphasis on the bio-psychological normality of post-traumatic stress reactions suggests that any disorder here has more to do with these reactions failing to decay over time. The position would be akin to the distinction between bereavement and depressive episode. Grief can give rise to thoughts, emotions, and behaviour barely if at all distinguishable from a depressive syndrome, but diagnosis of Major Depressive Episode is excluded in case the disturbance is a normal reaction to the death of a loved one (American Psychiatric Association 1994; p. 323). Signs of bereavement becoming complicated by depression include morbid pre-occupation with worthlessness, suicidal ideation, marked functional impairment or psychomotor retardation, or prolonged duration. It would be possible in a similar vein to envisage a ‘normal’ post-traumatic stress reaction which could become complicated
by ‘disorder’, signs of which would include, e.g. high degrees of generalization of fear reactions, or of withdrawal, or prolonged duration. These remarks, by the way, are not at all a criticism of the standard definition of post-traumatic stress disorder, but are intended only to clarify what otherwise might be seen odd, that bio-psychological normality and the appearance of disorder can be closely linked, particularly following major stressors.

The theme in the background here has to do with the paradoxes inherent in the experience of and response to trauma, discussed in Chapter 8 (Section 8.2), in Section 9.3.1 above, and further below. A sign of paradox is that bio-psychologically normal coping strategies when applied to apparently insoluble problems can themselves become maladaptive, disrupting normal activity. The symptom follows from and re-enacts the perception of the impossibility of carrying on. Lines between normal response and disorder are in these circumstances difficult to draw sharply. Death of a loved one is distinguished as a normal cause of what otherwise could be called depressive disorder, but other major losses which also lead to grief reactions, such as loss of physical capacity following serious accident or illness, are not so distinguished. The issues here are complicated, and the lines to be drawn are bound to be vague.

These considerations, however, point to the fact that what needs explanation in the case of post-traumatic stress disorder is not so much the appearance of the signs of post-traumatic stress, but their failure to decay over time. Why is the trauma persistently re-experienced, often over many years?

PTSD can be regarded as a phobic reaction, and modelled accordingly in conditioning theory. Recurring re-experiencing is accounted for by this model, e.g. as a result of high degree of generalization which makes avoidance impossible (Keane et al. 1985). The CS-CR link is preserved because the CS is endured with great anxiety, i.e. is never perceived as (responded to as) safe, and anxiety incubates rather than decays (Eysenck 1979). A broadly similar, though more explanatory story can be told in terms of more complex information-processing models. The task for the person traumatized in, for example in a shipping disaster, is to acquire the information that, nevertheless, ships are really safe (enough), but assimilation and accommodation of this information from experience is ruled out insofar as there are expectations of danger, leading to search for danger signals, leading to lowered threshold for such interpretations, leading to the perception that ships are dangerous after all. A model along these lines, applied to the post-traumatic stress of war veterans, is worked out by Chemtob et al. (1988). A related formulation is proposed by Foa and Steketee (1989), to be discussed further below; and see also Creamer et al. (1992).

The idea, then, is that traumatic experience produces a massive effect on information-processing, on the anxiety system specifically, so that it becomes
as it were permanently on, sensitive to danger signals and unprepared to recognize security. This is very likely to be a major part of the story. But so far it does not easily address the persistent re-experiencing of the trauma itself, in waking thought, in dreams, or other re-enactments. Why does the victim go through it over and over again? Here we come across the idea that the traumatic experience is in some way ‘unresolved’. But what does this mean, and why does it happen?

Directly relevant to this central question is Rachman’s (1980) notion of *failure of emotional processing*. He invoked it to explain a variety of phenomena: obsessions, the return of fear, incubation of fear, abnormal grief reactions, failures to respond to fear-reducing procedures, and nightmares. Although Rachman was not concerned in the paper explicitly with post-traumatic stress disorder, the notions could be applied to it, and have been by Foa and Steketee (1989), using a model proposed by Foa and Kozak (1986). Much discussion in all these papers concerns the criteria or signs that emotional processing has or has not occurred. There is a risk, of which proponents of the model are aware, that signs of its failure coincide with the phenomena to be explained. This issue is basically one of operational definition of a highly theoretical construct. In fact two sorts of definition are required: theoretical and operational. In his original paper Rachman concentrated on the latter somewhat at the expense of the former. He suggested that, ‘as a start, emotional processing is regarded as a process whereby emotional disturbances are absorbed, and decline to the extent that other experiences and behaviour can proceed without disruption’ (Rachman 1980, p. 51). The notion of emotional processing in this way rests heavily on the theoretical construct of ‘absorption’. But what is this?

Further progress was made by Foa and Kozak, who defined emotional processing as the modification of memory structures that underlie emotions, particularly acquisition of new, incompatible information (Foa and Kozak 1986, p. 22). Concerning post-traumatic stress disorder in particular, Foa and her colleagues proposed that what distinguishes it from other anxiety disorders is that the traumatic event was of monumental significance and violated formerly held ‘basic concepts of safety’ (Foa and Steketee 1989, p.166). They propose that this violation establishes massive fear structures (information-processing biased towards danger) which then inhibit new learning, specifically of safety (Foa and Stekette 1989, pp. 167–70).

This was the proposal discussed above. It is likely to be correct, but as already suggested it apparently does not directly address the issue of repeated re-experiencing the trauma itself. The hope was that the concept of ‘failure of emotional processing’ would cast light here, but it is not yet clear how.
We suggest that some very general consideration about the nature of cognition can be brought to bear on these issues, mainly the post-empiricist assumption that we use hierarchically organized systems of belief for the purpose of action. This was discussed in the first chapter (Sections 1.3.1, 1.3.3) and linked to trauma in the previous chapter (Section 8.2.2). In these terms it is possible to elaborate on key theoretical notions such as ‘basic concepts of safety’, ‘size’ of fear structures, and resistance to change. It is specifically possible to gain a distinctive theoretical grip on the key problem of persistent re-experiencing of the trauma through time, of failure to decay.

The basic idea, as outlined in the previous chapter (Section 8.2), is that trauma comes into conflict with core assumptions in the theory of action, such as that the world is a safe enough place for action, and that the self is competent enough. The conditions of action include ‘safety’ in the broadest sense, a notion invoked by Foa and her colleagues (op.cit.). If reality is being represented as incompatible with the conditions of action, then representation itself is confounded, having to both exist and not exist. The paradox of representation and non-representation, extended through time, finds dramatic expression in the most characteristic of post-traumatic signs, namely, in persistent and intrusive re-experiencing of the traumatic events. These points will be expanded on later but first we may consider another theoretical approach close to what we are proposing, one which relies heavily on the notion of ‘basic assumptions’.

Janoff-Bulman (1985) argues that the stress syndrome of PTSD is largely attributable to the shattering of victims’ ‘basic assumptions’ about themselves and their world. She cites various theorists in explanation of the notion of basic assumptions at work in daily life, and notes that traumatic experience clashes with these on a scale comparable to threats to ‘paradigms’ in Kuhn’s sense. This passing reference to post-empiricist philosophy of science directly points in the direction we are taking. As basic assumptions threatened by traumatic experience Janoff-Bulman cites three as follows (1985, pp. 16f.):

- the belief in personal invulnerability
- the perception of the world as meaningful and comprehensible
- the view of ourselves in a positive light

And she goes on to discuss their implication in post-traumatic stress disorder.

We do not disagree with the proposal that these three assumptions can be fundamental and involved in the response to trauma. However, in accord with the general approach of the essay, we would start by viewing the ‘basic assumptions’ of action from a more biological perspective, and indeed from a more
general epistemological one. This approach points to assumptions of action being more like the following:

- the world is safe enough
- predictable enough
- satisfies enough needs
- the agent is competent enough

If these assumptions were to be given up, action would appear as either impossible or pointless or both. The assumptions, the consequences of giving them up, and the need to hang on to them, has been discussed earlier (Sections 1.3.3, 8.2).

This second set of assumptions we are proposing stands in contrast to the first set listed above proposed by Janoff-Bulman in three main ways. Firstly, the second set applies down the phylogenetic scale, without restriction to specifically human characteristics such as positive self-image or perceived invulnerability. The theory of anxiety certainly has to be applicable early in phylogensis, but arguably also animals can show something specifically like post-traumatic stress syndrome, including learned helplessness aspects (Foa et al. 1992; Peterson and Seligman 1983). Secondly, the concept of ‘good enough’, due famously to Winnicott (1971), permeates all these matters: it is not necessary to have perfect control, competence, and so on. Thirdly, as already mentioned, the second set of assumption have to be preserved if action is to continue. Giving them up means that it is either impossible to perform (intentional) behaviour, or pointless to, which implies, e.g. random behaviour, freezing/paralysis, or withdrawal. In brief, the second set of expectations are minimal, attributable to animals, and essential to action as such, and all these features hang together.

On this basis we can develop out proposals further. It was remarked above that traumatic experience on the one hand demands attention from the victim, but on the other hand avoidance is also an adaptive response. This certainly includes behavioural avoidance of similar situations, but also mental avoidance of the terror. Mental approach-avoidance conflict in effect means that the same phenomena have to be both thought about and not thought about. The paradoxical effects of traumatic experience on cognition were considered in some detail in Chapter 8, in relation to post-empiricist epistemology and the philosophical notion of limits of thought (Section 8.2.2).

The key here is the definition of representation (thought) as serving action. Consider circumstances in which action is, or is perceived to be, impossible, and which are represented as such. The representation cannot be used to facilitate (to regulate, to plan) action, which, according to the representation, is not possible. But insofar as the representation cannot be used in the service of
action, insofar as it is incompatible with action, it is not a possible representation. Thus the reality in question has to be in some way thought about and not thought about. It is clear that the traumatic events are experienced and represented; otherwise indeed there would be no (psychological) problem. But they also have to be in some way not represented.

The paradox here shows up in various ways. For example, there may be amnesia for critical periods in the sequence of events, or the events are remembered but not the terror; or the events are recalled with a third-person perspective, as though observed from the outside rather than experienced from within them; or the memory images have an unreal, dream-like quality. All of these are ways of remembering the trauma and not remembering the trauma at the same time. Another form of the paradox is to alternate remembering with not remembering through time. This involves mental avoidance some of the time, feeling fine, as if nothing had happened, or as if the self had not really been affected, with this fragile sense of well-being repeatedly being interrupted by intrusive, distressing preoccupation with the traumatic experience.

Persistent and intrusive re-experiencing of the traumatic events is the dramatic core of post-traumatic stress. It can appear in several forms, as in DSM-IV’s first group of diagnostic signs listed above: in waking thought, in dreams, in re-enactment (for example in children’s play), and in situations which resemble or symbolize the trauma. The representation is thus clearly in evidence, though it may be partial in one or more of the ways described above (e.g. remembered as if unreal), and it has the special quality of intrusive repetition. The intrusiveness here can be seen as a measure of the salience of the experience for the biopsychological being—it demands attention—and the repetition can be seen as the expression through time of the paradox of representation and non-representation. It is forgotten during the day, say, when life continues more or less as usual, and provides distraction, but it is remembered as soon as cognitive resources are available, at night, or when the mind wanders off some other task. The energy involved in both pre-occupation with the trauma (trying to understand it, trying to withstand the fear) and in mental avoidance of the trauma (trying to forget, to keep oneself engaged in distracting tasks) is substantial. These mental tasks typically leave the person exhausted, much less able to cope with the stresses of daily living, which he or she may then avoid.

In terms of post-empiricist epistemology, as discussed in the previous chapter (Section 8.2.2), the point is that traumatic experience contradicts deep convictions in the theory of action, to the effect, e.g. that the world is predictably a possible place in which to act, or that the self is able to cope. This creates two cognitive responses. On the one hand, the traumatic experience is impossible, according to these convictions, and thus cannot have happened (to me), and
warrants only being put out of mind. On the other hand, still more powerfully, the traumatic experience is, according to the same convictions of massive importance, apparently signifying the impossibility of action (life) itself, so not only cannot be forgotten, but has to be attended to above all else.

The trauma and the core of the theory of action are incompatible, so they cannot both be believed, and this leads to circular cognitive sequences which may be schematically represented as follows:

Step 1: trauma occurred
Step 2: therefore the core theory is false,
Step 3: but the theory must be preserved: or else ‘life is unbearable’,
Step 4: so the trauma cannot really have happened

But, Step 5: it certainly did, i.e. back to Step 1 again, and so on.

Traumatic experience signifies that the core theory presupposed in action is wrong. But if it is wrong, action comes to an end. But this is impossible (we are inclined to carry on). But if the theory that action is possible is retained, then the traumatic experience cannot have happened. On the other hand, it is remembered. There is a massive conflict here between theory—theory that we have to hang onto—and experience. And paradoxes press: if the experience happened, the theory is wrong, but it can’t be wrong ... Or the other way round, if the theory is right, the experience cannot have happened, but it did ..., and is of huge significance (i.e. overthrows the conditions of survival), therefore needs much attention, cognitive resources. But it implies that action is impossible, which is impossible ... And so round and round ... This is by all means confusing. The fundamental problem is that traumatic experience apparently contradicts the conditions of action, and will therefore be both rejected, and attended to, both for dear life.

Another way of putting the problem is that core convictions and the trauma cannot both be believed, but must be each believed. Solution of this problem requires drastic mental measures. Both cannot be believed at the same time, with the same mind. One kind of solution is dissociation, as discussed above, in third person memories or dreams of the event, in remembering without affect, in memories experienced as unreal, in forgetting the worst times. These are ways of believing that the trauma was experienced, and believing that it was not, at the same time. The alternative is persistent re-experiencing, alternating with persistent forgetting/denial thus achieving belief in each side of the contradiction at different times.

There is in post-traumatic stress reaction a failure to integrate the trauma into the system of belief about the self and reality. There is frequently in fact resistance to such integration, taking the form of explicit thoughts to the effect
that the trauma cannot, or should not, have happened. This protest of despair and outrage marks the contrast between reality as it is and reality as it must be, or ought to be. Life requires that reality is benign enough, and the thought that it is not is not a possible thought, at least, not one that can be used as a basis for action. This thought has no use; its meaning cannot be understood. Hence there is a pattern of repetition in which the trauma is persistently re-experienced and its apparent meaning, that core beliefs are false, is rejected.

The proposed explanation of re-experiencing and re-enactment is partly, then, that it cannot be accommodated within the core of theory. This amounts to a theoretical definition of the idea of failure of emotional processing discussed earlier. However, this negative feature exists alongside a more positive mechanism. As indicated above, it is very plausible to suppose that following narrow escape from serious danger cognitive resources should be dedicated to understanding what happened and how, with a view to making sure that it never happens again, or if it does, that the person knows what to do. This problem-solving may be a function of persistent re-experiencing and re-enactment of the trauma. This possibility was envisaged in Freud’s notion of attempts at ‘completion’ following trauma, interestingly discussed in the context of more recent theories by Horowitz (1986, Chapter 6). The person may, for example, think or dream about the disaster, with alternating endings, some worse than what actually happened, but some better. A successful resolution, in representations unmarked by time, may even serve to undo the traumatic experience, or it may restore a positive view. However, unsuccessful attempts to work out a better ending, in dreams, in waking thought, or in patterns of behaviour, in effect only re-enact the trauma, over and over again. In this case, the attempts to find a solution have become the problem, a typical sign of intentional processes in disorder as discussed earlier (Sections 8.2.4, 9.3.1).

Attempts to work out a more successful, tolerable outcome of a traumatic experience may also, however, be a kind of denial, a refusal to accept that the experience was as awful as it was. This denial would then characteristically alternate with the repeated realization through re-enactment that it was after all that bad. This pattern persists insofar as the representations of past and present lack distinctive time or context markers, and are hardly distinguished.

A quite different strand in the attempt to adapt to traumatic experience is construction of a representation which acknowledges how awful it was, but which foresees the possibility of a different, better outcome next time. Or, what comes close to the same thing, construction of a representation in which the trauma is recognized as both awful but despite that somehow possible to survive. Either way, what is envisaged is a world, or a self and a world, which is both dreadful and yet possible.
Here we come across the key idea of integrating the traumatic experience into the person's system of belief, noted in the previous chapter (Section 8.2.3). The psychological conflicts and tasks of adjustment here can be compared with the problems of anomalies and theory adaptation which are manifest in the progress of the sciences. As noted above Janoff-Bulman (1985), in introducing the idea of basic assumptions with a view to conceptualizing the effects of trauma, refers to Kuhn's (1962) notion of paradigm in science. We also suggest that the epistemological principles linking theory and experiment visible in science are similar to those operating in the case of psychological adjustment to trauma. The principles are specifically those of post-empiricism (Sections 1.3.1, 1.3.3, 8.2.2).

Trauma may be defined as experience which scores pretty well a direct hit on the core of the theory which regulates action, contradicting the conviction that the world is, in various senses, safe enough. To achieve this the event has to be one which cannot simply be ignored. It may be experienced fast and dramatically, in one trial, as in disasters. Or it may be experienced repeatedly, as for example child sexual abuse in the family. Either way the trauma is forcibly experienced. As already discussed a natural response to this blatant conflict between the undeniable force of the trauma and the unmoveable core of belief is something like dissociation, or splitting (Sections 8.2.2, 8.2.4, and above). Both are held on to, but in different states of mind, through time, or even at the same time. What is required in these circumstances if the trauma is not to be repeatedly re-experienced, is construction of a representation which can accommodate both the traumatic experience and the view of the self and the world as on balance secure enough. This kind of resolution following a disaster may be apparent in thoughts to the effect: ‘It did happen, I nearly died, I was terrified; but I survived (without too much loss), it is over, and all being well, taking into account reasonable estimation of probabilities, it is unlikely to happen to me again’. Or following sexual abuse: ‘It did happen, but it was not my fault; my mother did not stop it, or did not believe me, but she is not all bad’. And so forth.

By all means whether such a resolution can be achieved in practice depends on many circumstances and factors. Some of these will have to do with the severity of the trauma and the losses sustained. Thinking particularly of trauma experienced in adult life, it may be expected that pre-existing personality characteristics are also relevant, specifically concerning core assumptions about the self and world. We can envisage several broad kinds of case here. One is the kind emphasized by Janoff-Bulman (1985), in which the person’s core assumptions are somewhat extreme, such as the assumption of personal invulnerability, or super-competence. Highly successful men and women may
‘fall apart’ following trauma and fail to recover, often developing then depression. In such cases the person simply cannot stand the vulnerability and failure to cope, or the loss of function in the initial post-traumatic reaction. Adjustment to trauma against the background of excessively self-confident assumptions can be extremely difficult, and Janoff-Bulman is right to draw attention specifically to them. Something critical to the person’s view of themselves is lost, and post-traumatic stress can be then complicated by depression in response to this loss. The task in such cases is to achieve a view of the self as ‘good enough’. Similar sorts of considerations apply to cases in which the pre-existing core assumptions about the world are over-optimistic. Experience contradicting this is quite unprepared for, and is particular devastating. This is one aspect of the reason why young children are so vulnerable to traumatic abuse in the family: they have, and they have to have, more or less unquestioning trust in those meant to be looking after them.

Another kind of case is that in which pre-traumatic core assumptions are already of a balanced, not black-and-white kind. Here one would find already in the one scheme of things acknowledgement that there was safety and danger, coping and not coping, succeeding and failing, and so on. The prediction would be that such a view, or way of thinking, would serve to facilitate adjustment to trauma, other things being equal.

A third kind of case might be in people whose view of the self and world was already pretty negative, as the result of experiences and achievements that were perceived as not good enough. Here it might be predicted that the adjustment to trauma, or certain kinds of trauma, might be facilitated, insofar as it did not in fact contradict basic assumptions. But on the other hand, the trauma would serve to give massive confirmation to the person’s depressive outlook.

It can be assumed that variations in the theory of self and world are highly conditioned by learning. In other words, we suppose that from the beginnings the child’s view of the world and self is shaped by experience and education to become more or less like the three kinds described above. The child may come to have a highly negative view of carers, or other people, or the self. He may be competent, and brought up so as to believe that he is wonderful, and that everything goes and should go his way. In certain circumstances these two views can even co-exist, unIntegrated, reflecting unresolved ambivalence in the family and in the mind. A different possibility is development of a view of the self and world as positive and negative, and on balance good enough. This would require a combination of not too much aversive experience, enough good experience, together with help from carers to do the integrative work of containing positive and negative, security and anxiety, possession and loss, success and disappointment, in the one mental space. The concept in developmental
cognitive psychology which comes closest to what is at issue here is that of Attachment representation, discussed previously (Sections 6.3.4, 8.4.7).

We have suggested above that post-traumatic stress reactions will more readily decay to the extent that the person’s pre-existing core beliefs about the self and world already contain positive and negative features with negotiation among them. Assuming that core beliefs are associated specifically with secure Attachment representation, the prediction would be that secure Attachment representation facilitates recovery from post-traumatic shock. As with all hypotheses about personality variables as protective or risk factors in post-traumatic stress, there is the problem that they are measured after the event and hence are confounded by the post-traumatic effects themselves. However the methodological problem is soluble using large samples and control groups.

We have proposed that trauma is persistently re-experienced or re-enacted insofar as it contradicts the representation of a tolerable, secure reality. The traumatic experience is remembered alongside the experience of safety, with persistent, recurring alternation between the two states of mind. This cycle resolves to the extent that the traumatic experience can be integrated into a representation of the self and world as being on balance safe enough.

Finally in this subsection we consider briefly other possible applications of the model sketched so far. As remarked above, Rachman (1980) invoked failure of emotional processing in order to explain a variety of cases of repetitive, intrusive distressing thoughts, including obsessions and abnormal grief reactions. The model proposed here applies most transparently to post-traumatic stress disorder. It applies readily also to persistent grief reactions, unsurprisingly since bereavement typically involves trauma. In grief the loss of the loved one is both represented and not represented. Representation may take the form of persistent memories of aspects of the death or discovery or news of the death. Alternating with this is non-representation of the loss, by seeing the dead person, in hallucination, or mistaken first appearances, and by other diverse forms of denial, including the wish to carry on as before as though nothing had changed. So far, as remarked in connection with trauma in general, this is normal. The problem is more when this splitting persists, when there is no integration, when the person does not adjust to the loss, but carries on alternating between a fragile sense of well-being, and depressive episodes.

A problem much more challenging to the model is explanation of the obsessions in obsessive-compulsive disorder. The model as outlined works best in cases of real traumatic experiences contradicting reasonable basic assumptions about the self and the world. It is so far unclear that this could have anything to do with the fantastic world of obsessional beliefs and rituals. On the
other hand, even if destined for failure, it is worthwhile considering possibilities here.

The core ideas would be as before. The proposal would be that obsessional thoughts signify something quite contrary to basic assumptions about the self and the world, that they repeatedly, intrusively recur in the absence of any integration of the thoughts, or what they mean, into a tolerable self- and world-view. Aspects of these hypotheses fit fairly readily with the clinical presentation. According to psychological formulations, the best candidates for the meaning of obsessional thoughts have to do with fear of uncontrolled loss, or destruction, for which the self is in some way responsible (Section 9.3.2). This interpretation is an example of construing the intentional object of apparently irrational fear in such a way as to bring out its bio-psychological significance (Section 9.3.1). Apparently irrational compulsions would be construed in a corresponding way, as symbolizing the person’s capacity to keep things in order. It is also plausible to hypothesize something like splitting or dissociation in at least some people with obsessive-compulsive disorder. Fear of being out of control shows up alongside, alternating with, keeping in precise control, these two contradictory themes being timelessly entangled together in the compulsions themselves.

A critical feature of obsessive-compulsive disorder is as yet untouched by this approach, however. This is the characteristic blurring of the distinction between mind and reality. Obsessions are expressions of fear of serious harm, typically some catastrophe to the self, or destruction of (the person’s) world by the self. The person is unclear (in this state of mind) between imagined destruction (or destruction in the imagination) and real destruction. At the same time the individual believes that his or her special stereotyped, ritualized actions can avert the feared catastrophe.

At this point it is possible, in line with themes in previous chapters, to introduce a developmental aspect into the model of recurring, intrusive thoughts when applied to obsessive-compulsive disorder. ‘Irrationality’ can be construed as pre-rationality. All the above listed irrational characteristics of obsessive-compulsive disorder have early developmental analogues, concerning blurring of the distinctions known to reason and the reliance on ‘magical’ thinking (Piaget 1937; Vygotsky 1981; Harris 1994; Bolton et al. 2002; see also Chapter 6, Section 6.5.3). There is in pre-rational thought in children inflated views of the power of the self, linked to egocentricism, including feelings of omnipotence, linked then to perceived responsibility, the other side of which is fear of helplessness and destruction. There is also blurred appearance/reality distinction, and belief in the power of ritual (in thought or action) to influence otherwise uncontrollable reality. In face of possible catastrophe pre-reason uses magic.
Mind is experienced as powerful, which has the following implication: if the mind can destroy reality, it can also save it. Apparent similarities between pre-rational thought and activity and obsessive-compulsive phenomena have long been recognized (Freud 1913; A. Freud 1965). There are also of course differences, specifically in persistence and in distress caused, which are emphasized by those who see obsessive compulsion as a neurological disorder (Leonard 1989, see also Section 9.3.2.).

It may be possible, then, to apply the model of intrusive, distressing thoughts worked out in the case of post-traumatic stress to obsessive-compulsive disorder. The adult experiences trauma in reality. The young child by contrast is a world in which phantasy and reality are not yet reliably distinguished, in which imagined catastrophe might be real catastrophe, or in which real catastrophe, such as loss or prolonged separation from a carer, might be due to his imagination. The adult responds to real catastrophe by cognitive pre-occupation alternating with avoidance. The young child (the mind in that developmentally early stage) responds also by pre-occupation, and the problem-solving strategy is the exercise of magical powers of control.

9.4 Personality disorders
9.4.1 Introduction
The concept of personality disorder has a long and rather chequered history. At worst its use has been pejorative, non-developmental, and anti-therapeutic. Notwithstanding the difficulties it provides a pointer to important aspects of disturbance that are not characterized by episodic occurrences of relatively clearly defined syndromes such as depression. The two main classificatory systems include a number of different categories of personality disorder, but they assume that there is a unified underlining concept which is characterized by the presence of abnormal traits. The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition (commonly known as DSM IV) states that, ‘Personality traits are enduring patterns of perceiving, relating to, and thinking about the environment and oneself that are exhibited in a wide range of social and personal contexts. Only when personality traits are inflexible and maladaptive and cause significant functional impairment or subjective distress do they constitute personality disorders’ (American Psychiatric Association 1994, p.630). In practice the different personality disorder categories include that widely differing kinds of items, including those that refer to states of mind (e.g. uncertainties of self-image), mood states (e.g. marked shifts from normal mood to depression, irritability, or anxiety), interpersonal difficulties (e.g. a pattern of unstable and intense interpersonal relationships),
and specific behaviours, such as failure to accept social norms. Given this heterogeneity, attempts to provide one explanatory framework are likely to prove frustrating. It is clear also that each personality disorder category is not distinct, and co-occurrence of several diagnoses is common (Oldham et al. 1992), so that in considering one particular category we cannot be confident of its separate identity. These limitations, combined with the tendency for the concept to be misused, might make it seem a poor subject for our concluding chapter. However, from a mental health perspective, its value lies in drawing our attention to important aspects of disturbance that are not characterized by episodic disturbances of relatively clearly defined syndromes such as depression. These persistent patterns of personal dysfunction are found in over 50% of patients referred to mental health facilities with non-psychotic conditions such as depression, anxiety, and eating disorders (Pfohl et al. 1984; Gartner et al. 1989; Shea et al. 1990). When we turn to the possible intentionality of personality disorder, the most striking findings are those that indicate that frequently it is preceded by behavioural disturbance, or severe adversity in childhood, or a combination of the two (Robins 1966, 1986; Ogata et al. 1990; Hill 2002).

9.4.2 Borderline personality disorder

Notwithstanding the problems of definition, we will examine one particular personality disorder, ‘Borderline Personality Disorder’, in relation to intentionality and development. Borderline personality disorder is characterized by intense and unstable intimate relationships, rapid changes of mood, and impulsive aggressive behaviour often towards the self, in the form of overdoses or cutting the wrists or other parts of the body. Many theories of the origins of borderline personality disorder have proposed a central role for adverse, and in particular traumatic, experiences in childhood. Among referred individuals with borderline personality disorder the rate of recalled sexual abuse and neglect is very high; above 90% in a study of 467 inpatients with personality disorders (Zanarini et al. 1997). It is however unlikely that the experience of child sexual abuse alone is a major factor (Hill 2002). There may be quite specific experiences that undermine intentionality leading to borderline processes. In a comparison of borderline patients and those with other personality disorders those in the borderline group were more likely to have been abused by a male non-caretaker, to have experienced denial of their thoughts and feelings by a male caretaker and to have experienced inconsistent treatment by a female caretaker (Zanarini et al. 1997). Parental behaviours other than those associated with abuse may be crucial. Bezirganian et al. (1993) found that the combination of maternal inconsistency and high maternal over-involvement
assessed in adolescence was associated with the persistence or emergence of borderline personality disorder. How might these childhood and adolescent experiences be related to the adult disorder?

We start with an examination of borderline processes in relation to our earlier considerations, particularly those in Chapter 8. Clinical experience and a range of psychotherapeutic formulations (e.g. Kernberg 1984) have provided a valuable picture of borderline processes. The mind of the individual is characterized by sharp and unpredictable shifts of mood and perceptions. The contrast is often between a view of the self and those around that is optimistic and confident, and one dominated by anger and unhappiness. In the happy state of mind, often it seems that facts which do not fit that state are not recognized, or if they are, they lead to catastrophic change to pessimism and anger. These facts may be derived from current circumstances, or from reference to the person's previous states of mind or behaviours. When in one state of mind the individual appears not to have access to others. This applies also in the other direction, so that when he/she is pessimistic and angry, good experiences are forgotten and angrily denied, and there appears to be little scope to consider some modification of that way of seeing things. Here then representations and the rules of perception and experience are contradictory and are subject to rapid, intense, and unpredictable change. Furthermore each will tolerate only certain kinds of information, so that its range of function is narrow and open to catastrophic failure.

Relationships are subject to a similar roller coaster effect as the individual. Typically they are seen as filled with love and perfection, or as useless or destructive, and they may become violent. Then relationships seem to reflect in part the individual’s need to keep states of mind pure and lacking in doubt or difficulty, and in part a particular pattern of communication. As long as a relationship is in one state or another and the individual can keep hold of it that way, communication of departures from this are ignored or are not tolerated. Communication, as a means of adding new information to interactions between people, is eliminated. Put another way there is a lack of negotiation of a joint frame of reference between the individuals, and instead a demand by at least one of the participants of what has to be the case, for instance that it is a perfect relationship. Thus both the individual and his/her relationships are characterized by rapid shifts between contradictory states, and a lack of individual or interpersonal metarepresentational system.

Repeated injury to the body is common in borderline functioning. Sometimes this represents a suicide attempt, but usually it does not. Often the individual will cut him/herself when frustrated or angry. This is a complicated phenomenon and many different explanations have been offered for it. Here we will
focus on one aspect, the attack on a part of oneself. In evolution anger and attack appears to be part of an intentional response which has survival value for the individual and species through reducing danger. They form part of effective action with respect to the environment. In self-injury it seems that part of the intentional sequence, entailing the emotion and the action is subverted so that action is not effective in bringing about change. It is an example of what we referred to earlier (subsection 9.3.3), of a contradiction in the intentional process, of action both occurring but not occurring, simultaneously. The way this is achieved may be through a split in the representation of the self (or at least of the body) so that a part of oneself can become the object of action. In one sense that creates the appearance of effective action, but in reality it is ineffective because it is part of the same person. In summary, borderline processes, we have contradictory unpredictable states of mind and relationships, lack of effective communication and negotiations, and action that is not action.

9.4.3 Sexual abuse and borderline processes

How might these be related to childhood experiences of adversity? We reviewed some of the relevant mechanisms in the previous chapter, and return to them here in more detail. We will focus on sexual abuse and the interactions that may be associated with it, although many of the processes are likely to be found in other forms of abusive, punitive, or neglectful parenting. Sexual abuse of young children is usually painful, intrusive, confusing, and frightening. Typically it occurs under conditions of secrecy with threats from the perpetrator of injury or loss, for instance through break up of the family, if the child discloses. Whether it is carried out by a parent or an adult from outside the family, it involves a transgression of the assumed protective role of adults. It may well be carried out in a perverse manner within the day to day events of family life. Furniss (1992) described a father who signalled to his daughter that the abuse was about to take place with the words, ‘Go and wash your hands’, and once it was over would say, ‘Now it is time to do your homework.’ Abused children may show signs characteristic of trauma in general, of hyperarousal, irritability and flashbacks, but may manage to hide the distress and maintain an appearance of normality. Then, in spite of severe trauma they continue to act in ways that preserve their relationships, including those in the family.

How does the child cope? He/she is faced with representations of the facts of what are going on, and with the accompanying emotions of fear and anger, without a means of acting on them. These representations would under other circumstances lead to report of the act, but as physical danger and loss of family are threatened if that happens, the secrecy is preserved. Furthermore the actions that are required, to behave as if nothing is happening, require quite
different representations in the mind. So here are the conditions under which
the child may split off cognitive-emotional states of the form ‘I am being hurt,
I am frightened’ which cannot be linked to action, and, ‘I am fine’, which is
inaccurate but may provide the basis for survival and action. He/she learns to
segregate the components of the mind so that what is known is not known.
Here then may be the conditions for the development of contradictory states
of mind, that are maintained separate in order to preserve the conditions for
action in childhood.

Not only is sexual abuse likely to lead to segregated thoughts and feelings,
but also ones that are not linked systematically to external events. The scope
for establishing their applicability, and for their testing and modification is
likely therefore to be limited. Thus if the child learns to split off the emotions
labelled ‘I am frightened’ when being abused, the question arises as to how to
deal with the same emotions arising at other times. How is he/she to distin-
guish those times when the state of mind can be registered and talked about,
and when this is not possible. It is unlikely that there will be help available
from adults in sorting this out, and so there is the possibility that events which
might not usually be frightening will come to be feared. Similarly if such a
state cannot be registered and talked about, there will be little scope for
exploring those conditions under which being frightened might be modified.
This is the reverse of the benign exploration of perceptions, fears, and wishes
that goes on in the play and relationships of most children, and may lead to
mental representations that are inflexible, inappropriate to external circum-
stances, and not readily open to modifications.

The example of the father’s use of everyday language to signal the beginning
and end of episodes of abuse, illustrates the way in which trust in what is said
can be undermined, in abuse. If some sentences are uttered under one set of
metarules and others under different rules, but the difference cannot be
acknowledged, then the child is likely to feel uncertain about the meaning of
apparently straightforward communications. This will have implications for the
monitoring of the individual’s state of mind, and for his/her understanding of
what is happening between people. In contrast to the infant who looks to the
parent for help in deciding whether to cross the visual cliff (Section 6.4.4), the
child who is being abused may not have adults with whom communications
are sufficiently unambiguous that such checking could be possible. The
importance of an undermining of metarepresentations in borderline disor-
ders is supported by the studies referred to earlier. Specific factors included
denial of thoughts and feelings by a parent and inconsistent parenting. Both are
likely to inhibit the capacity to monitor or reflect on one’s own states of mind,
and to generate shared representational frames with others. Hence the integrity
of the metarepresentational capacity is undermined. One possible solution then is to attempt to constrict the range of individual and interpersonal emotions, thoughts, and actions in order to reduce uncertainty, and enable actions to be preserved. This in turn is likely to reduce the scope for negotiations in relationships, as these require confidence that what is said is what is meant, and that areas of uncertainty can be entered with relative safety. This constricting of communication may provide another basis for the splitting of representations. If communications allow only ‘normal’ family life to be acknowledged then the unacknowledged aspects have to be kept separate in the minds of the participants and hence for the child this may become an habitual way of coping.

The child not only has to cope with the knowledge that the abuse is taking place, but also with the fact of it. This frequently involves physical pain and revulsion and many survivors have described dividing their mind from their body so that in effect what happens to the body is not experienced as happening to them. This is yet a further division in the representation of what is going on, but with somewhat different consequences. If the child comes to see the body as in some ways not part of the self, then the body can be treated as if it is that of someone else, and in particular may be neglected or attacked. Not only that, by creating a split between mind and body, the child runs the risk of separating representation and the agent of action, the body.

9.4.4 Development, intentional and borderline processes

Let us summarize now the developmental processes that may be impaired when a child is abused sexually or in other ways, and underline the links with intentional processes in borderline personality disorder. Firstly children need to register the presence of perceptions, thoughts, and emotions, and their differences, and to move among them without fear, just as happens in their play. When certain states of mind are not allowed they may become disconnected, unintegrated, and disruptive. Secondly, the content of these representations needs to be tested for their applicability, truth, and possible modification. In the language of our earlier discussion, the underlying rules have specificity and generality so that they can mediate between events and actions. Where such mental representations cannot be tested, for instance through play with other children, or through being brought into relationships with adults, they are likely to become rigid, and inappropriate. The child, and then the adult is likely to find none reflects reality satisfactorily, so that one is held until it can no longer bear the strain of the evidence, only to be replaced by another with similar limitations. Thirdly children need to be confident of the truth of communications within their social networks, and in particular that they can be clear
about the convention that is being followed in the use of language. The metarepresentational framework in which communications take place must have clarity. Then language can be used to express needs, state views, and enter areas of uncertainty, in short to negotiate effectively within relationships. This basic assumption, that what is said is meant, often cannot be made by the child who is being abused. Fourth, the child needs an integrated experience of mind and body. Our accounts of development and of post-empiricist thought have underlined the close connection between thoughts and action, and of the experience of effective agency as crucial to the sense of self. Under conditions of repeated helplessness and of dissociation from the body, this link in intentional processes is likely to be undermined, leading to inaction, or action that is ineffective and turned on the person’s own body. In many ways the child is faced with representing the unrepresentable, acting the impossible action, and dividing the basis of intentionality. The features of borderline functioning that we considered earlier, the intense unstable relationships in which negotiation and communication are limited, and the rapid changes of moods, beliefs and actions, can be seen to follow from these processes.

Of all the borderline phenomena, self injury is perhaps one of the most striking and puzzling, and so we return to it in more detail. We see now several ways in which the person who has been abused may come to injure herself repeatedly in adult life. The child searches for an explanation and blames herself, but the conditions for testing her explanations are undermined by secrecy and fear. Her experience of her body is separated from her experience of herself where she has coped the trauma by dissociating herself from her body. Her sense of self does not include an experience of her body as an agent of effective action, through the impossibility of action being linked to representation. Then she may also blame parts of her body for the abuse. Then with subsequent development the ‘choice’ when faced with stress, loss, or maltreatment, is either to deny the difficulties, hence using the childhood coping strategy, or to allow them to be represented with implications for action. Where she sees herself or her body as the cause of the difficulties, where she does not have the previous experience of action as effective, where her body has not been integrated into her sense of self, action may be turned on to her own body.

9.4.5 Protection and resilience

Our account has so far indicated ways in which threats to intentional processes may arise through coping with experience with possible borderline functioning later in life. It is important to keep in mind that at this stage we do not know why some people show this kind of disturbance in adult life following child sexual abuse, while many do not, nor whether sexual abuse has specific
effects when compared to other forms of abusive and neglectful parenting. The implications for the intentionality of adverse experiences may vary considerably. For instance some children may be able to keep some areas of relatively integrated mental life alive, whilst still coping in ways that we have discussed here. If that is the case that might be a function of constitutional factors, early preabuse experiences, or other valued previous or current relationships. Here the fit between the child and the experience may be crucial. For instance some children who are abused are preoccupied with the welfare of other members of the family and do not disclose in order to protect them from the knowledge. Then a sensitivity to others may be a greater risk factor for later maladaptive coping than lack of sensitivity. Such a difference of sensitivity might have its roots in earlier experiences, or inherited differences.

The capacity of a parent to envisage the infant or child as a mental entity may be a further source of resilience (Fonagy et al. 1994). Then the child will experience her wide range of intentions, feelings, and desires as contained within her parent’s mind, within the relationship, and therefore containable within her own mind. Containment as we saw in Chapter 8 is both epistemological and psychological. This may enable the child to reflect emotionally and cognitively on her own states of mind, even in the face of trauma, so that she may then be less vulnerable to the radical undermining that we have considered earlier.

9.5 Conclusion

In reviewing psychiatric syndromes, some themes recur. This does not lead to a general theory of disorder, but to an analysis that has some general features. Set against a developmental background, disorder is viewed in relation to the tasks that must be achieved where multiple sets of mental rules are possible. These include the monitoring of internal and interpersonal rules, the maintenance of the individual’s experience of continuity in the presence of multiple states of mind, and the capacity to understand the mental states and actions of others. Many of the overarching, metarepresentational functions could also be characterized as functions of the self, and these appear to be disrupted in conditions that are as widely different as schizophrenia and borderline personality disorder. In schizophrenia the monitoring of the individual’s own thoughts or actions may be impaired, whilst in borderline functioning the continuity of states of mind is undermined. If the sense of self is derived from the awareness of being the author of one’s own actions or thoughts over time, then in these conditions it is undermined in different ways. Inasmuch as the coherence of the self is in turn central to action, disturbances of action are the result of these different forms of disruption of the self.
In both condition, further contrasting factors may undermine action. In schizophrenia inefficient information processing may lead either to action based on incidental aspects of a situation, or to inaction based on information overload. In borderline personality disorder experiences in which action has been impossible may lead to action turned on itself, in self injury. However, in both, there may be elements that represent the attempt to preserve action in the face of such threats. In schizophrenia delusions and hallucinations may in part be compensatory mechanisms that reduce uncertainty, hence providing the basis for action. In borderline personality disorder the splitting of mental representations may similarly, by excluding elements that are incompatible with action, provide (partial) representations that provide the basis for action. Thus in both conditions elements of accurate representation are sacrificed, in order for action to continue.

Conditions in which action is preserved may be contrasted with those, such as depression, where it is not. In either case a range of intentional and non-intentional origins may be envisaged. In situations of helplessness depression may be seen to be an appropriate and accurate representation that action is not possible. Depression seen in the absence of such threat may result from the intrusion of cognitive and emotional states that undermine action arising from a physical, non-intentional interruption of perceptions, thoughts, feelings, or actions. Equally depression may arise where mental representations that have been maintained inactive or out of consciousness are activated, and are incompatible with action.

We conclude by revisiting our starting point. Mental entities, perceptions, feelings, thoughts, and wishes are genuinely causal and must provide sufficient certainty that the individual can act effectively. Throughout biology, intentional states of organisms, from the simplest cellular creatures to non-human primates, have provided the basis for action, and in general the certainty has been derived from the evolution of those intentional states over long periods of time. In this and the preceding chapters we have seen how, in the activities of the human mind there is an infinite elaboration of the potential inherent in all intentional processes in biology. This has introduced novelty, creativity, and flexibility, that are seen in the achievements of language, custom, technology, and culture. It has also increased the risks of uncertainty, confusion, and the undermining of action. These are reduced through an interplay between the sophisticated integrative capacities of the human brain and the continuities of human relationships, skills, beliefs, and social organizations. Disorder is found in the failure of intentional states to underpin action, where these are undermined by the external world, or where intentional states are distorted, contradictory or unintegrated, and where action is undermined or ineffective.
References


Index

action
  basis of intentionality and cognition 19–27, 229–30; see also meaning, definition in terms of action
  creation of order and 104–112, 166–68
  intentional causality and 183, 212
  invariants in; see invariants
  mind, meaning, and explanation of 1–58
  non-intentional behaviour distinct from 4, 24–26; see also invariants
  relativity and independent constraints on 114–17
  representation and, incompatibility between 287–89, 301–04, 355–56
  rule-following and 21–22, 104–110, 184
  self-caused 166–68, 221–223
  theory of in terms of mind, see theory of mind
  theory fundamental to, see theory, fundamental to action
  thought and, threats to 285–88, 318
adaptation 149–50, 253–54
adolescence, cognitive maturation in 230–232
affect
  cognitive psychology and 12–13
  cognitive therapy and 310–11
  communication and 223
  early development and 223–24
  energy and 13, 75, 312; see also energy failure of emotional processing 351
  generalizations about cognitive-affective states 161–66
  implications of narrow range 305
  post traumatic stress disorder and 347–51
  self-affectivity 168, 221–23
agency
  causal laws and 166–68
  in development 221–23
  see also self; responsibility
aggression
  children’s attributions and 309
  dealing with threat and anxiety 339
  social and hormonal factors 261
agreement
  between parents and infants 223–24
  concept of reality and 112–13, 116, 120–21
  in play 217–19
  in visual system 205–11
  intentional causality and 184
  rule-following and role of 110–12
Ainsworth Strange Situation Test 216
analogical knowledge 32; see also empathy
animal learning theory 4–6
animals
  anxiety reactions in 334–335
  communication in; see bees
  representation and behaviour in 147–50, 240–7, 357–8; see also cognitive learning theory
  see also bats; bees; frogs; fruitfly; sticklebacks
anti-psychiatry critiques xix
anxiety
  containment and 339
  definition, evolutionary theory and 334–35
  intentional explanations of 241–44, 334–39
  levels of explanation and 250
  see also danger; fear
  anxiety disorders 334–361; see also obsessive-compulsive disorder; phobias; post traumatic stress disorder
  in modern (seventeenth century) thought 2–3, 15, 119
  in relativistic thought 15, 103–04, 113–16, 119–23
  approach-avoidance conflict 349
  artificial intelligence (AI) 9, 22, 44, 65–68, 72; see also connectionism
  association 28–29, 230, 350
  attachment 216–17, 270, 316–20, 317–320
  autism 23, 225, 257, 291

  bats 211–12
  bees xxxvii, 212
  behaviour therapy 346
  behavioural criteria and mental content 80–82, 125, 149–51, 153–56
  behavioural functional semantics 153–56
  behaviourism 3–8, 29, 33, 47
  beta-blockers 251
biochemistry
  arguments regarding reduction of 192–93
  schizophrenia and 326–27
  ‘biological’ psychiatry and psychology 272–74
biological and psychological processes, two forms of causality in 179–202
biological systems
Brentano’s thesis extended downwards to include 17, 204
deception in 149, 185–86
deign and 70, 147, 264–68, 335
functional semantics and normal causes in 147, 335–36
intentional causality in xxvii–xxix, xxix–xxxi, 179–202
bio-psychological measures and realities 112, 124–25
bio-psychological sciences, relativity in 117–126
blood pressure, regulation of xxix, 181–86, 195–96
borderline personality disorder 362–64
bradycardia 196–7
brain
biological psychiatry and 272–74
development 264–67, 270–71
encodes meaning 59–64
mental content and supervenience on 76–84
mind, meaning, and neural causation 59–95
‘people not brains have meaning’ 84–87
schizophrenia and 327–32
Brentano’s thesis 16–17, 204

cardiovascular system 180–86, 195–97, 264
Cartesian dualism, see dualism, Cartesian
‘causal programming’ explanations 80n.12
causal semantics 8, 21, 106, 133–34, 139–45, 179
causal-functional semantics 145–53, 179
causality
Hume’s and neo-Humean analyses of 29, 134–39,
involving semantics/intentionality 29, 44–45, 63–64, 72–76, 133–34, 146–47, 156–170; see also intentional causality
generality and 135–36, 161–66
mind, meaning, and neural causation 59–95
necessity and 135–36, 156–61
physicalist construal of 138–39, 146, 156, 141n.2
systemic function and 156–57; see also intentional causality
theory-driven predictive power implies 43–44
two forms in biological and psychological processes 179–202
see also intentional causality; non-intentional causality
certainty
action and 39–43, 225–28
cognition and 225–27
psychosis and 332–34
ceteris paribus clauses, in causal
explanation/prediction 158–60
children
behaviour problems 309–10
belief in adults 41
play 140, 217–19
sexual abuse of xxxix, 258, 260, 364–66
see also development
’Chinese room argument’ 68–69, 88
cholesterol 253–54
Chomsky, N.: 7–8, 31, 141
cognition
affect and 12–15, 75
commitment and 225–28
decision and 41–42, 226
maturation in adolescence 230–05
origins in action 39, 74, 104–07, 229–30
social basis 38, 84–85, 112–13, 116–17, 125–26, 224–25, 229
see also meaning; thought; reason
cognitive-affective states, generalizations about 156–61
cognitive-behavioural therapy 310–11
cognitive learning theory 4, 71
’cognitive paradigm’ in psychological science xviii, 1–15
cognitive psychological information and folk psychological meaning 11–12, 47
’cognitive revolution’ in psychology xviii, 6–11, 47
cognitive science
Fodor’s ‘methodological solipsism’ as a research strategy 141n.2
meaning and, historical problem of 44–47
Stich’s meaning-less 79
cognitive therapy 310–11
commitment 38, 225–28
see also infallibility and self-knowledge, non-descriptive uses of language in communication
consciousness and 220, 224–25
in bees 212
language and 106–07, 220, 223–25
meta-, see metacommunication
parent-infant 223–25
replaces dogmatically postulated object 126
rule-multiplicity and 220–28
comorbidity 255
compensatory mechanisms 262, 334
computation, classical theory of 65, 68
computational theory of mind 65, 68, 69–70, 72, 230
computers, chess-playing 23–24, 100–01, 267
conditioning theory 4, 28–29, 308, 327–28
connectionism 65–66, 90–91
consciousness
   Cartesian theory of 1–2, 14–15, 160–61
   cognitive psychology and 13–14
   materialist theory of mind and 60
   philosophical problem of 14–15
   rule selection and 220–221
   self-knowledge and 35–36
   social activity and 224–25
   see also meta-representation, self, self-knowledge
containment
   emotional and epistemological function 314, 339, 368
content
   defining limits of 124–126
   narrow/broad 26–27, 37n.14, 79–80, 100, 103–06, 118, 117
   see also Information; meaning; semantics
   contingent identity of mind/brain 60
   coping skills, and anxiety 336; see also defences
   core theory, see fundamental rules and core theory
correlation and causality 43–44, 134–36
corticosteroids 259–60
critical experiments 286
Cushing’s syndrome 259–60
danger, response to 242–44, 335–36, 347, 364
   see also anxiety, fear
Davidson, D.: xx, 46, 90, 137, 161
deception
   in biological systems 149, 185–86
   intentional causality and 185–86, 244, 254
defences, psychic 42–43, 292–99; see also coping skills
delusions 258, 262, 332–33
denial 294, 295, 296, 335, 352–53
Dennett, D.
   causality 46, 139
   concept of design 22, 23, 157–58, 282, modification of concept of design in development 263–68
   realism 117–18
   stances in prediction of behaviour 22–24, 117–18, 157–58
deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and protein synthesis 197–99, 264
depression xv–xvii, 303–04
   cognitive therapy 310–11
   complication of post traumatic stress 358
   endocrine abnormalities and 260
   family systems theory and 315–16
   grief and 349–50
   life events and 257–58
   narrow affective representations and 305
   psychic defences and 297–98
   see also grief
   Descartes, R.
   dualism, see dualism, Cartesian
   ‘design’, genetics and disorder 263–72
design stance 22–23, 263–64, 282
development
   and disorder 288–89, 290–01, 360–61
   borderline processes 366–67
   design and 264–68
   genetics and 268–72
   intentional causality and 299–308
   object-relations theories (325–6)
   schizophrenia 329–332
   and intentional causality 299–308
   early development 213–219
   rule multiplicity 220–25
   theory of mind and perspectives in 103–04, 217–19
   thought and reason 231–32
devolutional psychology see development
diet and disease 253–54
discriminative behaviour and mental content 92, 150, 244
disorder
   Dennett’s explanatory stances and 22–24, 282
   see also medical disorder; mental disorder; psychiatric disorder
displacement activities 345
disruption of function 244–48, 259–61; see also disorder
domains of functioning xxv, 318–20; see also meta-representation
doppelgänger thought-experiments 79, 80–82
drugs 250–53
   ‘dual explanandum strategy’ 63
dualism, Cartesian
   basis for early psychological science 3
   causality, encoding and 63
   consciousness and 15, 160–61
   definition of behaviour 3–4
   definition of mental states 3, 15, 36, 97, 160–61
   legacy of 3, 60, 97
   meaning/causality distinction and 45–46
eliminability (of intentional concepts)
   connectionism and 66
   impossibility of: 26, 72–76, 189–93; see also irreducibility (of intentional concepts)
   embodiment 20; see also action
   emotion, see affect
   emotional processing, failure of 351
   empathy 45, 99–104; see also mental simulation
empiricism
absolute/unconditional measures in 27–28, 124
association and 28–29, 340
contrast with post-empiricism 28–30, 36, 124–126, 137–38, 340–01
causality and 29, 136
causal semantics and 142–43
introspection and 36
link between experience and ideas 28
logical basis of certainty and 227–28
passivity of subject in 28
Piaget on 230
resemblance theory and 18, 105
empty content, problem of 140–43, 152–53; see also error
coding xxiii–xxiv
coding thesis 61
objections to 64–87
ergy 13, 26, 167–68, 312
affect and 13, 26
in psychoanalytic theory 312
intentional processes and 167–68, 184–85, 210–11, 243–44
entropy, and life/intentionality 13, 26, 167–78; see also energy
environment
definition of
as a problem for causal semantics 141
as a problem for S-R theory 7–8, 141
evolutionary theoretic 145–50
physicalist/materialist 82–83, 124, 141–42
development and 264–65, 269–72
disorder and 253–54
genes and 268–72
environmental causes
and causal semantics 141
and functional semantics 145–50
error
definition of as a problem for all theories of meaning 19, 106, 114, 143
definition in terms of
action 115–16
behavioural functional semantics 153–54
consensus/agreement 110–15
neo-Humean causal relation 143
evolutionary theory 145–49
functional semantics 146–52
resemblance 19
physical facts inadequate 199–201
disorder and 38 281–84
involved in definition of intentionality 16–17
see also deception
evolutionary theory 16, 28, 43, 148–52
and function of anxiety 334–36
and functional semantics 148–52
expressed emotion 262, 332
‘external/material world’, historical problem of knowledge of 2–3, 115
false propositions, causal semantics and 143
families and disorder 289–91, 342–43
family systems theories 314–17
fear 224, 242–44, 245–7, 283–84, 288, 298, 308, 338,
see also anxiety; anxiety disorders; danger; phobias
Fodor, J.:
causal semantics 137, 140
defining syntax 74–75
error and evolutionary theory 147–48
language of thought hypothesis 64–65, 66, 68, 72, 87, 139
‘methodological solipsism’ 141n.2
modal argument 81n.13
folk psychology
as theory for prediction 11–12, 45, 291
broad content and 83–84
ceteris paribus clauses in 158–61
cognitive paradigm and 11–12, 44–45
connectionist models and 66
meaning, causality and 79, 83, 161
psychoanalytic theory and 293
Foucault, M.: xix
freedom 35, 166–67
Freud, S.: 35, 279, 291–92, 293, 296, 312,
347, 356, 361; see also psychoanalytic theory
frogs, fly-catching behaviour in 16, 147–48, 149–51, 282
fruitfly (Drosophila melanogaster) 210
functional semantics xxvi, 9, 75–76,
133–78, 334–35
fundamental rules and core theory
action and, see theory fundamental to action
critical experiments and 286
concept in post-empiricism 39–43, 286
post-traumatic stress disorder and 352–54,
357–58
psychic defences and 293–94
Geisteswissenschaften xvii, 45
generalizations
causality and 136–37, 161–62
decreasing content with differentiation 162–66
representations and 304–05
genetics and disorder 263–72, 327, 342; see also environment
genetic fault not given by physical facts 268–69
goals and intentional causality 182, 198
Gray, J.: 327, 336
grief 101, 199, 349–50, 359; see also depression; unhappiness

haemoglobin molecule 199–201, 268–69
hallucinations 282, 332
Harnad, S.: on Searle’s problem 71–72
hermeneutics xviii, xx, 11, 20, 46
higher-order intentionality 229–35, 289–92, 318–19; see also second-order intentionality, metacognition, meta-representational system
horseshoe crab (Limulus) 207
Hume, D.: empiricism 28–29, 136
on scepticism and the necessity for action on causality 29, 134–37

illness
mental, see psychiatric disorder
physical 195–96, 255–56
imprinting 269–70
infallibility and self-knowledge 35–38, 98, 227
non-descriptive uses of language in 37–38, 224–26, 229–30
infants 213–16, 222–23, 223–25, 313–14, 317–20, 341; see also development
information
coded in DNA 197–201
compared with meaning 11–12
concept in cognitive science 5, 11–12
disruption of intentionality and 245
energy and 167–68, 184–85; see also affect, energy
levels of explanation and 248–54
lost in attempted reduction 61, 189–93
related concepts and 11–12, 17, 140
response to danger and 242–44, 337
semantic concept, as a 17–18, 168
theory, see mathematical communication theory
see also content; meaning; semantics, information-processing in the visual system 141–42, 205–11
intensionality 16
intensional specifications of function 148

intentional causality xix–xx, xxii–xxiii, 179
cannot be replaced by non-intentional 189–95
development and 203–39, 300–04
disorder and 299–308
neurobiology and 203–39
principles of 180–86
relationship with non-intentional 188–89
response to danger and 242–44, 334–46
see also causality, involving semantics/intentionality
intentionality, defined 16–19
‘as if’ 193–94
anxiety disorders and 334–38
based in action xxi–xxii, 19–27
borderline processes and 366–67
disruption of 195–97, 244–48, 256–61
empathy and 98–99
in disorder xxxvi–xl, 279–323; see also disorder, mental disorder
‘intrinsic’ 22n.9, 193–94
invariants in, see invariants
involved in causality 29, 44–45, 75, 161;
see also intentional causality
Martian needs 194–95
meaning and 17
observer-relativity xxiv–xxvii, 97–99
in psychological processes xxxi–xxxvi, 241–44
second-order 35, 38, 223–25, 232–35;
see also higher-order intentionality, metacognition, meta-representational system
see also information; intentional causality;
intentional stance; meaning; semantics
intentional–physical asymmetry 184–85
intentional stance 22–24, 157–58, 346–47
disorder and 22–24, 195–97, 281–82, 299–08
predicts intentional behaviour 24–26, 100
realism, relativity and 117–26
introspection 3, 14, 28, 35–36, 291, 296
invariants 4, 25, 64, 117–18, 223
irreducibility (of intentional concepts) 26–27, 61, 189–93; see also eliminability (of intentional concepts), reductionism

Jaspers, K.: on meaningful connections xvii, xx, xxi, 164, 258–59

Klein, M.: 313
knowledge
analogical 32; see also empathy
theoretical, see post-empiricism; theory
knowledge of mind and meaning
empathic, see empathy
mental simulation, see mental simulation
relativity in 97–132
theoretical, see theory of mind
see also 'other minds' traditional problem of knowledge of

Lakatos, I., on scientific theory 30–32, 161, 286, 293
language
communication and 223–25
consciousness and 14, 35, 220–21, 223, 225
control of action and 37–38, 229–30
disorder and 289–90
expressing self-knowledge 35, 289–90
limits of 287–88
operant theory and 7–8
resemblance theory and 19, 105
rule multiplicity and xxxv, 220–25
language-games 40–41
language of thought hypothesis 64–65, 66, 68, 72, 87, 139
latent inhibition 328
lateral inhibition 207
learned helplessness 43, 163, 353
levels of functioning 249–50
limits of language/meaning/thought 123–26, 287–88
Locke, J.: 22, 28, 36
logic
analysis of causality and 167
as a priori theory of meaning 40, 73, 285
as law of identity 40–41
as propositional calculus 40, 231–32
certainty and 40–41, 225–26
in post-empiricism 39–43, 227
logic and epistemology of disorder 41–43, 279–321
Lorentz transformations 119

'magical' thinking 231, 360
materialist theory of mind 59–60, 81; see also
physicalism
mathematical communication theory (MCT) 9–10, 12
meaning
'ain't in the head’ 76–84
compared with information 11–12
definition of 132–77

in causal semantics 139–45
in terms of action 19–21, 70–72, 74–76, 81–84, 85, 10–05, 125, 153–56
as resemblance 18–19, 73–74, 105
in terms of systemic function 145–56
dichotomy with causality, see
meaning/causality dichotomy encoded in brain 59–95
generalizations about 161–66
life-events and 257
limits of meaning, see limits of language/meaning/thought
mind-brain identity theory and 61
prediction of behaviour and 21–22
as a problem in science 1, 45–46
relativity in knowledge of 97–132
rule-following and 20, 106–112
see also content, information, intentionality, intentional, causality, language, semantics
meaning/causality dichotomy xvii–xviii), xix–xx, 1, 45–47, 133–34, 161, 258–59
meaningful connections 163–65, 258–59
medical disorder 232–33, 252–54, 276–79; see also physical illness
'medical model' in psychiatry xix, 22, 255–56
mental disorder
as breakdown of meaningful connections xix, 23, 159–60, 334
as persistent misrepresentation 282–84
as persistent unresolved rule-conflict 282–84, 353–56
as radical error in intentionality 279–20
concept in Cartesian method de omnibus dubitandum 39–40
concept in Wittgenstein's On certainty 39–43
failure of self-knowledge and 38
fundamental rules and 39–43, 285–89, 355
intentional causality and 255–63, 299–308
logic and epistemology of 39–43, 280–99
theory of mind and 38, 290–92
see also disorder; normal/abnormal distinction; psychiatric disorder; psychopathology
mental processes, levels of explanation and reduction of 248–52
mental simulation 32, 99–104, 112; see also
empathy
mental states
definition in Cartesian paradigm 1–2, 6, 13–14, 33, 97, 296
definition in cognitive paradigm 6, 9, 11, 14, 97, 125, 296
functionalist theory of 62–63
measurement of 119–120, 123; see also empathy, theory of mind
as world-involving; see content, narrow/broad
see also cognition; mind
metacognition 233–35; see also higher-order
intentionality, second-order
intentionality, meta-representational system
and schizophrenia 330
metarepresentational system
integrity of 306–08
self and 221–23
see also intentionality, second-order
‘methodological solipsism’ 141n.2
Millikan, R.: functional theory of content 147
mind
Cartesian concept of 1–2, 6, 13–14, 33, 59–61, 97, 293
computational theory of see computational
theory of mind
materialist theory of see materialist theory
of mind
meaning, and explanation of action 1–58
meaning, and neural causation 59–95
and meaning
irreducibility of see irreducibility (of
intentional concepts), eliminability
(of intentional concepts), reductionism
relativity in knowledge of 97–132
problem of other minds 3, 15, 97–99
type of, see theory of mind
see also mental states
mind-brain identity theory see materialist
theory of mind
type and token 62–63
misrepresentation, see error
modal argument, for narrow content 81n.13

Nagel, E.: reductionism and ‘condition of
connectability’ 190–91
analysis of functional explanation 134n.1
narcissistic defence 295
‘naturalistic psychology’, Fodor on 140
natural law
causality and 136–38, 145, 162
physicalist construal of 138
natural sciences
definition of causality in 138
relativity in 119
necessity, causal 135–37
‘inner’ 167
linked to norms of function and
dysfunction 156–58
neural causation, mind, meaning, and
and neural syntax, see language of thought
neurobiology and intentional causality 205–13
neurological deficits
obsessive-compulsive disorder and 344–47
schizophrenia and 327–29
neuronal conduction 205
neuronal connections 264–65
newborn infants 213–14
Newtonian mechanics 31, 119
Nisbett, R., and Wilson, T.: on self-knowledge
36–37
non-intentional causality xix–xx, 179,
186–188, 244–46
cannot replace intentional 189–95
disruption of function and conditions for
196–97
place in explanation of breakdown 195–96,
244–46
psychiatric disorder and 259–63, 327,
344–46
relationship with intentional 188–89,
244–51, 261–63
normal evolutionary causes and functional
semantics 147
normal/abnormal distinction
in ceteris paribus clauses in
explanation/prediction 158–61
diagnosis of stress disorder and
depression 349–50
in specification of design 158–59
intentional causality and 181–82
see also mental disorder
norms of function and causal necessity
156–68

objectivity, relativity and 113–120
object-relations theories 313–14
observer-relativity and intentionality 97–132
obsessive-compulsive disorder 311, 325,
343–47, 359–61
order
classes, pictures and 105–06, 108
rule-following as creation of 107–112, 167
syntax and 74
through time 107
organism-based definition of mental content
123, 145–56
‘other minds’, historical problem of knowledge
of 3, 15, 97–99
Papineau, D.: 138, 147
panic disorder 260–61, 342
paradigm-shifts 5–6, 32, 299
parents
infants and 213–17, 223–25
as sources of containment 342–43
as sources of insecurity 301–02, 317–19
parental criticism, over-involvement and relapse in schizophrenia 332
parenting, skilled versus unskilled 309
personality, self and 221–23
personality disorder 361–68
perspectives
relativity and; see relativity in child development 103–04; see also play philosophy
deconstructing dichotomies in
example of meaning and causality 134
example of mind and matter 59–61
dogmatic,
absolutes in response to scepticism 113, 115
contrast with relativistic philosophy 115, 119, 121–22
examples of (empiricism and rationalism) 113
see also dualism; empiricism; materialism;
physicalism; post-empiricism;
relativistic epistemology
phobias 283, 340
physical illness 252–54
physical–intentional asymmetry 184–85
physical stance 22–23, 282
physicalism
construal of natural laws/causality 137–39
definition of syntax 73
supervenience and 77–84
supports causal semantics 139
see also materialism
physic
causality and 138, 161, 184–85, 186–88
relativity and 119–20
Piaget, J.: 230–33, 360
plasticity 4, 11
Plato:
problem of falsity, in the Cratylus 18
problem of relativity, in the Theaetetus 113, 227
play 104, 217–19, 314
polycythaemia 254
post-empiricism/post-empiricist epistemology
action and 28, 151, 225–27
cognition and commitment in 227
idea of theory in 6, 30–33, 151, 231
knowledge of mental states and 5–6, 36–38, 151, 159–61, 340
self-knowledge and 36–38
concept of logic in 31, 39–43, 225–27, 231
post-traumatic stress disorder 288, 347–60
prediction of behaviour, mind, meaning and 1–58
pre-rationality 231, 360–01
primal sketches 209
primary and secondary qualities 59, 154
principle of falsifiability 30
projection and projective identification 294–95
propositional logic 231
protein synthesis, intentional causal processes in 197–99
psychiatric disorder
definition 255–56
genetics, design, and 263–72
intentionality in 256–59, 279–323, 325–86
psychiatric conditions 325–86
treatment, psychological models of 308–20
see also anxiety disorders; autism;
depression; mental disorder, personality disorder; phobias; post traumatic stress disorder;
psychopathology, obsessive-compulsive disorder; schizophrenia
psychic defences 292–99
psychoanalytic theory xviii, 31, 98, 312–14, 339
as post-dualist 35, 291–92, 293
as post-empiricist 293–94
criticism of as non-scientific xviii
defences and 291–99
hermeneutic readings of xviii
see also Freud
psychological disorder, see mental disorder;
psychiatric disorder
psychological generalizations 161–66
psychological models of disorder and treatment 308–21
psychological processes
operation of intentionality in 213–35
two forms of causality in 179–202
see also mental states, mind
psychopathology, intentionality and xxxvi-xl; see also mental disorder, psychiatric disorder
purpose and intentional causality 182, 187
Putnam, H.: ‘meaning ain’t in the head’ 76–84
rationality
agreement critical to concept of 110
concept involved in causal explanation of behaviour 161
development of in childhood and adolescence 230–35
dennett’s definition of the intentional stance and 24, 157
psychological disorder as breakdown of 23–24
see also reasons
realism
dennett on 117–18
in causal semantics 141
see also philosophy, dogmatic
reality, relative and
appearance/reality distinction 112–15, 119, 231
bio-psychological measures and realities 112, 123–24
is what is relative really real? 117–18
reason and thought, development of 230–35
reasons
as intentional causes 161
run out in the justification of action 109–10, 228
see also rationality
reductionism
intentional explanations and 190–93
levels of explanation and reduction of mental processes 248–252
re-enactment (re-experiencing), avoidance and 280–05
in anxiety disorders 342–43
in post-traumatic stress disorder 348–49, 354–5
psychic defences and 298–99
regulation, rules and 21
relativistic epistemology xxiv–xxvii, 113–17, 119–26, 228
Einstein’s mechanics exemplifying 119
relativity in knowledge/knowledge of mind and meaning 97–132, 226–28
reliability 120–21
representation(s) 4–5, 9
and action 21, 205–13, 225–28, 229–30, 234–45, 301–04
and behaviour in animals 211–15
and disorder
generalization and differentiation of 304–06
incompatibility between representation and action 301–04, 353–54
persistent misrepresentation 281–82
stability and testing of 305–06
see also cognition; meaning; thought
representation of classes 105–06, 108
resemblance theory of meaning and representation 18–19, 73–74, 106, 143–44, 287
resilience and vulnerability 272, 367–68
response, definition of in skinner’s theory 8
responsibility 35, 168
ritualistic behaviour 343–44
rules
attachment and, see attachment
communication of 223–25
creation of order and 107, 167
fundamental, see fundamental rules and core theory
infant interest in 214–15
intentional causality and 184, 206, 212–13
intentionality, and regulation 21
Multiplicity and implications for monitoring 220
operation in the visual system 205–11
order, activity and 107
rule multiplicity 220–235
rule-following 21 107–110, 184
stability and testing 266–67, 305–06
rule-conflict
and theory of mind, 291
persistent, disorder and 280–85
scepticism 108n.3, 136, 227–28
schizophrenia 255, 258–59, 261–63, 326–34
developmental considerations 329–32
dopamine hypothesis 326–27
double-bind and 315–16
neuropathology and neuropsychology 327–29
scientific theory 30–32, 266, 293
Searle, J.:
‘Chinese room argument’ 68–69, 88
on intentionality 181, 183
on ‘as if’ intentionality 193–94
second-order intentionality 25, 204; see also higher-order intentionality, metacognition, metarepresentational system
self 168, 221–23, 339
experience of in schizophrenia 332–33
identified with narrow affective range 305–06
threats to the integrity of 303–04, 317–20
self-affectivity 223, 305
self-agency 168,
self-gratification, see narcissistic defence
self-injury 363–64, 366–67
self-knowledge 35–38, 102–03, 234–35
error and infallibility in 35–38, 235
failure of as defence 296
see also introspection
self-organization 168; see also self
self/other distinction  2, 102–04, 114
see also other minds, traditional problem of
knowledge of
semantics
absent from early cognitive science  9, 10
causal, see causal semantics
functional, see functional semantics
involved in causality  29, 44–45, 59–95, 161;
see also intentional causality
‘naturalized’  140, 151
syntax and, see syntax and semantics
see also content; information; meaning
sensory system in bats  211–12
’sentences in the head’, 64
sexual abuse  305–06, 308, 364–66
borderline personality disorder and
364–66
Skinner, B.F.: on language-learning  7–8, 140
sickle-cell disease  200, 264, 268
signs  18–19, 74–76, 107; see also language;
syntax
social basis of cognition  38, 84–86, 115–17,
121–26, 222, 229, 291–92
social development and brain  269–70
social education and theory of mind  38
social learning theory  309–10
social theory, merging with psychological
theory  38, 339–40, 125, 151–52
specialist receptors  185, 198, 244
splitting  294, 302–03, 307–08, 313–14, 317
statistical inference  135
sticklebacks  213
’stimulus control’ and verbal behaviour  7,
140–41
stimulus–response theory  4–7, 10,
140–41, 162
Strange Situation T est  216, 302
subjectivity, see relativity; self
subject/object distinction, see
appearance/reality distinction
supervenience, of meaning on brain  77–84
symbols and symbolism, see signs; syntax
symptoms  256, 297; see also psychiatric
disorder
syntax
definition in terms of
classical theory of computation  67
connectionism  67
higher-order physical properties  65,
74–75
regulation of activity (semantic
properties)  67, 69–72, 74–76
neural
connectionist or classical or both?
65–67
Harnad on  71–72
see also computational theory of mind;
syntax and semantics
syntactic
defined in classical theory of computation  67
defined in connectionism  67, 71
see also encoding thesis
systemic function
meaning, and causal explanation  156–66
systems theory  314–17
tachycardia  252
teleological explanation
Nagel’s analysis of  134n.1
intentionality and  182
theory
idea of in post-empiricist epistemology
27–33, 101, 285–86
scientific  30–32, 266, 293–94
tacit/explicit distinction  32
theory-driven predictive power implies
causality  43–47
see also fundamental rules and core theory;
theory fundamental to action; theory
of mind
theory fundamental to action  39–43,
225–227, 296–97, 352–53
defending, see defences
threats to  285–92, 299–301
anxiety, depression and  297, 353–59
post traumatic stress disorder and
353–59
twice Mind  29, 33–35, 234–35
disorder and  39–43, 289–92
empathy and  101–02
thought
a priori categories of  124–26; see also logic
and action, threats to  285–291, 299–308
and reason, development of  229–35
see also cognition; content; meaning; reason
thought-experiment(s)
empathy as  102
twin-Earth  76–8, 89
trauma  279, 288–89, 347, 357
integration and  314, 357–58
paradox and  285–88, 355, 357
see also post-traumatic stress disorder,
sexual abuse
twin-Earth thought experiments  70, 80–82
twin studies  271, 331
unconscious
in cognitive psychology  14
hydraulic model of  312
representations, origins and implications 301–04, 312–14
see also self-knowledge
understanding, distinguished from explaining, see meaning/causality dichotomy
universals 105–06

vulnerability and resilience 367–68
Vygotsky, L.: 116, 229, 360

Winnicott, D.: 313–14, 339, 353
‘wiring’, design and 264–66, 331
Wittgenstein, L.
On certainty 50–4, 112, 225–28, 257–8
Philosophical investigations 20, 104–11
Tractatus 19, 74, 105, 231, 296

validity 121–22
visual cliff experiment 224, 306
visual system 205–11, 213–14, 246–47